

SECOND EDITION

face2face



Elementary

Student's Book



English Profile

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town,
Singapore, São Paulo, Delhi, Tokyo, Mexico City

Cambridge University Press

The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK

www.cambridge.org

Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9781107422049

© Cambridge University Press 2012

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2012

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-1-107-42204-9 Student's Book with DVD-ROM

ISBN 978-0-521-28305-2 Workbook with Key

ISBN 978-0-521-28306-9 Workbook without Key

ISBN 978-1-107-65400-6 Teacher's Book with DVD







ISBN 978-1-107-42206-3 Class Audio CDs

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or
accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in
this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is,
or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel
timetables and other factual information given in this work is correct at
the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee
the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Contents

Lesson		Vocabulary	Grammar	Real World	
Welcome!	p6	numbers 0–20; the alphabet; things in the classroom; days of the week		introducing yourself; classroom instructions; names; saying goodbye	
1A How are you?	p8	countries and nationalities	<i>be</i> (1): positive and <i>Wh-</i> questions; subject pronouns and possessive adjectives	introducing people	
1B Coffee break	p10	jobs; <i>a</i> and <i>an</i>	<i>be</i> (2): negative, <i>yes/no</i> questions and short answers		
1C Personal details	p12	numbers 20–100		asking for personal details; asking people to repeat things	
1D Lost property	p14	personal possessions; plurals; <i>this, that, these, those</i>			
Extra Practice 1 and Progress Portfolio 1 p115 Self-study DVD-ROM 1					
2A What's important?	p16	adjectives (1); adjective word order and <i>very</i>	<i>have got</i> : positive and negative, questions and short answers		
2B The Browns	p18	family	possessive <i>'s</i>		
2C Time and money	p20	time words		telling the time; talking about the time; saying prices; buying tickets at the cinema	
2D Where's the baby?	p22	things in a house; prepositions of place			
Extra Practice 2 and Progress Portfolio 2 p116 Self-study DVD-ROM 2					
3A My day	p24	daily routines	Present Simple (1): positive and <i>Wh-</i> questions (<i>I/you/we/they</i>)		
3B Free time	p26	free time activities (1); time phrases with <i>on, in, at, every</i>	Present Simple (2): negative and <i>yes/no</i> questions (<i>I/you/we/they</i>)		
3C Special days	p28	months; dates		phrases for special days; talking about days and dates; suggestions	
3D Early bird?	p30	frequency adverbs	subject and object pronouns		
Extra Practice 3 and Progress Portfolio 3 p117 Self-study DVD-ROM 3					
4A Away from home	p32	free time activities (2)	Present Simple (3): positive and negative (<i>he/she/it</i>)		
4B First Date!	p34	things you like and don't like; verb + <i>ing</i>	Present Simple (4): questions and short answers (<i>he/she/it</i>)		
4C Eating out	p36	food and drink (1)		requests and offers	
4D Breakfast time	p38	food and drink (2); countable and uncountable nouns			
Extra Practice 4 and Progress Portfolio 4 p118 Self-study DVD-ROM 4					
5A Three generations	p40	adjectives (2); years	Past Simple (1): <i>be</i> (positive and negative, questions and short answers)		
5B Famous films	p42	life events	Past Simple (2): regular and irregular verbs (positive and <i>Wh-</i> questions)		
5C Four weekends	p44	weekend activities		showing interest; asking follow-up questions	
5D Competitions	p46	adjectives (3); adjectives with <i>very, really, quite, too</i>			
Extra Practice 5 and Progress Portfolio 5 p119 Self-study DVD-ROM 5					
6A Google it!	p48	the internet	Past Simple (3): negative, <i>yes/no</i> questions and short answers		
6B Changing technology	p50	mobile phones and TVs; past time phrases	<i>can/can't, could/couldn't</i>		
6C The news	p52	verbs from news stories		talking about the news	
6D Mario Man	p54	articles; <i>a, an</i> and <i>the</i>			
Extra Practice 6 and Progress Portfolio 6 p120 Self-study DVD-ROM 6					

Speaking	Listening and Video	Reading	Writing
Introducing yourself What's your first name? Saying goodbye	Conversations in a classroom First names and surnames		
Names and countries	At the conference	At the conference	
Phone numbers and jobs The conference list	Phone numbers What do you do?	Three conversations	Sentences about you
Numbers Hiring a car	Help with Listening Sentence stress (1) VIDEO Hiring a car	Personal information	Filling in a form
Things in the classroom			
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION Word stress and syllables p15		Reading and Writing Portfolio 1 At the hotel Workbook p64	
Personal possessions	What's important to me? A survey in a shop	What's important to me?	My friend's possessions
My family	Family photos Help with Listening Sentence stress (2)	The Brown family	Questions with <i>How many ... ?</i>
Buying tickets	What time is it? Times and prices VIDEO At the cinema	Adverts for an exhibition and for a cinema	
Whose mobile phone is this? Where's Robbie's bag?	Where's the baby?		Sentences with prepositions
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION The schwa /ə/ in words p23		Reading and Writing Portfolio 2 My favorite thing Workbook p66	
Daily routines		Behind the camera	My daily routine Questions about routines
Free time activities Find two people	The office party Help with Listening Weak forms (1): <i>do you ... ?</i>		Questions with <i>Do you ... ?</i>
My important dates What shall we get her?	What's the date today? VIDEO A birthday present		Dates A conversation
My habits	Early bird or night owl?	Early bird or night owl?	
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION How we say <i>th</i> p31		Reading and Writing Portfolio 3 All about me Workbook p68	
My free time activities My partner's free time	Life at the observatory Help with Listening Linking (1)		Questions with <i>Do you ... ?</i>
Things I like and don't like I've got a friend for you!	First Date!	First Date! Mark's first date	Questions with <i>Does he/she ... ?</i>
My favourite café Ordering food and drink	Help with Listening <i>Would you like ... ?</i> VIDEO At the Sun Café	A café menu Conversations in a café	A conversation in a café
Breakfasts around the world My perfect breakfast	What's for breakfast?		
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /ʃ/, /tʃ/ and /dʒ/ p39		Reading and Writing Portfolio 4 Going out Workbook p70	
When was he born? When I was thirteen	Albert's thirteenth birthday Help with Listening Weak forms (2): <i>was</i> and <i>were</i>	My birthday party	Questions with <i>was</i> and <i>were</i>
Questions about the past My timeline	Help with Listening Present Simple or Past Simple	Cameron's world	
What I did last weekend Asking follow-up questions	VIDEO How was your weekend?	Four weekends	Writing notes about the past
Too expensive or quite cheap?		Winners and losers	
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION The letter <i>o</i> p47		Reading and Writing Portfolio 5 A night to remember Workbook p72	
My internet Find someone who ...	Planet Google	The Google guys	Negative Past Simple sentences Past Simple <i>yes/no</i> questions
My mobile, computer and TV	Help with Listening <i>can</i> and <i>can't</i>	Our first colour TV The first mobile phones	My first mobile
Telling news stories	Here is the news VIDEO Talking about the news Help with Listening Sentence stress (3)	Two news reports	
Video games	The father of video games	Shigeru Miyamoto fact file	
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION Past Simple of regular verbs p55		Reading and Writing Portfolio 6 Text me! Workbook p74	

Lesson		Vocabulary	Grammar	Real World	
7A Where I live	p56	places in a town	<i>there is/there are</i>		
7B A new home	p58	rooms and things in a house	<i>How much ...? and How many ...?; some, any, a</i>		
7C At the shops	p60	shops; things to buy		what sales assistants say; what customers say	
7D What to wear	p62	clothes; colours; plural nouns			
Extra Practice 7 and Progress Portfolio 7 p121  Self-study DVD-ROM 7					
8A The meeting	p64	work	Present Continuous: positive and negative, questions and short answers		
8B It's snowing!	p66	types of transport; travelling verbs and phrases	Present Simple or Present Continuous		
8C On the phone	p68			talking on the phone	
8D Life outdoors	p70	indoor and outdoor activities; adjectives and adverbs			
Extra Practice 8 and Progress Portfolio 8 p122  Self-study DVD-ROM 8					
9A Holiday South Africa	p72	holiday activities	infinitive of purpose		
9B A trip to Egypt	p74	natural places	comparatives		
9C A day out	p76	animals		deciding what to do	
9D Time for a change	p78	verb patterns (<i>like doing, would like to do, etc.</i>)			
Extra Practice 9 and Progress Portfolio 9 p123  Self-study DVD-ROM 9					
10A Stay fit and healthy	p80	verb phrases; frequency expressions	imperatives; <i>should/shouldn't</i>		
10B What's she like?	p82	appearance; character	questions with <i>like</i>		
10C I feel ill	p84	health problems; treatment		talking about health	
10D Winter blues	p86	seasons; weather; word building			
Extra Practice 10 and Progress Portfolio 10 p124  Self-study DVD-ROM 10					
11A Happy New Year!	p88	New Year's resolutions	<i>be going to</i> (1): positive, negative and <i>Wh-</i> questions		
11B No more exams!	p90	studying	<i>be going to</i> or <i>might</i> ; <i>be going to</i> (2): <i>yes/no</i> questions and short answers		
11C Directions	p92			directions; asking for and giving directions	
11D An invitation	p94	collocations			
Extra Practice 11 and Progress Portfolio 11 p125  Self-study DVD-ROM 11					
12A It's a world record	p96	big and small numbers	superlatives		
12B Have you ever ... ?	p98	past participles	Present Perfect: positive and negative; <i>Have you ever ... ?</i> questions and short answers		
12C See you soon!	p100	things and places at an airport		at the airport; saying goodbye	
End of Course Review	p103				
Extra Practice 12 and Progress Portfolio 12 p126  Self-study DVD-ROM 12					
Pair and Group Work p104		Language Summaries p127		Audio and Video Scripts p155	

Speaking	Listening and Video	Reading	Writing
Places near my home My favourite place	Three places Help with Listening Weak forms (3): prepositions		
Spot the difference My shopping habits	Renting a flat At the supermarket	An advert for a flat	Questions with <i>Is there ... ?/Are there ... ?</i>
Buying things in a department store	VIDEO ▶ Can I help you?	A conversation in a department store	A conversation in a department store
What I wear		Me and my clothes	
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /ɔ:/ and /ɜ:/ p63		Reading and Writing Portfolio 7 Renting a flat Workbook p76	
Spot the difference	The contract	Conversations in the office and at home	
My travel habits Usually and today	Snow day A day at home Help with Listening Linking (2)	A day at home	Questions in the Present Simple or Present Continuous
A phone conversation	Help with Listening Phone messages Emily's phone calls VIDEO ▶ Can I call you back?	A list, a business card and an advert Conversations on the phone	A phone conversation
What can you do?		A reference letter	Sentences with adjectives and adverbs
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /ɪ/ and /i:/ p71		Reading and Writing Portfolio 8 Finding a job Workbook p78	
My last holiday Four places	A holiday in Cape Town Help with Listening Weak forms: review		Sentences with the infinitive of purpose
Natural places Two people I know	Choosing a holiday Back from holiday	Two holiday places	Sentences with comparatives
What would you like to do? Planning a day out Deciding what to do	VIDEO ▶ Planning a day out	Places to go for a day out	
Questions with <i>like</i> and <i>would like</i>		The grass is always greener	Questions with <i>like</i> and <i>would like</i>
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION Silent letters p79		Reading and Writing Portfolio 9 Places to go Workbook p80	
People I know What should I do?	At the doctor's	Get fit for free	Tips on how to stay fit and healthy
Describing people in my family Three friends	The <i>Break</i> advert Leo's new girlfriend Help with Listening Sentence stress (3)		A description of a person
I'm not very well	VIDEO ▶ Get well soon Help with Listening Being sympathetic		
What's the weather like?		If you're SAD, see the light!	
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION The letter <i>a</i> p87		Reading and Writing Portfolio 10 The advice page Workbook p82	
Plans for the future	New Year's resolutions		
Next weekend Find one person who ...	The final exam Future plans Help with Listening <i>going to</i>		My plans for next month <i>Yes/No</i> questions with <i>be going to</i>
Asking for and giving directions	Which holiday home? VIDEO ▶ Giving directions	Two holiday homes An email giving directions	
My last wedding or party	Going to the wedding Help with Listening Linking: review	An email about a wedding	An email to my friends
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /ʊ/ and /u:/ p95		Reading and Writing Portfolio 11 A town by the sea Workbook p84	
My superlatives	The World Quiz Help with Listening Sentence stress: review	Record breakers The World Quiz	
My life experiences	Being self-employed Holiday experiences	Being self-employed	My life experiences <i>Have you ever ... ?</i> questions
My travel experiences Saying goodbye	VIDEO ▶ At the airport VIDEO ▶ Saying goodbye		A conversation saying goodbye
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION Vowel sounds: review p102		Reading and Writing Portfolio 12 At the airport Workbook p86	
Phonemic Symbols p167		Irregular Verb List p167	
		Self-study DVD-ROM Instructions p168	

Welcome!

Vocabulary numbers 0–20; the alphabet;
things in the classroom; days of the week
Real World introducing yourself; classroom
instructions; names; saying goodbye

Hello!

- 1 a** **CD1** **1** Look at conversation 1 and listen.
b Practise conversation 1 with your teacher.
Use your name.
- 2 a** **CD1** **2** Look at conversation 2 and listen.
b Practise conversation 2 with four students.
Use your name.

Numbers 0–20

- 3 a** Work in pairs. How do we say these numbers?

0 1 2 3 4 5
6 7 8 9 10
11 12 13 14 15
16 17 18 19 20

- b** **CD1** **3** **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and check.
Listen again and practise.
- c** Work in the same pairs. Say five numbers.
Write your partner's numbers. Are they correct?

Classroom instructions

- 4 a** Work in new pairs. Which of these instructions do you understand? Check in Language Summary Welcome **REAL WORLD 0.2** p127.

Open your book.
Look at the photo on page 11.
Do exercise 6 on your own.
Look at the board.
Work in pairs.
Work in groups.
Fill in the gaps.
Compare answers.
Listen and check.
Listen and practise.
Match the words to the pictures.
Ask and answer the questions.

- b** **CD1** **4** Listen and tick (✓) the instructions when you hear them.



The alphabet

- 5 a** **CD1** **5** **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the alphabet.

Aa Bb Cc Dd Ee Ff Gg Hh Ii
Jj Kk Ll Mm Nn Oo Pp Qq Rr
Ss Tt Uu Vv Ww Xx Yy Zz

- b** **CD1** **6** Listen and write the words.

TIP • ss = double s



3 MARCOS Hello. Sorry I'm late.
TEACHER No problem.

First names and surnames

6 a Look at conversation 3. Then match the teacher's questions 1–3 to Marcos's answers a–c.

- 1 What's your first name? a F–U–E–N–T–E–S.
- 2 What's your surname? b Fuentes.
- 3 How do you spell that? c It's Marcos.

b CD1 7 Listen and check.

c CD1 8 Listen to two conversations, A and B. Write the names.

7 a CD1 9 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions in 6a.

b Ask four students these questions and write the names.

Things in the classroom

8 a Match these words to pictures a–j.

a table b a chair a book a pencil
a pen a dictionary a CD player
a TV a DVD player a computer



b Work in pairs. Test your partner.

What's picture e?

It's a chair.

Goodbye!

9 a Put the days of the week in order.

Friday Tuesday Thursday Monday 1
Wednesday Saturday Sunday

b CD1 10 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise. What day is it today? What day is it tomorrow?

10 CD1 11 Listen and write the day. Then practise with other students.

MARCOS Bye, Olga.

OLGA Goodbye. See you on _____.

MARCOS Yes, see you.

Progress Portfolio Welcome!

Tick (✓) the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can say hello, introduce myself and say goodbye.
- ☐ I can say numbers 0–20.
- ☐ I can understand classroom instructions.
- ☐ I can say the alphabet.
- ☐ I can spell my name.
- ☐ I can say the days of the week.

QUICK REVIEW The alphabet Write five words in English. Work in pairs. Spell the words to your partner. He/She writes them down. Are they correct?

Listening and Speaking

- 1 a** **CD1** **12 PRONUNCIATION** Read and listen to conversation 1. Listen again and practise.
- b** Practise conversation 1 with four students. Use your name.
- 2 a** **CD1** **13 PRONUNCIATION** Read and listen to conversation 2. Listen again and practise.
- b** Work in groups. Take turns to introduce students to each other.

Vocabulary and Speaking

Countries and nationalities

- 3 a** Tick (✓) the countries you know.

countries <i>I'm from ...</i>	nationalities <i>I'm ...</i>
Brazil	Brazili <u>a n</u>
Australia	Australi _ _
Argentina	Argentini _ _
the USA	Améric _ _
Germany	Germ _ _
Italy	Itali _ _
Mexico	Méxic _ _
Russia	Rússi _ _
Egypt	Egypti _ _
the UK	Brit <u>i s h</u>
Spain	Span _ _ _
Poland	Pól _ _ _
Turkey	Türk _ _ _
China	Chin <u>e s e</u>
Japan	Japan _ _ _
France	French

- b** Write the missing letters in the nationalities. Check in Language Summary 1 **VOCABULARY 1.1** p128.

- c** Where are you from? What's your nationality?

I'm from Colombia.

I'm Korean.

- 4 a** **CD1** **14** Listen and notice the word stress (°) in the countries and nationalities in **3a**.

Brazil Brazilian

- b PRONUNCIATION** Listen again and practise. Copy the word stress.

Reading and Listening

- 5 a** **CD1** **15** Read and listen to conversations 3, 4 and 5. Write the countries.
- b** Work in pairs. Compare answers.

1 LISA Hello, Tom.
TOM Hi, Lisa. How are you?
LISA I'm fine, thanks.
And you?
TOM I'm OK, thanks.

2 PAOLO Bianca, this is Toshi.
BIANCA Hello, Toshi.
Nice to meet you.
TOSHI You too.

3 RECEPTIONIST Good morning.
What's your name, please?
CARLOS It's Carlos Moreno.
RECEPTIONIST And where are you from?
CARLOS I'm from _____.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

be (1): positive and *Wh-* questions

6 a Fill in the gaps with *'m*, *'re* or *'s*.

POSITIVE (+)

- 1 I 'm from Spain. (= I am)
- 2 You _____ in room 6. (= you are)
- 3 He _____ from Italy. (= he is)
- 4 She _____ from Brazil. (= she is)
- 5 It _____ Carlos Moreno. (= it is)
- 6 We _____ from Australia. (= we are)
- 7 They _____ from the UK. (= they are)

b Fill in the gaps with *are* or *'s*.

WH- QUESTIONS (?)

- 1 Where are you from?
- 2 Where _____ he from?
- 3 Where _____ she from?
- 4 What _____ your name?
- 5 What _____ your names?
- 6 Where _____ they from?

c Check in **GRAMMAR 1.1** p129.

4

RECEPTIONIST What are your names, please?
 DANIEL My name's Daniel Ross and this is Kelly Easton.
 RECEPTIONIST Where are you from?
 DANIEL We're from _____.
 RECEPTIONIST Welcome to the conference. You're in room 6.

7 a **CD1** **16 PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the sentences in **6a** and the questions in **6b**. Copy the contractions (*I'm*, *you're*, *What's*, etc.).

I'm from Spain.

b Work in pairs. Practise conversations 3, 4 and 5.

8 Fill in the gaps with *'m*, *'re*, *are* or *'s*.

EMMA Where ¹ are they from?
 DAVE They² _____ from Egypt.
 EMMA What ³ _____ **their** names?
 DAVE **His** name⁴ _____ Hanif and **her** name⁵ _____ Fatima.

RECEPTIONIST What ⁶ _____ **your** names, please?
 DIETER **Our** names ⁷ _____ Dieter Koller and Mehmet Kaya.
 RECEPTIONIST Where ⁸ _____ you from?
 DIETER I⁹ _____ from Germany and he¹⁰ _____ from Turkey.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Subject pronouns and possessive adjectives

9 Fill in the table with the words in **bold** in **8**.

subject pronouns	I	you	he	she	it	we	they
possessive adjectives	my	_____	_____	_____	its	_____	_____

GRAMMAR 1.2 p129

10 a Choose the correct words.

RECEPTIONIST What are ¹ you/your names, please?
 MARTIN ² We/Our names are Martin and Julia Green.
 RECEPTIONIST Where are ³ you/your from?
 MARTIN ⁴ We/Our 're from the USA.
 LISA Where are ⁵ they/their from?
 TOM ⁶ He/His 's from France and ⁷ she/her 's from Japan.
 LISA What are ⁸ they/their names?
 TOM ⁹ He/His name's Louis and ¹⁰ she/her name's Hiroko.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

Get ready ... Get it right!

11 Work in pairs. Student A p104. Student B p109.

5

EMMA Where's he from?
 DAVE He's from _____.
 EMMA OK. And where's she from?
 DAVE She's from _____.
 EMMA Right. And where are they from?
 DAVE They're from _____, I think.

Vocabulary jobs; *a* and *an*Grammar *be* (2): negative, *yes/no* questions and short answers**QUICK REVIEW Numbers 0–20**

Work in pairs. Count from 0 to 20:

A Zero. B One. A Two. B Three.

Then count backwards from 20 to 0:

A Twenty. B Nineteen. A Eighteen.

Listening and Speaking

- 1 a Work in pairs. Look at A–D. How do we say the phone numbers?

TIP • In phone numbers 0 = *oh* or *zero* and 11 = *double one*.

- b **CD1** 17 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

- 2 a **CD1** 18 Listen to four conversations. Write the phone numbers.

- b Ask three students their phone numbers. You can invent numbers if you like!

What's your mobile number?

It's ...

What's your home number?

It's ...

Vocabulary and Speaking Jobs

- 3 a Work in pairs. Which of these jobs do you know? Then do the exercise in **VOCABULARY 1.2** p128.

a manager a doctor an engineer
a sales assistant a waiter/a waitress
a cleaner a police officer
an actor/an actress a musician
a teacher a student a housewife
an accountant a lawyer
a builder a mechanic

TIPS • In these vocabulary boxes we only show the main stress.

• We can also say *I'm unemployed*, not *I'm an unemployed*, and *I'm retired*, not *I'm a retired*.

- b **CD1** 19 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise. Copy the word stress.

**HELP WITH VOCABULARY** *a* and *an*

- 4 Look at the jobs in **3a**. Then complete the rules with *a* or *an*.

- We use _____ with nouns that begin with a **consonant** sound. (The consonants are *b, c, d, f*, etc.)
- We use _____ with nouns that begin with a **vowel** sound. (The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*.)

VOCABULARY 1.3 p128

- 5 Fill in the gaps with *a* or *an*.

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| 1 _____ job | 4 _____ book |
| 2 _____ student | 5 _____ English book |
| 3 _____ answer | 6 _____ room |

- 6 a Look again at the pictures in **VOCABULARY 1.2** p128. Take turns to cover the words and test your partner.

What's his job?

He's a mechanic.

What's her job?

She's an actress.

- b What's your job? Ask other students.

What's your job?

I'm a manager.

What do you do?

I'm a student.

Listening and Speaking

7 a **CD1** **20** Read and listen to these conversations. Fill in the gaps with the correct jobs.

- 1 A Are you from New York?
B No, we aren't from the USA. We're from Canada.
A Oh, really? What do you do?
B I'm an ¹ _____ and Jane's a ² _____.
- 2 A Who's she?
B Her name's Sally Andrews.
A Is she a ³ _____?
B Yes, she is. But she isn't famous.
- 3 A What do you do?
B I'm a ⁴ _____. And you?
A I'm an ⁵ _____.
B Are you from Mexico?
A No, I'm not. I'm from Colombia.

b Look at the photo. Match conversations 1–3 to the groups of people A–C.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

be (2): negative, yes/no questions and short answers

8 a Look again at **7a**. Underline all the parts of *be* in the conversations.

b Fill in the gaps in these negative sentences with *'m*, *aren't* and *isn't*.

- 1 I _____ not a teacher.
- 2 You/We/They _____ from the USA. (= are not)
- 3 He/She/It _____ famous. (= is not)

c Fill in the gaps in these questions and answers with *'m*, *Is*, *Are*, *isn't* or *aren't*.

- 1 Are you from Spain?
Yes, I am./No, I _____ not.
- 2 _____ she a musician?
Yes, she is./No, she _____.
- 3 _____ you from New York?
Yes, we are./No, we _____.

d Check in **GRAMMAR 1.3** p129.

9 **CD1** **21** **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise. Copy the contractions (*I'm*, *aren't*, etc.).

I'm not a teacher.

We aren't from the USA.



10 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about the people in the photo.

Is he a doctor?

No, he isn't. He's an engineer.

11 a Tick (✓) the sentences that are true for you. Make the other sentences negative. Write the correct sentences.

- 1 I'm an English student. ✓
- 2 I'm from the UK.
I'm not from the UK. I'm from Poland.
- 3 My English class is in room 12.
- 4 I'm an accountant.
- 5 My teacher's from Australia.
- 6 My language school is in London.
- 7 My English lessons are on Tuesdays and Thursdays.
- 8 The students in my class are all from my country.

b Work in groups. Compare sentences.

Get ready ... Get it right!

12 Work in pairs. Student A p104. Student B p109.

QUICK REVIEW Jobs Work in pairs. Write all the jobs you know. Which pair in the class has the most words?

What number is it?

- 1 a** Work in pairs. How do we say these numbers?
Check in **VOCABULARY 1.4** p128.

20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100

- b** Work in the same pairs. Say these numbers.

28 34 47 51 63 75 86 92

- 2 a** **CD1** **22** Listen to these numbers. Notice the stress.

thirteen thirty fifteen fifty nineteen ninety

- b** **CD1** **23** Listen and write the numbers.

- c** **CD1** **24** **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the numbers in **2a** and **2b**.

- 3** Work in pairs. Say a number between 1 and 100.
Your partner says the next three numbers.

fifty-eight

fifty-nine, sixty, sixty-one

What's her address?

- 4 a** Look at the photo of Emma. Then match these words to Emma's things 1–3.

a credit card a business card a mobile phone

- b** Match these words/phrases to the letters a–j in the pictures.

- 1 first name **b**
- 2 surname
- 3 home number
- 4 work number
- 5 mobile number
- 6 home address
- 7 email address
- 8 postcode at work
- 9 credit card number
- 10 job

- c** Work in pairs. Ask questions about 1–10 in **4b**.

What's her first name?

Emma.



1 Webber & Webber Ltd
89 Villiers Street
Liverpool
a L14 6Y2

b Emma Mitchell
c Sales Manager

d Tel 0151 496 0814
e Mobile 07974 610771
f email emma.mitchell@wwl.co.uk



REAL WORLD

QUICK REVIEW Numbers 0–100

Work in pairs. Count from 0 to 51 in threes: **A Zero. B Three. A Six.** Then count from 0 to 98 in sevens: **B Zero. A Seven. B Fourteen.**

- 1** Look at the picture of the lost property room in the conference hotel. Match these words to 1–17.

diaries **12** wallets
an MP3 player a mobile
watches an umbrella bags
shoes a camera coats
a bike/bicycle a radio
suitcases a laptop
dresses ID cards false teeth

HELP WITH VOCABULARY

Plurals

- 2 a** Write the missing letters. When do we add -s, -es and -ies? Which plurals are irregular?

singular	plural
a bag	bag _
a wallet	wallet _
a suitcase	suitcase _
a watch	watch _
a dress	dress _
a diary	diar _ _
a man	m _ n
a woman	wom _ n
a child	childr _ n
a person	p _ _ ple
a tooth	t _ _ th

- b** Check in **VOCABULARY 1.6** p128.

- 3** **CD1 29 PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the singular and plural words in **2a**.

- 4** Write the plurals.

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| a a bike bikes | f a camera |
| b a credit card | g an address |
| c a nationality | h a man |
| d a waitress | i a country |
| e a person | j a woman |



- 5** Work in pairs. Take turns to test each other on 1–17.

Number 12.

They're diaries.

Number 17.

It's an MP3 player.

- 6 Eva's got a job at the hotel. Look at the pictures and fill in the gaps with words from 1.



HELP WITH VOCABULARY

this, that, these, those

- 7 Fill in the table with *this*, *that*, *these* and *those*.

	here ↓	there ↗
singular		
plural		

- 8 a CD1 30 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise. Copy the stress.

this → What's this? → What's this in English?

- b Choose three things in the classroom or from your bag. Ask your teacher what they are in English.

What's that in English?

It's a poster.

What are these in English?

They're keys.

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

Word stress and syllables

- 1 CD1 31 Listen to these words. Notice the stress and number of syllables. Listen again and practise.

Brit-ish Ja-pān

bi-cy-cle com-pū-ter sev-en-tēn

- 2 a Work in pairs. Write the words in the table.

teacher musician address thirty
thirteen umbrella engineer manager
Brazil Germany Japanese mobile
Mexican mechanic unemployed

Brit-ish	teacher		
Ja-pān			
bi-cy-cle			
com-pū-ter			
sev-en-tēn			

- b CD1 32 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

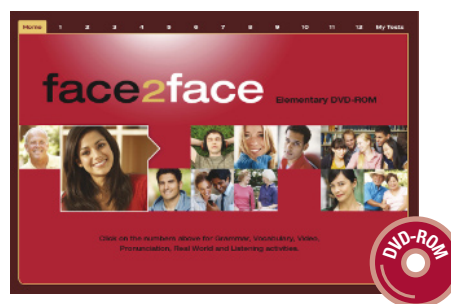
- 3 a Write five words. Mark the stress on each word.

- b Work in pairs. Compare words. Is the stress on your partner's words correct?

continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- Extra Practice 1 and Progress Portfolio 1 p115
- Language Summary 1 p128
- 1A-D Workbook p5
- Self-study DVD-ROM 1 with Review Video



Reading and Writing

- Portfolio 1 At the hotel Workbook p64
- Reading addresses; hotel registration forms
- Writing capital letters (1); addresses; filling in a hotel registration form

QUICK REVIEW Personal possessions
 What's in the lost property room at the conference hotel? Write all the things you can remember. Work in pairs. Compare lists. Then check on p14.

Vocabulary Adjectives (1)

- 1 a** Tick the adjectives you know. Then do the exercise in **VOCABULARY 2.1** p130.

new	old	big	small
good	bad	early	late
cheap	expensive	fast	slow
beautiful	ugly	young	old
easy	difficult	right	wrong
nice	great	important	favourite

- b** Work in pairs. Take turns to test your partner on the opposites.

old

new

HELP WITH VOCABULARY

Adjective word order and *very*

- 2** Look at these sentences. Then choose the correct words in the rules.

She's late.

It's a small bag.

It's a very difficult question.

Those are my new shoes.

- We put adjectives *before/after* the verb *be*.
- We put adjectives *before/after* a noun.
- We put *very* *before/after* adjectives.
- Adjectives *are/aren't* plural with plural nouns.

VOCABULARY 2.2 p130

- 3 a** Make sentences with these words.

1 very / 's / It / early .

It's very early.

2 answer / right / That / 's / the .

3 very / are / Those / dresses / expensive.

4 cheap / a / It / watch / 's .

5 very / They / good / 're / cameras .

6 question / very / a / difficult / 's / That .

- b** Work in pairs. Compare sentences.

ALAN What things are important in my life?
 Well, I've got an old car. It isn't very fast, but I love it. What else? Well, my mobile's very important to me. It's got all my friends' phone numbers on it, my photos, music, everything! I haven't got a laptop, but I've got an old computer. That's important to me for school. And I've got a big TV in my room. That's very important because I love football!



Reading and Listening

- 4 a** **CD1** 33 Read and listen to Alan and his grandmother, Mary. Underline the things that are important to each person.
b Read the texts again. Find all the adjectives.
c Work in pairs. Compare answers.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR *have got*: positive and negative

- 5 a** Look again at the texts about Alan and Mary. Find all the examples of 've got (= have got), 's got (= has got), haven't got and hasn't got.
b Fill in the gaps with 've, 's, haven't and hasn't.

POSITIVE (+)

I/you/we/they _____ got (= have got)

he/she/it _____ got (= has got)

NEGATIVE (-)

I/you/we/they _____ got (= have not got)

he/she/it _____ got (= has not got)

GRAMMAR 2.1 p131

MARY What's important to me? I've got this very expensive watch. It's from Ben, my husband, and I love it. And my diary – that's important to me too. Ben hasn't got a diary, he's got everything on his mobile these days. And my new bicycle is important to me because we haven't got a car. What else? Well, we've got a beautiful cat, Lily. She's very important!



Listening and Speaking

- 9 a Work in pairs. Look at the table and guess which things Alan and Mary have got. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (X) in the *guess* columns.

product	Alan		Mary	
	guess	answer	guess	answer
laptop	X	X		
camera				
MP3 player				
radio				
DVD player				

- b CD1 → 35 Listen to Alan and Mary answer questions for a survey. Complete the *answer* columns. Are your guesses correct?

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

have got: questions and short answers

- 10 a Fill in the gaps with *have*, *has*, *haven't* or *hasn't*.

QUESTIONS

Have you got a camera?

_____ he/she got a DVD player?

_____ they got any cheap TVs?

What _____ you got in your bag?

SHORT ANSWERS

Yes, I _____.

No, I _____.

Yes, he/she _____.

No, he/she _____.

Yes, they _____.

No, they _____.

TIP • We use *any* with plural nouns in *yes/no* questions.

- b Check in GRAMMAR 2.2 p131.

- 11 CD1 → 36 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions and short answers in 10a.

- 12 Work in pairs. Ask questions about Alan and Mary.

Has Alan got a new car?

No, he hasn't.

Get ready ... Get it right!

- 13 Work in pairs. Student A p104. Student B p109.

- 6 CD1 → 34 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise. Copy the stress and contractions (*I've*, *he's*, etc.).
I've got an old car.

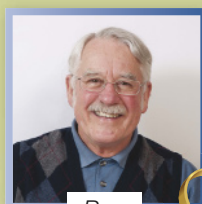
- 7 Fill in the gaps with the correct form of *have got*.

- I *'ve got* (+) a new camera.
- She _____ (–) a very big house.
- You _____ (+) a nice car.
- We _____ (–) a computer.
- I _____ (–) your mobile number.
- He _____ (+) a very good TV, but he _____ (–) a DVD player.
- Mary and Ben _____ (+) a beautiful cat called Lily.
- They _____ (–) a dog.

- 8 a Think of a friend and write five things he/she has got or hasn't got.

- b Work in pairs. Compare lists. Are any of the things the same?

QUICK REVIEW *have got* Work in pairs. Ask questions with *have got*. Find five things you've got but your partner hasn't got.



Ben



Mary

husband son daughter father
mother brother children

PAM We're a typical British family, I think. My ¹ husband 's name is Nick and we've got two ² _____, a boy and a girl. Our ³ son 's name is Robbie and Florence is our ⁴ _____ – she's just a baby. And my parents? Well, Ben is my ⁵ _____ and Mary is my ⁶ _____. I've got one ⁷ _____, his name's Greg, and one sister, Jill.

wife parents sisters granddaughter
grandsons grandchildren

GREG My ⁸ wife 's name is Martina and we've got one son, Alan. He's nineteen years old now. I've got two ⁹ _____, Pam and Jill. Pam's married with two kids and Jill's divorced. My ¹⁰ parents ' names are Ben and Mary. They've got three children and three ¹¹ _____, two ¹² _____, Alan and Robbie, and a ¹³ _____, Florence.



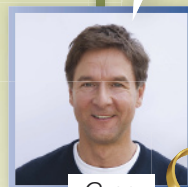
Nick



Pam



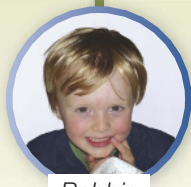
Jill



Greg



Martina



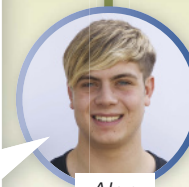
Robbie



Florence

aunts grandparents cousins
grandmother grandfather uncle

ALAN My mum and dad's names are Greg and Martina. I've got two ¹⁴ aunts, Pam and Jill, and one ¹⁵ _____. His name's Nick and he's a doctor. I've also got two ¹⁶ _____, Robbie and Florence. My ¹⁷ grandparents ' names are Ben – he's my ¹⁸ _____ – and Mary, my ¹⁹ _____.



Alan

Vocabulary, Reading and Listening Family

1 a Look at the family tree. Then read about the family. Fill in the gaps with the words in the boxes.

b **CD1** **37** Listen and check your answers.

2 Look again at the family tree. Put the words in the boxes in three groups. Then check in **VOCABULARY 2.3** **p130**.

- 1 male father/dad
- 2 female mother/mum
- 3 male and female parents

3 a Write four questions with *How many ... ?* about the people in the family tree.

How many brothers and sisters has Pam got?

How many children have Mary and Ben got?

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer your questions.

4 Tick the correct sentences. Change the words in bold in the incorrect sentences.

- 1 Jill is Pam's ~~cousin~~. sister
- 2 Ben is Mary's **husband**.
- 3 Jill is Alan's **cousin**.
- 4 Alan is Martina's **son**.
- 5 Nick and Pam are Robbie's **grandparents**.
- 6 Mary is Robbie and Florence's **grandmother**.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Possessive 's

- 5 a** Look at these sentences. Then read the rule.

Jill is Pam's sister. My husband's name is Nick.

- We use a name + 's (*Pam's*, etc.) or a noun + 's (*husband's*, etc.) for the possessive.

- b** 's can mean *is*, *has* or the possessive. Match 1–3 to a–c.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 Ben is Pam's father. | a 's = is |
| 2 Jill's her sister. | b 's = has |
| 3 She's got one brother. | c 's = possessive |

GRAMMAR 2.3 p131

- 6** Make sentences about these people.

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Pam / Alan | 3 Robbie / Florence |
| <i>Pam is Alan's aunt.</i> | 4 Mary / Ben |
| 2 Greg / Martina | 5 Florence / Ben and Mary |

- 7** **CD1 38 PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise. Copy the stress.

Alan's → Pām is Alan's aunt.

Listening and Speaking

- 8** Jill wants to show her new boyfriend, Luke, some photos. Look at photos A–D. Who are the people?



- 9 a** **CD1 39** Listen to Jill and Luke's conversation. Put photos A–D in order.

- b** Listen again and choose the correct words.

- Jill's sister Pam is an English / French teacher.
- Pam's husband Nick is a *lawyer/doctor*.
- Their son Robbie is *six/seven*.
- Jill's brother Greg is an *engineer/accountant*.
- His wife Martina is *Spanish/Italian*.
- Jill's mother is *retired/a sales assistant*.
- Jill's father is *seventy/seventy-three*.

HELP WITH LISTENING

Sentence stress (2)

- 10 a** **CD1 39** Listen to the first sentence of the conversation again. Notice the sentence stress. We stress the important words.

Luke, come and look at these photos of my family.

- b** Look at Audio Script **CD1 39** p156. Listen to the whole conversation and follow the stressed words.

Get ready ... Get it right!

- 11 a** Write your name and the names of five people in your family on a piece of paper. Think what you can say about these people (age, job, married, etc.). Don't write this information.

- b** Choose a partner, but don't talk to him/her. Swap papers. Make questions to ask about your partner's family.

Who's (Claudia)?

Is she married?

Has she got any children?

- 12 a** Work with your partner. Take turns to ask questions about his/her family. Make notes on your partner's answers.

- b** Tell another student about your partner's family.

QUICK REVIEW Family words Work in pairs. Write all the family words you know. Which words are for men/boys, women/girls, or both?

What's the time?

1 a Put these time words in order.

a minute a year a day a week
an hour a second 1 a month

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer these questions.

- How many minutes are in an hour?
- How many hours are in a day?
- How many months are in a year?
- How many weeks are in a year?
- How many hours are in a week?
- How many days are in a year?

2 a Match the times to pictures A-F.

one o'clock A quarter to ten twenty past five
half past seven quarter past four twenty to nine



b We can say times in a different way. Match these times to pictures A-F.

four fifteen five twenty seven thirty
eight forty nine forty-five one

3 a Complete the times.



1 five past _____ 2 twenty-five to _____ 3 ten _____



4 _____ eleven 5 _____-five 6 _____

b Check in **REAL WORLD 2.1** p131.

4 **CD1** 40 Listen and match conversations 1-3 to three of the pictures A-F in **2a**.

REAL WORLD Talking about the time

5 a Fill in the gaps in the questions and answers.

What time ¹ _____ it?

It's ² _____ o'clock.

What's the ³ _____, please?

It's about half ⁴ _____ seven.

Excuse me. Have you ⁵ _____ the time, please?

Yes, it's four fifteen.

b Fill in the gaps with *to*, *from* or *at*.

1 My English class is _____ ten.

2 My son's class is _____ seven _____ nine thirty.

REAL WORLD 2.2 p132

6 a **CD1** 41 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the questions and answers in **5a**. Copy the polite intonation in the questions.

b Write six times. Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in **5a**. Write your partner's times. Are they correct?

BRENT GALLERY Mexican Art

July 20th–September 3rd

Opening times

10.00–¹ Mon–Fri
10.00–² Sat & Sun

Adults ^a£9.50 / £10.50

Children ^b£5.60 / £6.50

Ticket office: 08081 570570

Book online: www.brentgallery.org.uk



FilmWorld

Acton Lane, London W3 5HU

Now showing

A New Day (12)

³ _____, 7.00, 9.20

The Brothers (15)

5.00, ⁴ _____, 9.30

Tickets: Adults ^c£10.50 / £11.50

Children ^d£7.25 / £8.25

For more information phone

08081 570203

www.filmworld.co.uk

An evening out

- 7 a** Look at adverts A and B. Which is for a cinema and which is for an exhibition?
- b** **CD1** **42** Listen and write the missing times 1–4 on the adverts.
- 8 a** Work in pairs. How do we say these prices?

£20 £7.50 40p £29.99
€9 €6.50 \$35 50c

- b** **CD1** **43** **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and check. Listen again and practise.
- c** **CD1** **44** Listen and choose the correct ticket prices a–d on adverts A and B.
- 9 a** Before you watch or listen, check these words with your teacher.

buy popcorn a screen start

- b** **VIDEO** **2** **CD1** **45** Look at the photo in a cinema. Watch or listen to the people's conversations with the ticket seller. Which film do Chris and Louise want to see? Which film do Alison and Josh want to see?

- 10** Watch or listen again. Complete the table.

	price of tickets	time film starts	screen number
Chris and Louise			
Alison and Josh			

REAL WORLD Buying tickets at the cinema

- 11 a** Read the sentences. Fill in the gaps with these words.

Can adults time are
Thanks please is welcome

CUSTOMER

TICKET SELLER

¹ Can I have (two) tickets for (*The Brothers*), please?
(Two) tickets for (*A New Day*),
² _____. One adult and one child.

Yes, of course.

How much ³ _____ that?
How much ⁴ _____ the tickets?

That's (£23), please.
(£11.50) for ⁵ _____ and
(£8.45) for children. So
that's (£19.95), please.

Here you are. What ⁶ _____ is the film?

It starts at (seven fifteen).
It starts in (two minutes).

Right. ⁷ _____ a lot.
Thank you very much.

You're ⁸ _____. Enjoy the film.

- b** Check in **REAL WORLD 2.4** p132.

- 12** **CD1** **46** Listen and practise the customer's sentences in **11a**.

- 13** Work in pairs. Student A p105. Student B p110.

QUICK REVIEW Times and prices Write four times and four prices. Work in pairs. Say them to your partner. He/She writes them down. Are they correct?

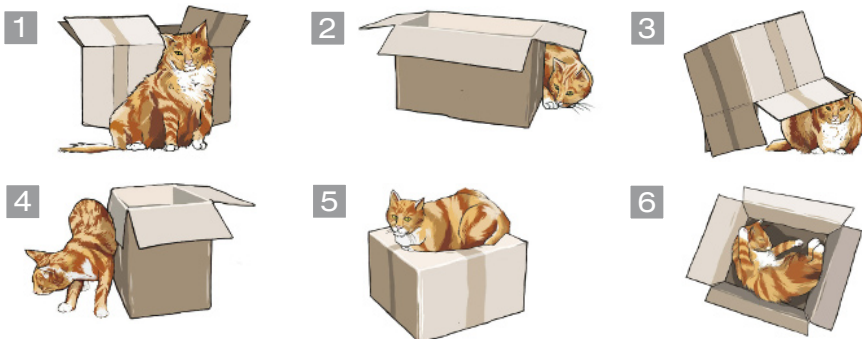
- 1** Work in pairs. Which of these words do you know? Then do the exercise in **VOCABULARY 2.5** ▶ p130.

a mirror a desk a sofa a carpet a door a bookcase
a window the floor a plant a coffee table a lamp curtains

HELP WITH VOCABULARY Prepositions of place

- 2** Where's the cat? Match the prepositions to pictures 1–6. Then check in **VOCABULARY 2.6** ▶ p131.

in on by under behind in front of



- 3 a** Look at the picture. Choose six of these things. Write sentences to say where they are.

Nick's suitcase is behind the sofa.

Nick's suitcase
Nick's keys
Nick's mobile phone
Pam's coat
Robbie's new shoes
the cat
Robbie's bag
Robbie's books
Nick's passport
Robbie's MP3 player
the lamp
the DVDs

- b** Work in pairs. Compare sentences. Are your partner's sentences correct?



- 4 Work in pairs. Cover the box in **3a**. Point at things in the picture and ask questions with *Whose ...?*

Whose mobile phone is this?

It's Nick's.

Whose shoes are these?

They're Robbie's.

- 5 a **CD1** 47 Listen and tick the things in the box in **3a** that the family talk about.

b Listen again. Three things are in the wrong place in the picture. What are they?

c Where's the baby?!

- 6 Look at Audio Script **CD1** 47 p156. Listen again and underline all the prepositions of place.

- 7 Look at the picture for one minute. Then cover the picture. Work in pairs. Take turns to ask where things are in the living room.

Where's Robbie's bag?

It's by the door.

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

The schwa /ə/ in words

- 1 a **CD1** 48 The schwa /ə/ is very common in English. Listen to these words. Notice the schwas. Is the schwa stressed?

address mechanic Poland teacher
/ə/ /ə/ /ə/ /ə/

doctor number manager accountant
/ə/ /ə/ /ə/ /ə/

b Listen again and practise.

- 2 a Work in pairs. Underline the schwa in each word.

China seven actor important second
daughter parents Japan police sofa

b **CD1** 49 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

- 3 a Look at these words. Circle the word with a schwa.

1 email /letter	5 laptop / computer
2 dentist / cleaner	6 Italy / Egypt
3 seventy / ninety	7 window / mirror
4 Spanish / German	8 Saturday / Tuesday

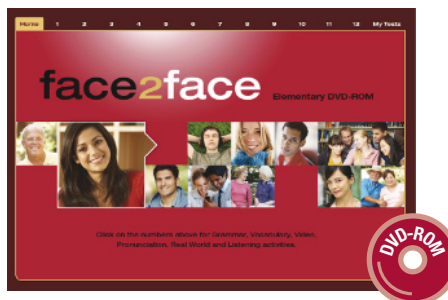
b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

c **CD1** 50 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 2 and Progress Portfolio 2** p116
- **Language Summary 2** p130
- **2A-D Workbook 2** p10
- **Self-study DVD-ROM 2** with Review Video



Reading and Writing

- **Portfolio 2** My favourite thing Workbook p66
- Reading** people's favourite things
- Writing** capital letters (2); punctuation; a description of your favourite thing

QUICK REVIEW Prepositions of place

Work in pairs. Say where something is in the classroom: **A** *It's on the floor behind the teacher's desk.* Your partner guesses what it is: **B** *Is it a bag?* **A** *Yes, it is./No, it isn't.*

Vocabulary Daily routines

- 1 a** Tick the words/phrases you know. Then do the exercise in **VOCABULARY 3.1** ▶ p132.

get up go to bed leave home get home
have breakfast have lunch have dinner
start work/classes finish work/classes
work study sleep live

TIP • In these vocabulary boxes we only show the main stress in phrases.

- b** Match two of the words/phrases from **1a** to these times of day.

- 1 in the morning *get up* 3 in the evening
2 in the afternoon 4 at night

- c** Work in pairs. Compare answers. Are they the same?

Reading and Speaking

- 2 a** Look at the photos of Kari Matchett. What's her job?

- b** Before you read, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

glamorous a TV show a studio
hair make-up learn your lines

- c** Work in pairs. Guess the times that TV actors do these things.

- 1 get up 3 start work
2 have breakfast 4 have lunch

- d** Read the article and check your answers.

- 3** Read the article again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

- Canada*
1 Kari Matchett is from Los Angeles. *F*
2 TV actors get up very late.
3 They have breakfast at the studio.
4 They work for six hours before lunch.
5 They have half an hour for lunch.

Behind the Camera

by David Ross

This week I talk to Kari Matchett, star of the TV shows *24* and *ER*, about a typical day at the studio and her glamorous life as an actress.



DAVID Where are you from, Kari?

KARI I'm from Canada, but I live and work in Los Angeles.

D Can you tell us about your day-to-day life?

K Well, TV actors work very long days and we start work very early.

D What time do you get up?

K I get up at 4.30 in the morning.

D Wow! You get up very early.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Present Simple (1): positive (I/you/we/they)

- We use the Present Simple to talk about daily routines.

- 4 a** Find the verbs in these sentences. They are in the Present Simple.

- 1 I get up at 4.30 in the morning.
2 You get up very early.
3 We start work at about 7.00.
4 They have an hour for lunch.

- b** Is the Present Simple the same or different after *I, you, we* and *they*?

GRAMMAR 3.1 ▶ p134

- 5** **CD1** ▶ **51** **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the sentences in **4a**. Copy the stress.

I get up at four thirty in the morning.

- 6 a** Look at Kari's answers in the article again. Underline all the verbs in the Present Simple.

- b** Work in pairs. Compare answers.



- K** Yes, and I'm not very good in the morning, so it's always difficult! I leave home at 5.30 and I get to the studio at about 6.00. That's when people do my hair and make-up.
- D** What about breakfast?
- K** I have breakfast at about 6.15 in the make-up room. Then we start work at about 7.00.
- D** When do you have lunch?
- K** We have lunch at 1.00 and we start work again at 2.00.

- 7** Read about Kari's afternoon and evening routine. Fill in the gaps with these verbs.

finish get go start finish sleep

- D** When do you finish work?
- K** Most days we ¹ *finish* at about 9.00.
- D** You ² _____ work at 7.00 and you ³ _____ work at 9.00!
- K** Yes, it's a very long day, but sometimes I ⁴ _____ for an hour in the afternoon.
- D** What time do you get home?
- K** I ⁵ _____ home at about 9.30.
- D** Where do you have dinner?
- K** Usually at home while I learn my lines for the next day. Then I ⁶ _____ to bed at 11.00.
- D** So do you have a glamorous life?
- K** Not when I'm at work, no – definitely not!

- 8 a** Write six sentences about your daily routine. Use words/phrases from **1a**.

I start work at half past eight.

- b** Work in pairs. Compare sentences.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Present Simple (1): Wh- questions (I/you/we/they)

- 9 a** Look at the table. Notice the word order in questions.

question word	auxiliary	subject	infinitive	
What time	do	you	get up?	
When	do	you	have	lunch?

TIP • Present Simple questions are the same for I, you, we and they.

- b** Write questions 1–3 in the table.

- When **do** you **finish** work?
- What time **do** you **get** home?
- Where **do** you **have** dinner?

- c** Check in **GRAMMAR 3.2** p134.

- 10 a** Make questions with these words.

- Where / live / you / do ? *Where do you live?*
- you / do / Where / work ?
- What time / get up / you / do ?
- start / When / do / you / work or classes ?
- do / What time / get / you / home ?
- dinner / do / When / you / have ?

- b** **CD1 52 PRONUNCIATION** Listen and check. Notice how we say *do you* /dʒə/. Then listen again and practise.

Where do you /dʒə/ live?

- c** Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in **10a**.

Get ready ... Get it right!

- 11** Write eight questions about people's routines in the week or at the weekend. Use words/phrases from **1a**.

What time do you go to bed in the week?

When do you get up at the weekend?

- 12 a** Ask other students your questions. For each question, find one student who does this at the same time as you.

- b** Tell the class two things that you and other students do at the same time.

QUICK REVIEW Daily routines Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your Sunday routines: **A** *What time do you get up on Sundays?* **B** *At about eleven. And you?* Are the times the same or different?

Vocabulary Free time activities (1)

- 1 a** Work in pairs. Which of these phrases do you know? Then do the exercise in

VOCABULARY 3.2 ▶ p133.

stay in go out (a lot) eat out
 go for a drink go to the cinema
 go to concerts go shopping
 phone friends/my family
 visit friends/my family
 have coffee with friends
 do (a lot of) sport
 watch (a lot of) TV/DVDs

- b** Work in new pairs. What are your five favourite things to do on Saturdays?

Listening

- 2** Look at the photo of Freddie and Jeanette. Where are they? Are they good friends, do you think?
- 3 a** **CD1** ▶ 53 Listen to Freddie and Jeanette's conversation. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?
- Freddie and Jeanette are good friends. **F**
 - They work in the same office.
 - They watch a lot of DVDs.
 - Freddie's got tickets for a concert on Saturday.
 - Freddie and Jeanette are single.
- b** Listen again. Tick the things in **1a** that Jeanette does in her free time.
- go out after work
 - watch TV in the evenings
 - go to the cinema
 - watch a lot of DVDs **✓**
 - go shopping on Saturday morning
 - go out on Saturday evening
 - visit her parents on Sunday afternoon
 - go to concerts



HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Present Simple (2): negative (*I/you/we/they*)

- 4 a** Look at the table. Notice the word order.

subject	auxiliary	infinitive	
I	don't (= do not)	go out	on Saturday evening.
You	don't	work	in this office.

- b** Write sentences 1 and 2 in the table.

- We **don't** **stay in** at the weekend.
- They **don't** **watch** TV in the day.

- c** Check in **GRAMMAR 3.3** ▶ p134.

- 5 a** Tick the sentences that are true for you. Make the other sentences negative.

- I study English. **✓**
- I phone my family every day
I don't phone my family every day.
- I go shopping on Saturdays.
- I watch TV every evening.
- I eat out with my friends a lot.
- I live near this school.
- I have lunch at 12.00 every day.
- I work at the weekends.

- b** Work in pairs. Compare sentences.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Present Simple (2): yes/no questions and short answers (I/you/we/they)

- 6 a** Look at the table. Notice the word order in the questions.

YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)				SHORT ANSWERS
auxiliary	subject	infinitive		
Do	you	eat out	a lot?	Yes, I do . No, I don't .
				Yes, we _____. No, we _____. Yes, they _____. No, they _____.

- b** Write questions 1 and 2 in the table.

1 Do you go to concerts? 2 Do they watch TV a lot?

- c** Fill in the gaps in the *short answers* column with *do* or *don't*.

- d** Check in **GRAMMAR 3.4** p134.

HELP WITH LISTENING

Weak forms (1): *do you ... ?*

- 7 a** **CD1** 54 Listen to how we usually say *do you*.

YOU EXPECT TO HEAR

Do you /du: ju: /

YOU USUALLY HEAR

Do you /dʒə /

Do you /du: ju: / go out after work? Do you /dʒə / go out after work?

- b** **CD1** 55 Listen to these questions. Fill in the gaps. You will hear each sentence twice.

- What _____ in the evenings?
- _____ to the cinema?
- What _____ at the weekends?
- _____ to concerts?

- 8 a** Fill in the gaps with *do*, *don't* or a verb from the box.

go-out visit go out watch go (x2)

- A Do you go out a lot in the week?
B Yes, we _____.
- A _____ you _____ your parents at the weekend?
B Yes, I _____.
- A _____ you _____ to concerts at the weekend?
B No, we _____.
- A _____ you _____ shopping on Saturdays?
B Yes, I _____.
- A _____ your parents _____ on Saturday evenings?
B No, they _____. They stay in and _____ TV.

- b** **CD1** 56 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and check. Listen again and practise. Copy the stress and weak forms.

Do you /dʒə / go out a lot in the week?

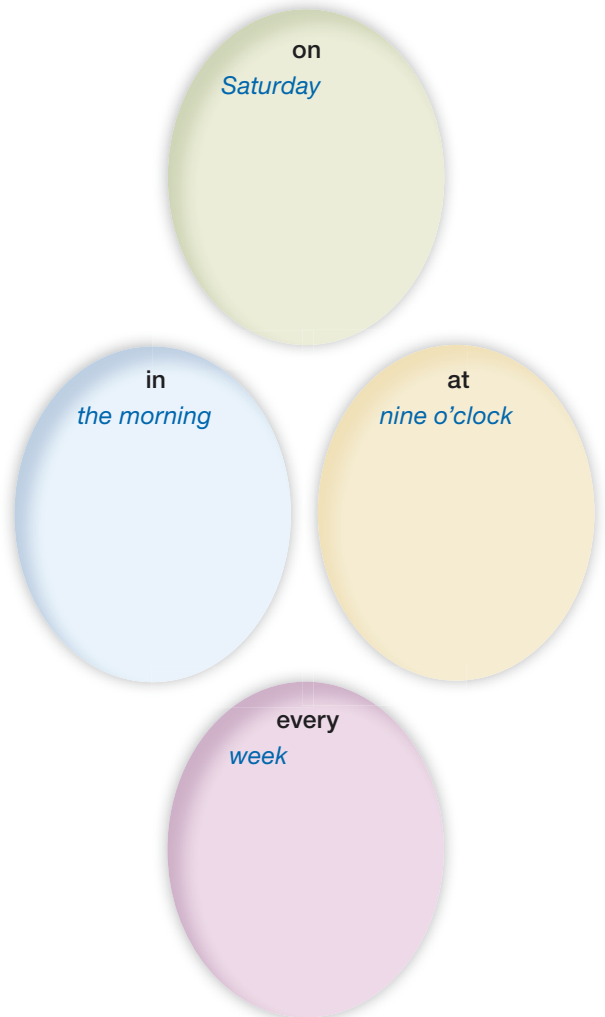
- c** Work in pairs. Take turns to ask the questions in **8a**. Answer for you.

Vocabulary and Speaking

Time phrases with *on*, *in*, *at*, *every*

- 9 a** Write these words and phrases in the correct place. Some words and phrases can go in more than one place. Then check in **VOCABULARY 3.3** p133.

Saturday the morning nine o'clock
week the afternoon day
the evening month half past three
night the week Mondays
Monday mornings the weekend
morning Sunday afternoon



- b** Work in pairs. Test your partner.

the weekend

at the weekend

Get ready ... Get it right!

- 10** Work in two groups. Group A p105. Group B p110.

QUICK REVIEW Free time activities Write four ways to end this sentence: *On a perfect day I ...* . Work in pairs. Compare your days.



Congratulations!

1 Match cards A–E to special days 1–5.

- 1 a birthday
- 2 a wedding
- 3 the birth of a new baby
- 4 a New Year's Eve party
- 5 a wedding anniversary

2 a Match these phrases to the special days in 1.

Happy birthday!
Happy New Year!
Congratulations!
Happy anniversary!

b CD1 57 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

c CD1 58 Listen and answer with the correct phrase.

4 a Match the dates with the words. Then check in VOCABULARY 3.5 p133.

1 st	second	13 th	twentieth
2 nd	twelfth	20 th	thirty-first
3 rd	fourth	21 st	thirtieth
4 th	fifth	22 nd	twenty-second
5 th	first	30 th	twenty-first
12 th	third	31 st	thirteenth

b CD1 60 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the dates in 4a.

REAL WORLD Talking about days and dates

5 a Match questions 1–4 to answers a–d. Notice the words in bold.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 What day is it today? | a (It's) the fifth of March. |
| 2 What's the date today? | b (It's) March the sixth. |
| 3 What's the date tomorrow? | c (It's on) June the third. |
| 4 When's your birthday? | d It's Wednesday. |

b CD1 61 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

REAL WORLD 3.2 p134

When's your birthday?

3 a Put the months in the correct order.

July March December
January 1 April October
August June February
November May September

b CD1 59 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

6 CD1 62 Listen to six conversations. Which dates do you hear?

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 September 5 th / 15 th | 4 July 2 nd / 22 nd |
| 2 December 13 th / 30 th | 5 October 13 th / 30 th |
| 3 March 4 th / 14 th | 6 February 1 st / 5 th |

7 a Write four dates that are important to you every year.

b Work in pairs. Say your dates to your partner. Write your partner's dates. Then ask why they are important.

Why is May 6th important to you?

Because it's my wedding anniversary.



Chris

Louise

What shall we get her?

8 a VIDEO 3 CD1 63 Watch or listen to Louise and her husband, Chris. What do they decide to buy their friend Sophie for her birthday?

b Watch or listen again and choose the correct answer.

- 1 The date today is the 19th (29th).
- 2 It's Sophie's birthday on Tuesday/Thursday.
- 3 Louise *has got/hasn't got* Sophie a birthday card.
- 4 Sophie *has got/hasn't got* an MP3 player.
- 5 Sophie *has got/hasn't got* lots of books.
- 6 Sophie and Marcus *watch/don't watch* a lot of DVDs.

REAL WORLD Suggestions

9 Read these sentences. Fill in the gaps with these words.

get good What Why think her

What shall we ¹ get her?

² _____ about (an MP3 player)?

~~X~~ No, I don't ³ _____ so.

⁴ _____ don't we get her
(a book)?

☒ Maybe.

Let's get ⁵ _____ (a DVD).

☒ Yes, that's a ⁶ _____
idea.

TIP • We can say *get* or *buy*: *What shall we get/buy her?*

REAL WORLD 3.3 p134

10 CD1 64 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **9**.

What shall we get her?

11 Sophie and Marcus want to buy their son Liam a birthday present. Fill in the gaps with the correct words.

SOPHIE It's Liam's ¹ birthday next week. What ² _____ we get him?

MARCUS ³ _____ don't ⁴ _____
get him a laptop?

S No, I ⁵ _____ think ⁶ _____.

Let's ⁷ _____ him a new mobile.

M Maybe. But his mobile's only a year old.

S I know! What ⁸ _____ a new bike?

M Yes, ⁹ _____ a good ¹⁰ _____.

12 a Work in pairs. It's Louise's birthday next week. Sophie and Marcus want to buy her a present. Write their conversation. Use language from **9**.

b Practise the conversation until you remember it.

c Work in groups of four. Role-play your conversations for the other pair. What present do the other pair choose?

QUICK REVIEW Dates Work in pairs. Take turns to say the dates 1st–31st: **A First. B Second. A Third ...** Then say them backwards! **A Thirty-first. B Thirtieth. A Twenty-ninth ...**

- 1** Put these frequency adverbs on the line. Then check in **VOCABULARY 3.6** p133.

hardly ever never always sometimes often usually



- 2 a** Read the questionnaire. Tick your answers.
b Look at p114. What's your score? Are you an early bird or a night owl?
c Work in groups. Compare scores. How many of your answers are the same?
- 3 a** **CD1** 65 Listen to Jeanette and her husband, Dominic. Write *J* by Jeanette's answers to the questionnaire.
b Work in pairs. Compare answers. What's Jeanette's score? What kind of person is she?

HELP WITH VOCABULARY

Word order of frequency adverbs

- 4 a** Underline the frequency adverbs (*often*, etc.) in the questionnaire.
b Choose the correct words in the rules.
● Frequency adverbs go *before/after* the verb *be*.
● Frequency adverbs go *before/after* other verbs.

VOCABULARY 3.7 p133.

- 5 a** Put a frequency adverb in these sentences and make them true for you.
1 I get up at eight in the morning.
I never get up at eight in the morning.
2 I have breakfast before 9 a.m.
3 I'm tired on Friday evenings.
4 I study English in the evening.
5 I'm happy on Monday mornings.
6 I go to the cinema at the weekend.
7 I'm late for my English class.
8 I watch TV on Sunday afternoons.
b Work in pairs. Compare sentences. How many are the same?

Are you an early bird or a night owl?

Do the questionnaire to find out!

1 When I get up in the morning ...

- a** I'm always happy and I have a lot of energy.
b I'm sometimes happy, but I don't have a lot of energy.
c I'm not very happy and I never have a lot of energy.

2 At the weekend ...

- a** I sometimes get up before 9 a.m.
b I always get up before 9 a.m.
c I hardly ever get up before 9 a.m.

3 When I go to a party ...

- a** I always stay to the end.
b I sometimes stay to the end.
c I never stay to the end.

4 When there's a good film on TV late at night ...

- a** I always watch **it** to the end.
b I usually record **it** and go to bed.
c I often watch the beginning but I never see the end.

5 When I see friends at the weekend ...

- a** I usually see **them** in the afternoon.
b I sometimes have coffee with **them** in the morning.
c I hardly ever see **them** before 9 p.m.

6 When a friend phones me before 8 a.m. ...

- a** I'm always happy to talk to **him/her**.
b I'm sometimes happy to talk to **him/her**.
c I never answer the phone.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Subject and object pronouns

- 6 a** Look at the words in **pink** and **blue** in these sentences. Which are subject pronouns? Which are object pronouns?

I usually see **them** in the afternoon.
We hardly ever see **him** in the week.

- b** Look at questions 4–6 in the questionnaire. Fill in the table with the object pronouns in **blue**.

subject pronouns	object pronouns
I	me
you	you
he	
she	
it	
we	us
they	

- c** Check in **GRAMMAR 3.5** p134.

- 7 a** Choose the correct words.

- Lauren's my sister and **I/me** see **she/her** every Sunday.
- Ian and I phone Eve a lot, but **she/her** never phones **we/us**.
- My name's Zachariah, but my friends always call **I/me** Zak.
- Alexander's our son and **we/us** see **he/him** every weekend.
- Rob and Andy are my cousins, but **I/me** hardly ever talk to **they/them**.

- b** Work in pairs. Compare answers. Underline the object pronouns. Who do they refer to?

- 1 **her** → **Lauren**

- 8 a** Write two things you: always, usually, sometimes, hardly ever do in the morning.

always – **get up early, have coffee**

- b** Work in new pairs. Compare answers. Are any the same?

I always get up early in the morning.

Me too.

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

How we say *th*

- 1 a** **CD1** **66** Listen to these sounds and words. Notice the two ways we say *th*.

/θ/	/ð/
four th thirteen th	the this that
month birth day	these those
think thing	they their
Thurs day teeth	with moth er
	father broth er

- b** Listen again and practise.

- 2 a** **CD1** **67** Listen to these sentences. Listen again and practise.

- Who's **that** over **there** with **Matthew's** **father**?
- It's **Kathy's** **thirty-third** birth**day** **this** **Thurs**day.
- I **think** **Beth's** **three** **broth**ers are **with** **their** **moth**er.
- That's** **the** **sixth** or **seventh** time **this** **month**.
- Thanks** for taking **those** **things** to **Theo's** **broth**er.
- I **think** **those** are **their** **father's** **things**.

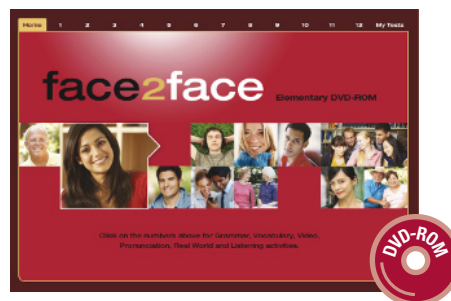
- b** Work in pairs. Take turns to say the sentences. Is your partner's pronunciation correct?

- c** Say one of the sentences for the class.

continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- Extra Practice 3 and Progress Portfolio 3** p117
- Language Summary 3** p132
- 3A–D Workbook** p15
- Self-study DVD-ROM 3** with Review Video



Reading and Writing

- Portfolio 3** All about me Workbook p68
- Reading** learner profiles
- Writing** connecting words (1): *and, but, because*; a learner profile

QUICK REVIEW Frequency adverbs Write sentences about things you: never, sometimes, always, often do on Saturdays. Work in pairs. Take turns to say your sentences. Are any the same?

Vocabulary and Speaking

Free time activities (2)

- 1 a** Tick the phrases you know. Then do the exercise in **VOCABULARY 4.1** p135.

take photos go to the gym
watch sport on TV play video games
play tennis read books or magazines
go cycling go swimming go running
go clubbing listen to music
listen to the radio

TIP • We can say *play video games* or *play computer games*.

- b** Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about the free time activities in **1a**.

Do you watch sport on TV?

No, never.

Yes, every weekend.

Listening and Speaking

- 2 a** Before you read and listen, check these words with your teacher.

an observatory stars the weather
a holiday hot rain

- b** Read the email and look at the photo. Where is Trevor? Who is Polly, do you think?

- c** **CD1** ▶ 68 Listen to Polly and her friend, Lorna. Choose the correct answers.

- 1 Trevor is in *Argentina/Chile*.
- 2 Trevor and Polly *are/aren't* married.
- 3 Trevor's got *three/four* weeks' holiday.
- 4 The hotel *is/isn't* very good.

- 3 a** Work in pairs. What does Trevor do in his free time, do you think? Choose six activities from **1a**.

- b** **CD1** ▶ 69 Listen to the rest of Polly and Lorna's conversation. Are your guesses correct?

HELP WITH LISTENING Linking (1)

- We usually link consonant (*b, c, d, f*, etc.) sounds at the end of a word with vowel (*a, e, i, o, u*) sounds at the beginning of the next word.

- 4 a** **CD1** ▶ 70 Listen and notice the linking.

YOU EXPECT TO HEAR

And all of

the people are nice

And all of the people are nice.

YOU USUALLY HEAR

And all of

the people are nice

And all of the people are nice.

- b** Look at Audio Script **CD1** ▶ 69 p157. Listen again and notice the linking in Polly's part of the conversation.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Present Simple (3): positive and negative (*he/she/it*)

- 5 a** Look at these sentences. Then complete the rules.

He plays video games.

He doesn't like the weather.

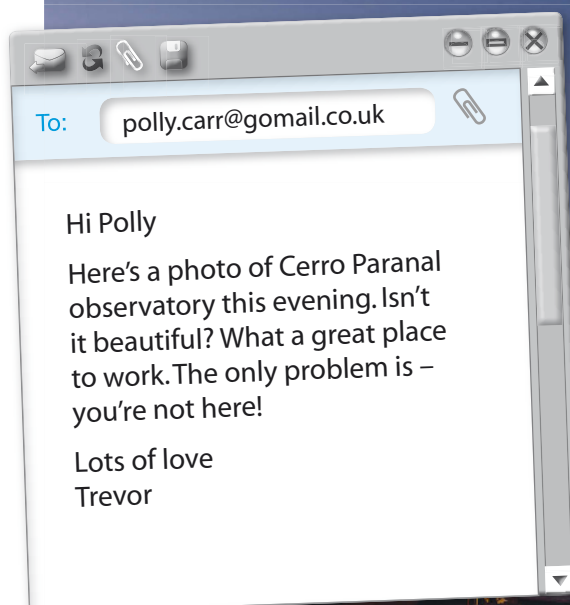
He watches lots of DVDs.

She doesn't talk to him very often.

- In positive sentences with *he, she* and *it* we add _____ or _____ to the infinitive.
- In negative sentences with *he, she* and *it* we use _____ + infinitive.

TIP • *have* is irregular: *he/she/it has ...* : *He has tennis lessons every week.*

- b** Check in **GRAMMAR 4.1** p137.



- 6 a** Check the spelling rules in **GRAMMAR 4.2** p137. Then write the *he/she/it* forms of these verbs.

watch play go write phone get
finish have study start do live

- b** **CD1 71 PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the infinitives and the *he/she/it* forms of the verbs in **6a**. Which have the sound /ɪz/ at the end?

watch, watches /ɪz/

- 7** Fill in the gaps with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Lorna and Polly are both sales assistants in London, but they ¹ *don't work* (not work) in the same shop. Polly ² _____ (work) in a shoe shop and Lorna ³ _____ (work) in a bookshop. In their free time they ⁴ _____ (read) a lot. Lorna ⁵ _____ (not like) sport, but Polly ⁶ _____ (play) tennis a lot and she ⁷ _____ (watch) sport on TV. At the weekend Lorna ⁸ _____ (not stay) in London. She ⁹ _____ (go) to see her parents in Bath. Polly ¹⁰ _____ (not visit) her parents very often because they ¹¹ _____ (not live) in England.

Get ready ... Get it right!

- 8 a** Choose a partner, but don't talk to him/her. Look at the words/phrases in the box. Guess what your partner does or doesn't do in his/her free time. Complete the sentences with the positive or negative form of the verbs in brackets.

My partner's name _____

He/She	swimming. (go)
He/She	tennis. (play)
He/She	sport on TV. (watch)
He/She	to the gym. (go)
He/She	books/magazines. (read)
He/She	video games. (play)
He/She	cycling. (go)
He/She	a lot of DVDs. (watch)
He/She	clubbing. (go)



- b** Make questions with *you* for each sentence in the box.

Do you go swimming?

- 9 a** Work with your partner. Take turns to ask your questions. How many of your guesses are correct?

Do you go swimming?

Yes, I do.

No, I don't.

Yes, sometimes.

- b** Tell another student about your partner.

Alex doesn't go swimming, but she plays tennis a lot.

QUICK REVIEW Free time activities

Write eight free time activities. Work in pairs. Tell your partner when you do the things on your list: *I play tennis on Fridays. I watch sport on TV at the weekend.*

Vocabulary and Speaking

Things you like and don't like

- 1 Work in pairs. Which of these words/phrases do you know? Then do the exercise in **VOCABULARY 4.2** p135.

reading football travelling cats
 shopping for clothes video games
 animals dancing cooking
 dance music rock music jazz
 Italian food Chinese food fast food

- 2 Put these phrases in order 1-7.

I love ... 1 I hate ... 7 I like ...
 ... is/are OK. I don't like ...
 I really like ... I quite like ...

HELP WITH VOCABULARY

Verb+ing

- 3 a With the phrases in 2 we can use verb+ing or a noun. Look at these sentences.

I love reading. (verb+ing)

I like books. (noun)

- b Find all the verb+ing words in 1.

TIP • We use **enjoy** + verb+ing to say we like doing something: *I enjoy travelling.*

VOCABULARY 4.4 p135

- 4 Work in pairs. Talk about the things in 1 and your own ideas. Do you like the same things?

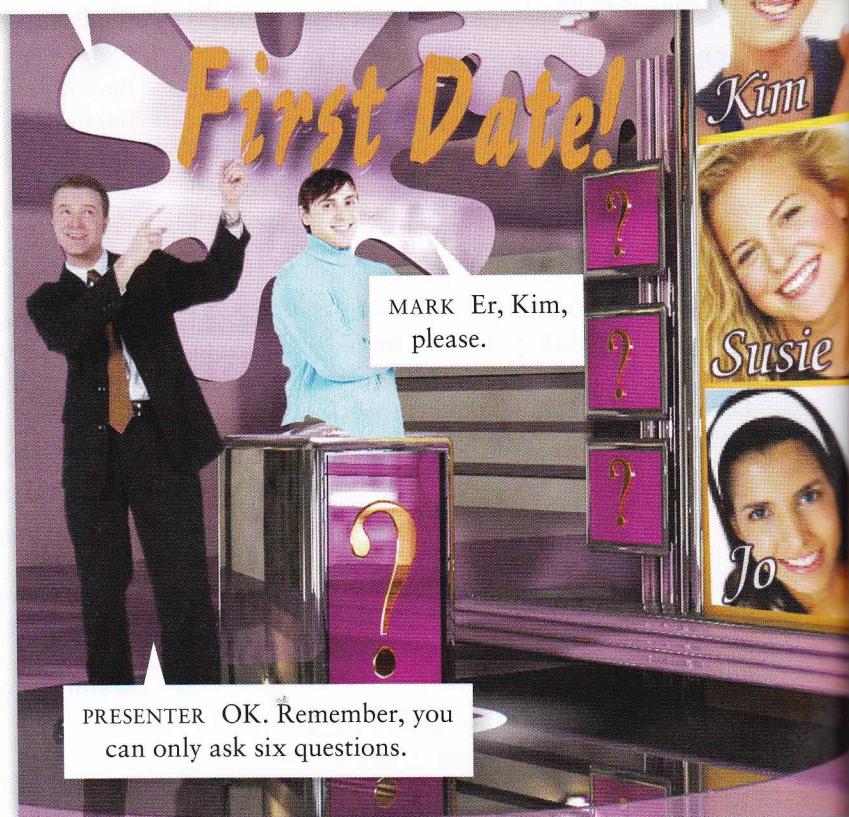
I really like video games.

Me too./I don't. I hate them.

Do you like dance music?

Yes, I love it./It's OK./No, not really.

PRESENTER Hello and welcome to *First Date!*. Tonight you choose a date for Mark Skipper. Mark is 28 years old and he's a teacher. In his free time he watches TV and plays video games. He also goes to the cinema a lot and he plays football and tennis every weekend. He loves rock music and Chinese food, but he hates shopping for clothes! He also likes animals – he's got a dog and three cats. So, Mark – who do you want to ask about first?



MARK Er, Kim, please.

PRESENTER OK. Remember, you can only ask six questions.

Reading, Listening and Speaking

- 5 **CD1** 72 Read and listen to the TV game show, *First Date!*. Find four things Mark likes and one thing he doesn't like.

- 6 a Match Mark's questions about Kim to the presenter's answers.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1 What does she do in her free time? | a Yes, she does. She's got two dogs. |
| 2 Does she watch TV a lot? | b Yes, she goes to the cinema every Saturday evening. |
| 3 Does she like films? | c She loves dance music, but she doesn't like rock music. |
| 4 What music does she like? | d She plays tennis and she eats out a lot. She loves Italian food. |
| 5 Does she like animals? | e No, she doesn't. She hates watching TV! |
| 6 And what does she do? | f She's a vet. |

- b **CD1** 73 Listen and check.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Present Simple (4): questions and short answers (he/she/it)

- 7 a** Look at **6a**. Then fill in the gaps with *does* or *doesn't*.

QUESTIONS

1 _____ she **like** animals?

SHORT ANSWERS

Yes, she _____.

2 _____ she **watch** TV a lot?

No, she _____.

3 What _____ she **do** in her free time?

- b** Look at the table. Notice the word order in questions. Then write questions 3 and 4 from **6a** in the table.

question word	auxiliary	subject	infinitive	
What	does	she	do	in her free time?
	Does	she	watch	TV a lot?

- c** Check in **GRAMMAR 4.3** p137. Then read **GRAMMAR 4.4** p137.

- 8 a** Write questions with *she*.

1 What / do? *What does she do?*

2 / like rock music?

3 What food / like?

4 / like sport?

5 / have any animals?

6 What / do on Saturday evenings?

- b** **CD1 74 PRONUNCIATION** Listen and check. Listen again and practise. Copy the stress.

What does she do?

- c** Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in **8a** about Kim. Find her answers in **6a**.

- 9 a** Work in pairs. Student A, read about Jo on p105. Student B, read about Susie on p110. Find the answers to the questions in **8a**.

- b** Work with your partner. Ask and answer the questions in **8a** about Jo or Susie.

- c** Tell your partner three more things about Jo or Susie.

- 10 a** Work in groups. Which woman do you want to choose for Mark's first date – Kim, Jo or Susie? Why?

- b** Tell the class which woman your group wants for Mark's first date and why. The class must agree on one person!

- c** Read about Mark's date with the woman the class chose. (Kim p106, Jo p111, Susie p114). Answer these questions.

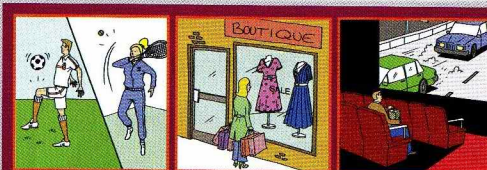
1 Does Mark like her? Why? / Why not?

2 Does she like Mark? Why? / Why not?

3 Do they want to see each other again?

Get ready ... Get it right!

- 11 a** Work in pairs, but don't talk to your partner. Choose a friend to introduce to your partner. Tick the things in the box that your friend does or likes.



I've got a friend for you!

My friend's name:

- ☐ watches TV a lot
- ☐ likes travelling/cooking/clubbing
- ☐ plays tennis/football
- ☐ likes shopping for clothes
- ☐ goes to the cinema a lot
- ☐ likes cats/dogs/animals
- ☐ reads a lot of books
- ☐ likes rock music/dance music/jazz
- ☐ eats out a lot
- ☐ likes Chinese/Italian/fast food



- b** Choose eight things you do or like from the box. Make questions with *he* or *she*.

Does he/she watch TV a lot?

Does he/she like Italian food?

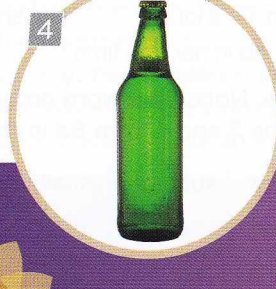
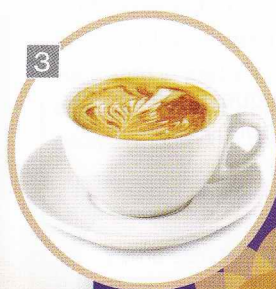
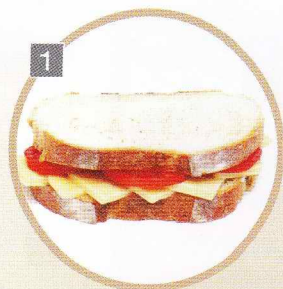
- 12 a** Work with your partner. Ask and answer questions about your friends. First, ask about the friend's name, age, job and where he or she lives. Then ask your questions from **11b**.

- b** Do you and your partner's friend do or like the same things? Tell another student.

We both eat out a lot.

He likes rock music, but I don't.

QUICK REVIEW Present Simple questions with *he/she* Write the names of three people in your family. Work in pairs. Ask questions about the people on your partner's list: *What does Marcia do in her free time?*



The Sun Café

Pizzas

Margherita	£8.50
Neapolitan	£9.25

Burgers

Burger and chips	£8.75
Cheeseburger and chips	£9.50

Salads

Tuna	£9.50
Chicken	£10.25
Mixed	£4.50

Sandwiches

Egg mayonnaise	£5.75
Cheese and tomato	£6.25

Desserts

Apple pie with cream	£5.25
Fruit salad	£4.75
Vanilla, chocolate or strawberry ice cream	£3.25

Drinks

Red/White wine	(Glass) £4.75
	(Bottle) £14.50
Bottle of beer	£3.75
Bottle of mineral water	(still or sparkling) £2.75
Tea or coffee	£2.50

See you at the Sun Café!

1 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.

- When do you usually eat out?
- What's your favourite café or restaurant?
- Is it cheap or expensive?
- What do you usually eat there?

2 a Work in pairs. Match photos 1–13 to food and drink on the menu. Check in **VOCABULARY 4.5** p136.

b Work in pairs. Take turns to point to photos 1–13 and test your partner.

What's number 1?

A cheese and tomato sandwich.

3 Work in pairs. Take turns to choose something to eat and drink from the menu. Ask your partner questions with *How much ... ?*

How much is a tuna salad and a bottle of mineral water?

Twelve pounds twenty-five.

HELP WITH LISTENING *Would you like ... ?*

4 a **CD1** 75 We use *Would you like ... ?* for offers. Listen and notice how we say *would you* in questions.

YOU EXPECT TO HEAR

would you /wʊd ju:/

Would you /wʊd ju:/ like to order now?

YOU USUALLY HEAR

would you /wʊdʒə/

Would you /wʊdʒə/ like to order now?

b **CD1** 76 Listen and put these questions in the order you hear them.

- Would you like tea or coffee?
- Would you like anything else?
- Would you like a dessert?
- What would you like to drink?

5 a **VIDEO** 4 **CD1** 77 Close your books. Watch or listen to Paul and Clare at the Sun Café. What do they order?

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.



- 6 a** Read Paul and Clare's conversations with the waitress. Fill in the gaps with the questions from **4b**.

WAITRESS Would you like to order now?

CLARE Yes, I'd like the chicken salad, please.

PAUL Can I have the cheeseburger and chips, please?

WAITRESS ¹ _____ ?

CLARE We'd like a bottle of mineral water, please.

WAITRESS Still or sparkling?

CLARE Sparkling, please.

WAITRESS ² _____ ?

PAUL No, that's all, thanks.

WAITRESS ³ _____ ?

CLARE Yes, I'd like the fruit salad, please.

PAUL And can I have the apple pie with cream?

WAITRESS Certainly.

WAITRESS ⁴ _____ ?

CLARE Not for me, thank you.

PAUL No, thank you. Can we have the bill, please?

WAITRESS Yes, of course.

- b VIDEO 4 CD1 77** Watch or listen again. Check your answers.

REAL WORLD

Requests and offers

- 7 a** Look at sentences 1–3. Which sentences are requests (we want something)? Which sentence is an offer (we want to give something or help someone)?

1 **Would you like** to order now?

2 **I'd / We'd like** a bottle of mineral water, please.

3 **Can I / we have** the bill, please?

b Complete the rules with the phrases in bold in **7a**.

• We use _____ and _____ for requests.

• We use _____ for offers.

c Look at the conversation in **6a** again. Find four more requests.

REAL WORLD 4.1 p137

- 8 a CD1 78** Listen to the sentences in **7a**. Notice the stress and polite intonation.

Would you like to order now?

b CD1 79 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the offers and requests in the conversation in **6a**. Copy the stress and polite intonation.

- 9 a** Work in groups of three. Decide who is the waiter/waitress and who are the customers. Practise the conversation in **6a** until you remember it.

b Close your book. Practise the conversation again.

- 10 a** Work in the same groups. Look at the menu. Write a new conversation between a waiter/waitress and two customers.

b Swap conversations with another group. Correct any mistakes.

c Practise the new conversation with your partner. Then role-play it for the other group.

QUICK REVIEW Food and drink Work in pairs. What's on the Sun Café menu? Work with another pair. Which pair has the most things? Check the menu on p36.

- 1** Tick the food and drink you know. Then do the exercise in **VOCABULARY 4.6** p136.

biscuits milk an apple rice yogurt
sugar toast bread fish eggs coffee
sausages soup cheese a banana
orange juice a croissant tea jam meat
fruit cereal olives tomatoes vegetables

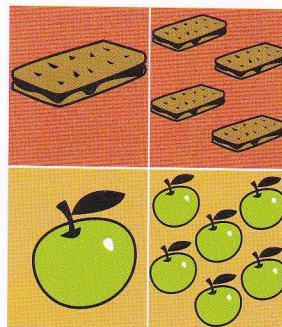
- 2** Which of the things in **1** do you usually have for breakfast? Is this typical for your country? Compare answers in groups.
- 3 a** What do you think people in Japan, France and Turkey have for breakfast? Work in pairs and make three lists. Use words from **1**.
- b** **CD1** 80 Listen to a chef and his assistant, Dylan, at a language school in the UK. Tick the food and drink on your lists that they talk about.
- c** Listen again. Complete your lists of the three breakfast menus.



- 4 a** Look at the pictures in the table. Then choose the correct words.

- 1 We *can/can't* count biscuits and apples.
2 We *can/can't* count milk and rice.

COUNTABLE NOUNS



singular

plural

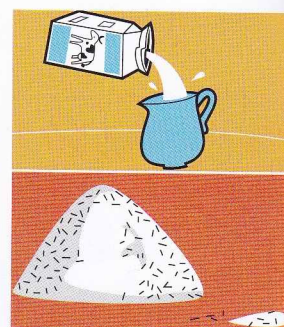
a biscuit

biscuits

an apple

apples

UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS



milk

rice

- b** Write the words from **1** in the table. Write the singular and plural if possible.

HELP WITH VOCABULARY

Countable and uncountable nouns

- 5 a** Look at the table in **4a**. Choose the correct words in these rules.

COUNTABLE NOUNS

- Countable nouns *have/don't have* a plural form.
- We *use/don't use* *a* or *an* with singular countable nouns.
- We *use/don't use* *a* or *an* with plural countable nouns.

UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

- Uncountable nouns *are/aren't* usually plural.
- We *use/don't use* *a* or *an* with uncountable nouns.

- b** Check in **VOCABULARY 4.7** p136.

6 Choose the correct answer: *a*, *an* or – (no article).

- 1 Sue never has *a*/Ømilk in her tea.
- 2 I have *an*/– egg for breakfast every day.
- 3 Do you want *a*/– biscuit?
- 4 I love *a*/– cheese sandwiches.
- 5 Ted usually has *a*/– soup for lunch.
- 6 Would you like *a*/– banana?
- 7 Do you eat *a*/– fruit?

7 a Fill in the gaps with *a*, *an* or –.

- 1 I often have _____ rice with my main meal.
- 2 My friends and I sometimes go out for _____ burger.
- 3 I always have _____ toast and jam for breakfast.
- 4 I never have _____ sugar in coffee.
- 5 I like _____ olives in my salad.
- 6 I have _____ apple every day.
- 7 I often have _____ sandwich for lunch.
- 8 I never eat _____ meat.

b Make the sentences in **7a** true for you. Change the underlined words if necessary.

I often have chips with my main meal.

c Work in pairs. Compare sentences. Are any the same?

8 Work in groups. Tell the other students which food and drink you like/don't like.

I really like eggs.

Oh, I hate them.

I hate cheese!

Me too.

I love coffee.

Oh, I hate it.

9 a Imagine your perfect breakfast. Answer these questions.

- 1 Where are you?
- 2 What time is it?
- 3 Who are you with?
- 4 What do you have for breakfast?
- 5 What do you do after breakfast?

b Work in groups. Tell the other students about your perfect breakfast.

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

/ʃ/, /tʃ/ and /dʒ/

1 **CD1** **81** Listen to the sounds and words. Listen again and practise.

- 1 /ʃ/ shopping finish Turkish
- 2 /tʃ/ cheap watch children
- 3 /dʒ/ Germany Japan sausages

2 a Work in pairs. Match the letters in bold in these words to sounds 1–3 in **1**.

English **1** cheese jam chicken
vegetables sandwich musician engineer
teacher Russia jazz nationality

b **CD1** **82** Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

3 a **CD1** **83** Listen to these sentences. Listen again and practise.

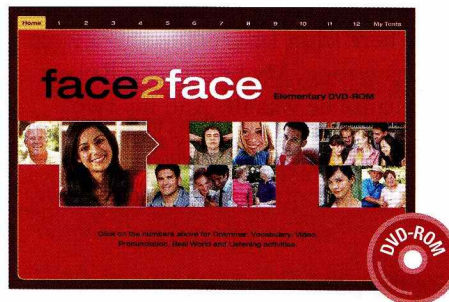
- 1 My Russian teacher loves jazz.
- 2 George eats a lot of jam sandwiches.
- 3 Jane loves chocolate and Turkish coffee.
- 4 Janet's got a cheap Japanese watch.
- 5 Joe often has chicken and vegetables.
- 6 Roger likes Spanish sausages, French cheese and German beer.

b Work in pairs. Take turns to say the sentences. Is your partner's pronunciation correct?

continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 4 and Progress Portfolio 4** p118
- **Language Summary 4** p135
- **4A–D Workbook** p20
- **Self-study DVD-ROM 4** with Review Video



Reading and Writing

- **Portfolio 4** Going out Workbook p70
Reading restaurant adverts
Writing messages (1): an email

QUICK REVIEW Food and drink Work in pairs. Write all the words for food and drink you know. Compare answers with another pair. Which pair has more words? Which words are countable/uncountable?

Vocabulary Adjectives (2)

- 1 a Work in pairs. Which of these adjectives do you know? Then do the exercise in **VOCABULARY 5.1** p138.

hot	cold
noisy	quiet
well	ill
short	tall
lucky	unlucky
different	the same
happy	unhappy
boring	interesting
friendly	unfriendly
terrible/awful	fantastic/amazing/wonderful

- b Work in pairs. Test your partner on the opposites.

happy

unhappy

Listening and Reading

- 2 a Look at photo A. Where are the people? What's their relationship, do you think?
b **CD2** 1 Listen and read. Who is talking? How old is he?

I live in Bristol with my parents and my sister. It was my thirteenth birthday yesterday and there was a big party at our house. About thirty people were here, and we were lucky because it was a very hot day. I was happy because my granddad was here from Liverpool. There were only two things wrong. My best friend Robert wasn't here because he was ill. And my two brothers weren't here because they're in the USA. But it was a fantastic party!

- c Read about the party again. Which of these things are **not** in the text?

- where the family lives
- the weather
- people at the party
- people not at the party
- food and drink
- birthday presents



HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Past Simple (1): *be* (positive and negative)

- 3 a Look at the text in 2b again. Underline all the examples of *was*, *wasn't*, *were* and *weren't*.
b Fill in the gaps with *was*, *wasn't*, *were* and *weren't*.

POSITIVE (+)

NEGATIVE (-)

I was

I _____ (= was not)

you/we/they _____

you/we/they _____ (= were not)

he/she/it _____

he/she/it _____

- c Check in **GRAMMAR 5.1** p139.

- 4 Read about Matt's thirteenth birthday party. Choose the correct words.

I ¹was/were born in Liverpool in 1974 and I ²was/were thirteen in 1987. Our house ³wasn't/weren't very big, so my party ⁴was/were at my grandparents' house. The house ⁵was/were cold and the food ⁶wasn't/weren't very nice. Only about twelve people ⁷was/were at the party and there ⁸wasn't/weren't any girls my age. So the party ⁹was/were a bit boring.



Listening and Speaking

5 a **CD2** → **2** Look at photo B. Listen to Jason ask his grandfather, Albert, about his thirteenth birthday party. Where was he? Why was his birthday a special day?

b Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 When was Albert's 13th birthday?
- 2 Where was the party?
- 3 Were his friends there?
- 4 Was the food good?
- 5 Where were his grandparents?

HELP WITH LISTENING

Weak forms (2): *was* and *were*

6 a **CD2** → **3** Listen and notice the weak forms of *was* and *were*.

I was /wəz/ in Liverpool with my parents.

All my friends were /wə/ there.

Was /wəz/ the food good?

Were /wə/ your grandparents there?

b Look at Audio Script **CD2** → **2** p158. Listen again and notice the weak forms of *was* and *were* in pink.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Past Simple (1):
be (questions and short answers)

7 a Look at the table. Notice the word order. Then write questions 2, 4 and 5 from **5b** in the table.

question word	was/were	subject	
When	was	Albert's	13 th birthday?
	Were	his friends	there?

b Fill in the gaps in these short answers with *was*, *were*, *wasn't* or *weren't*.

Yes, I/he/she/it _____. No, I/he/she/it _____.

Yes, you/we/they _____. No, you/we/they _____.

c Fill in the gaps with *was* or *were*.

1 A When _____ you born?

B I _____ born in 1940.

2 A Where _____ Matt born?

B He _____ born in Liverpool.

d Check in **GRAMMAR 5.2** p139.

8 **CD2** → **4** **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise. Copy the stress and weak forms.

I was /wəz/ in Liverpool with my parents.

9 a Work in pairs. How do we say these years?

1835 1900 1990 2000 2005 2018

b **CD2** → **5** **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

c Write the names of five people in your family. Then work in pairs. Swap papers. Ask your partner when and where the people were born.

When was Miguel born?

In 1986.

10 a Make questions with *you*.

1 / at work yesterday? *Were you at work yesterday?*

2 Where / last night?

3 / at home yesterday afternoon?

4 Where / on your last birthday?

5 Where / last New Year's Eve?

b Work in new pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Give more information if possible.

Get ready ... Get it right!

11 Work in pairs. Student A p105. Student B p110.

QUICK REVIEW Past Simple (1): be Write six times of the day. Work in pairs. Ask your partner where he/she was at these times yesterday: *Where were you at six in the evening?*

Vocabulary

Life events

- 1 a** Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps in the phrases with these verbs. Check in **VOCABULARY 5.3** p138.

leave make become meet get

- 1 leave school/university
- 2 _____ my husband/my wife
- 3 _____ married/divorced
- 4 _____ a film/a lot of money
- 5 _____ a film director/famous

have write study win move

- 6 have children/a dream
- 7 _____ house/to a different country
- 8 _____ English/physics
- 9 _____ a book/a letter
- 10 _____ an Oscar/the lottery

- b** Work in pairs. Take turns to test your partner on the phrases.

married

get married

Speaking, Reading and Listening

- 2** Work in groups. Look at posters A–D. What do you know about these films? What do you know about the director James Cameron?

- 3 a** Check these words with your teacher.

a script a robot successful
diving 3D a billion

- b** Read the article about James Cameron's life. Fill in the gaps with these dates and numbers.

1971 twelve 1999 two
August 16th 1986 \$2 billion

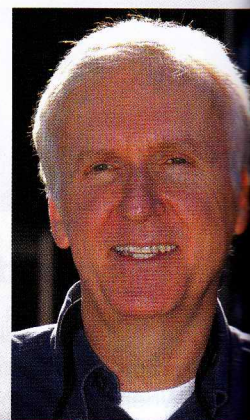
- c** Work in pairs. Compare answers.
d **CD2** 6 Listen and check your answers.

CAMERON'S WORLD

James Cameron was born in Ontario, Canada, on ^a _____ 1954. His family **moved** to the USA in ^b _____. James **went** to California State University and **studied** physics and English. He **left** university after only ^c _____ years because he **wanted** to become a film director. He **worked** as a bus driver in the day and **wrote** film scripts at night. James's first job as a director was on a film called *Piranha 2*. One night after filming he **had** a bad dream about a robot from the future. The next day James **started** writing the script of *The Terminator*. The film was very successful and Cameron **became** famous all around the world.

He then **made** *Aliens* in ^d _____, *Terminator 2* in 1991 and *Titanic* in 1997. At that time James **loved** diving, and he **visited** the *Titanic* ^e _____ times before he started making the film. *Titanic* made ^f _____ and **won** eleven Oscars. His next film was the first *Avatar* movie in 2009, which he made in 3D.

James **met** Linda Hamilton – Sarah Connor in the *Terminator* films – in 1984 and she became his fourth wife in 1997. They had one daughter, but they **got** divorced in ^g _____. A year later he **married** actress Suzy Amis, who was in *Titanic*. They have two daughters and a son.



HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Past Simple (2): regular and irregular verbs (positive)

- 4 a** Look at the regular Past Simple forms in **blue** in the article. Then answer these questions.

- 1 How do we make the Past Simple of regular verbs?
- 2 What do we do when the verb ends in -e (*move, love, etc.*)?
- 3 What do we do when the verb ends in -y (*study, marry, etc.*)?

- b** Look at the irregular Past Simple forms in **pink** in the article. Match them to verbs 1–9.

- | | | |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 become _____ | 4 have _____ | 7 meet _____ |
| 2 get _____ | 5 leave _____ | 8 win _____ |
| 3 go _____ | 6 make _____ | 9 write _____ |

TIP • The Past Simple is the same for all subjects (*I, you, he, she, it, we, they*).

- c** Check in **GRAMMAR 5.3** p139 and in the Irregular Verb List, p167.



7 Fill in the gaps with the Past Simple of these verbs.

love marry write win be get start make

- James Cameron loved films when he _____ a child.
- He _____ the film director Kathryn Bigelow in 1989, but they _____ divorced in 1991.
- He _____ the script for the second *Rambo* film.
- He _____ a film called *True Lies* in 1994.
- His film *Aliens* _____ two Oscars.
- He _____ writing the script for *Avatar* in 1995.

8 a Cover the article. Choose the correct answers.

- What did James study at university?
a Physics. b English. c Physics and English.
- When did he make *Terminator 2*?
a In 1986. b In 1991. c In 1999.
- Which film did he make in 3D in 2009?
a *Aliens* b *Titanic* c *Avatar*
- Who did he marry in 1997?
a Sarah Connor. b Suzy Amis. c Linda Hamilton.

b Look at the article. Check your answers.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Past Simple (2): *Wh-* questions

9 a Look at the table. Notice the word order in questions. Then write questions 3 and 4 from 8a in the table.

question word	auxiliary	subject	infinitive	
What	did	James	study	at university?
When	did	he	make	<i>Terminator 2</i> ?

b Check in GRAMMAR 5.4 p139.

10 a Make questions with these words.

- yesterday / did / you / What / do ?
- go on holiday / you / did / last year / Where ?
- What / you / last weekend / do / did ?
- see / last month / How many films / you / did ?
- meet / you / your best friend / did / Where ?

b CD2 11 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Notice how we say *did you* /dɪdʒə/. Listen again and practise.

What did you /dɪdʒə/ do yesterday?

c Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in 10a.

Get ready ... Get it right!

11 Work in pairs. Look at p114.

5 a CD2 7 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the regular verbs in the article and their Past Simple forms. Which end with the sound /ɪd/?

b CD2 8 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the irregular verbs in 4b and their Past Simple forms.

HELP WITH LISTENING

Present Simple or Past Simple

6 a CD2 9 Listen to these sentences. Notice the difference between the Present Simple and the Past Simple.

- I love all his films. I loved all his films.
- They live in L.A. They lived in L.A.

b CD2 10 Listen to six pairs of sentences. Which do you hear first, the Present Simple or the Past Simple?

1 Present Simple

QUICK REVIEW Past Simple Write six verbs you know. Work in pairs. Say the verb to your partner. He/She says a sentence with the Past Simple form:
A go B I went to England last year.

Weekend activities

- 1 a** Work in pairs. Look at phrases 1–8. Then fill in the gaps with these words/phrases. Check in **VOCABULARY 5.4** p138.

~~a run~~ for a couple of days
the house a bad cold a report
at home all weekend your homework
your parents' house for lunch

- 1 go for a walk
a run
- 2 clean the car

- 3 do the washing

- 4 write an email

- 5 go away for the weekend

- 6 have a great time

- 7 go to a party

- 8 stay with friends

b What are the Past Simple forms of the verbs in **1a**?

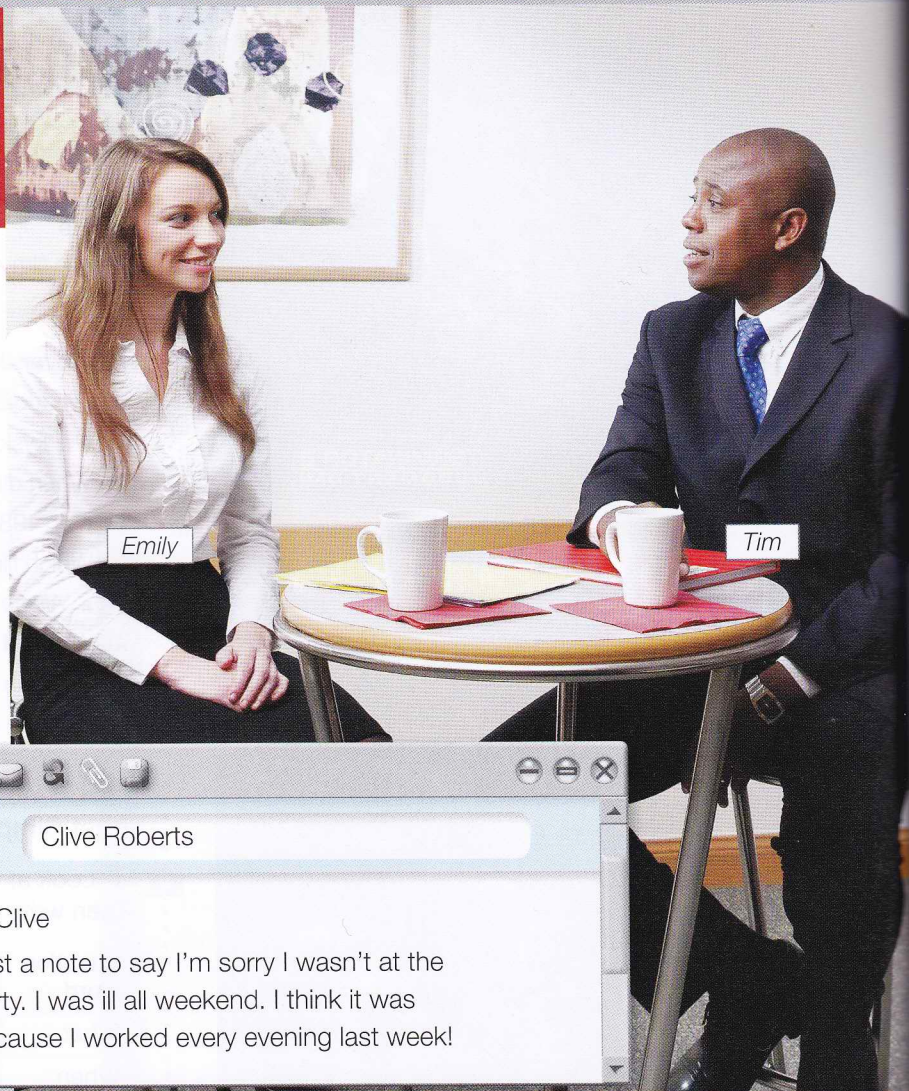
- 2 a** Think of five things you did last weekend. Use phrases from **1a** or your own ideas.

b Work in pairs. Ask your partner what he or she did last weekend. Find three things you both did.

What did you do last weekend?

I went for a walk on Sunday.

Me too.



goldfish

Had a quiet weekend. Stayed in and watched TV on Saturday. Last night I went to the cinema to see *A Day in the Life*.

10th June at 07.46 Like Comment Share

How was your weekend?

- 3 a VIDEO 5 CD2 12** Look at the photos and read A–D. Then watch or listen to two conversations and match the people to A–D.

b Watch or listen again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

CONVERSATION 1

- 1 Tim had a terrible weekend. **T**
- 2 Emily did the washing on Saturday.
- 3 She went to the theatre.
- 4 She didn't like the film.

CONVERSATION 2

- 5 Rachel went to Madrid with a friend.
- 6 She stayed in a hotel.
- 7 Simon had an interesting weekend.
- 8 He finished the report on Sunday evening.

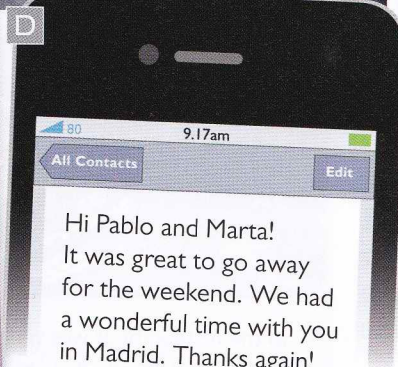


Rachel

Simon

Things to do

- go shopping ✓
- clean the car ✓
- check emails ✓
- go to gym ✓
- write report ✓



REAL WORLD Showing interest

4 a CD2 13 Listen to parts of the conversations in 3b again. Match sentences 1–8 to responses a–h.

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| 1 I was ill all weekend. | a Oh, right. |
| 2 I had a really bad cold. | b Wow! |
| 3 I stayed at home on Saturday. | c Oh, dear. |
| 4 I went to the cinema. | d What a shame. |
| 5 I went away for the weekend – to Spain! | e Really? |
| 6 We went to Madrid. It was wonderful! | f You're joking! |
| 7 I worked all Sunday. | g Oh, nice. |
| 8 It took me ten hours. | h Oh, great! |

b Fill in the table with responses a–h.

I'm happy for you.	I'm sorry for you.	I'm surprised.	I'm not surprised.
			Oh, right.

c Check in REAL WORLD 5.1 p139.

5 CD2 14 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the responses in 4b. Copy the intonation.

REAL WORLD

Asking follow-up questions

6 a Look at these follow-up questions from the conversations in 3b. Fill in the gaps with *did*, *was* or *are*.

- 1 What _____ wrong?
- 2 _____ you OK now?
- 3 What _____ you do?
- 4 What _____ you see?
- 5 What was it like?
- 6 Where _____ you go?
- 7 Who _____ you go with?
- 8 Where _____ you stay?

b Which of the questions in 6a can you ask someone who:

- a was ill at the weekend?
- b stayed at home?
- c went to the cinema?
- d went away for the weekend?

c Check in REAL WORLD 5.2 p139.

7 a Work in pairs. Look at VIDEO 5 CD2 12 p158. Choose one of the conversations. Underline all the responses from 4a and follow-up questions from 6a.

b Practise the conversation with your partner.

8 a Make notes on what you did at these times.

- last weekend
- last week
- yesterday
- before you came to this lesson
- on Friday evening

b Work in new pairs. Ask and answer questions about the times in 8a. Use the follow-up questions from 6a. How long can you continue each conversation?

What did you do last weekend?

Well, I went to a party on Saturday.

Oh, nice. What was it like?

It was great!

c Tell the class three things about your partner.

QUICK REVIEW Past Simple Work in pairs. Take turns to tell your partner five things you did last week: **A** *I went to a concert on Saturday.* Ask follow-up questions to get more information: **B** *What was it like?*

- 1 a** Work in pairs. Which of these adjectives do you know? Then do the exercise in **VOCABULARY 5.5** p138.

bored crowded busy comfortable
dirty rich dangerous clean
poor excited safe empty

- b** Put the words in **1a** into groups a–c:

- a adjectives for people *bored*
b adjectives for places *crowded*
c adjectives for places and people *busy*

- c** Work in pairs. Compare answers. Which words in **1a** are opposites?

- 2 a** Before you read, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

enter a competition win a prize
a castle a queue a receptionist

- b** Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

- 1 Do you think you're a lucky person? Why?/Why not?
- 2 Do you (or people you know) enter competitions in magazines or on the internet?
- 3 What prizes do people win in competitions?
- 4 What prize would you like to win?

- c** Look at the magazine article. Read the first paragraph only. What is the article about?

- 3 a** Work in pairs. Student A, read about Bruce. Student B, read about Sally. Answer these questions.

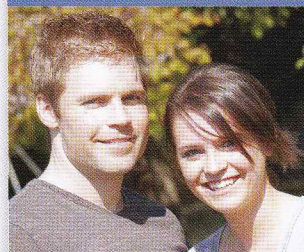
- 1 What did he/she win?
- 2 Who did he/she go with?
- 3 Did he/she like the hotel?
- 4 What did they do on Saturday?
- 5 Where did they have dinner?
- 6 Was the food good?
- 7 What did Bruce/Craig do on Sunday?

- b** Work with your partner and ask the questions. Student A, ask about Sally. Student B, ask about Bruce. Give more information if possible.

- c** Read your partner's text. Check his/her answers.

Winners and Losers

A lot of people enter competitions every year and 99% of them never win anything. But what about the winners? Do they always enjoy their prizes? We talked to two people with very different experiences.



BRUCE I won a weekend for two in Kraków, in Poland. I went with my girlfriend, Olivia, and we stayed in a very nice hotel by the river. The rooms were really comfortable and the people were very friendly. On Saturday we



went for a walk in the Old Town. It was quite crowded, but all the shops and buildings were really interesting. We wanted to visit Wawel Castle, but the queues were quite long, so we had lunch instead. In the evening we went back to the hotel and had dinner

in the restaurant. It was very busy, but the food was fantastic! Then on Sunday I asked Olivia to marry me – and she said yes! We were very happy when we got home. It was a wonderful weekend in a beautiful city!

SALLY I'm not usually very lucky, but last year I won a weekend for two in Cardiff. I went with my boyfriend, Craig. I was really excited because I love Wales, but the hotel was really awful. It was in a poor part of town and the rooms were very small and quite noisy. On Saturday we didn't leave the hotel because it was too cold. Craig watched sport on TV all day and I was really bored! We had dinner in the hotel, but the restaurant was quite dirty and the

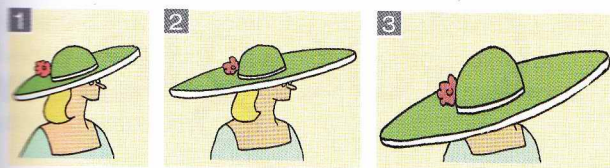


food was awful. I went to bed early, but Craig stayed up and talked to the receptionist for hours. She was very young and friendly – too friendly! On Sunday Craig left me and went away with her. It was a terrible weekend!

HELP WITH VOCABULARY

Adjectives with *very*, *really*, *quite*, *too*

1 a Look at pictures 1–3 and read the sentences. Which word in bold means 'more than you want'?



It's **quite** big. It's **very/really** big. It's **too** big.

b Complete the rule with *before* and *after*.

- *Very, really, quite* and *too* come _____ the verb *be* and _____ adjectives.

VOCABULARY 5.6 → p138

a Read the article again and underline all the examples of *very, really, quite, too* + adjective.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

c Choose the correct words.

- Don't go out on your own at night. It's quite/too dangerous.
- He's a famous musician and he's *too/very* rich.
- Let's go to that new café. It's *really/too* nice.
- Sorry, sir, you're *quite/too* late. The restaurant is closed.
- This sofa's *very/too* comfortable.
- Jill's got a new job and she's *really/too* happy.
- It's a nice town and the people are *very/too* friendly.
- You're only 15. You're *quite/too* young to drive.

a Write the name of a place in the town or city where you are now that is:

- too expensive or quite cheap
- really beautiful or really ugly
- too crowded or quite empty
- really boring or really interesting
- too noisy or very quiet
- very safe or quite dangerous

b Work in groups and compare places. Do you know any of the places the other students talk about? If so, do you agree?

I think the new coffee shop is very cheap.

Me too.

Really? I think it's quite expensive!

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

The letter *o*

1 **CD2** → **15** Listen and notice four ways we say the letter *o*. Listen again and practise.

/ɒ/ hot long often /ʌ/ son month mother
/əʊ/ old home phone /ə/ actor police second

2 **a** Work in pairs. Write the words in the table.

eeffee sofa tomato wonderful
shopping sometimes mobile computer
open director bottle comfortable

/ɒ/	hot	coffee
/əʊ/	old	
/ʌ/	son	
/ə/	actor	

b **CD2** → **16** Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

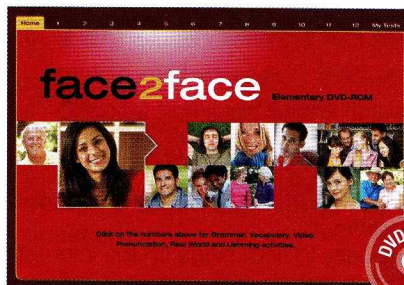
3 Work in pairs. Cover **1** and **2a**. Say these words. Which letter *o* sound is different?

- tomato actor sometimes director
- phone wonderful mobile old
- son month bottle comfortable
- mother often hot shopping
- police second computer long
- open home sofa coffee

continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 5 and Progress Portfolio 5** p119
- **Language Summary 5** p138
- **5A–D Workbook** p25
- **Self-study DVD-ROM 5** with Review Video



Reading and Writing

- **Portfolio 5** A night to remember Workbook p72
- Reading** a student's composition
- Writing** paragraphs (1); connecting words (2): *after*, *when* and *then*; a composition

QUICK REVIEW Adjectives with *very, really, quite, too*

Think of three places you went to last year. Work in pairs. Tell your partner about the places. Use adjectives with *very, really, quite* and *too*: *I went to Istanbul last year. It was really beautiful.*

Vocabulary and Speaking

The internet

1 a Choose the correct verbs in these sentences about the internet. Then check in **VOCABULARY 6.1** p140.

- Do you use/send the internet every day?
- How many emails do you go/send every day?
- How many emails do you get/chat every day?
- When did you last chat/read a blog?
- Do you download/go videos or music onto your computer?
- When did you last go/send online?
- Do you get/have a favourite website?
- Do you send/chat to your friends online?
- Which places in your town or city have/download WiFi?
- Which search engine do you usually write/use?

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Ask follow-up questions if possible.

Reading and Speaking

2 a Before you read, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

launch	computer science	build (past: built)
a cheque	a bank account	a billionaire

b Read the article about the Google Guys. Match headings a–d to paragraphs 1–4.

- Starting the business
- How Page and Brin met
- The internet before 1998
- Building a new search engine

c Read the article again. Tick the true sentences. Correct the false sentences.

difficult

- Before 1998 it was easy to find things on the internet. *F*
- Page and Brin first met in 1997.
- They had a lot of cheap computers in their room.
- They built Google when they were students.
- Google was the first name for their search engine.
- Page and Brin became billionaires in 2004.

THE Google GUYS

1 What did we do before Google? In the early days of the internet, search engines weren't very good and it wasn't easy for people to find the information they wanted. Then in 1998, Larry Page and Sergey Brin launched the Google search engine. Suddenly it was easy to find the right website in seconds.



Larry Page

Sergey Brin

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Past Simple (3): negative

3 Complete the rules with words from these sentences.

Search engines weren't very good.

They didn't like each other at first.

● To make the Past Simple negative of the verb *be*, we use *wasn't* or _____.

● To make the Past Simple negative of all other verbs, we use _____ + infinitive.

GRAMMAR 6.1 p141

4 a Find six more Past Simple negatives in the article.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

5 **CD2** 17 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise.

They didn't like each other at first.

- 2** So how did it all begin? Page and Brin met in 1995 when they started studying computer science at Stanford University in California. They didn't like each other at first, but they became friends when they shared a room together at university.
- 3** While Page and Brin were at Stanford, they got a lot of cheap computers and started to build a new search engine in their room. At first they called it BackRub, but they weren't happy with the name so they changed it to Google. They didn't finish their course and left Stanford in 1997.
- 4** Page and Brin wanted to start a business together, but they didn't have any money. At first their families and friends helped them. Then in August 1998 a businessman wrote a cheque to Google Inc for \$100,000. But Page and Brin didn't get the money for a month because they didn't have a bank account. Six years later they were billionaires!

- 6 a** Tick the sentences that are true for you. Make the other sentences negative.

- 1 I got lots of emails yesterday.
I didn't get lots of emails yesterday.
- 2 I watched a DVD on my computer last Saturday.
- 3 I used the internet every day last week.
- 4 I downloaded a lot of music last weekend.
- 5 I got a new laptop last year.
- 6 I chatted online with a friend last night.

- b** Work in pairs. Compare sentences. How many are the same?

Listening and Speaking

- 7 a** **CD2** **18** Listen to a radio interview with the writer, Wes Clark. Put these people, places and things in the order you hear them.

Michigan State University Wes Clark's new book **1**
Russia Sergey's mother Maryland University
Larry's parents Sergey's father

- b** Listen again. Answer the questions.

- 1 Did Sergey leave Russia in 1978?
- 2 Did his father teach mathematics?
- 3 Were Sergey and his father at the same university?
- 4 Did Larry go to Maryland University?
- 5 Did his parents teach computer science?
- 6 Was Larry at the same university as his parents?

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Past Simple (3): yes/no questions and short answers

- 8** Fill in the gaps in these *yes/no* questions and short answers with *did* or *didn't*.

- 1 A Did Sergey leave Russia in 1978?
B Yes, he _____. / No, he _____.
- 2 A _____ his parents teach computer science?
B Yes, they _____. / No, they _____.

GRAMMAR 6.2 p141

- 9 a** Make *yes/no* questions with these words.

- 1 in 1994 / Sergey and Larry / meet / Did ?
Did Sergey and Larry meet in 1994?
- 2 they / at first / each other / Did / like ?
- 3 Sergey / Did / Maryland University / go to ?
- 4 Larry's parents / teach / mathematics / Did ?
- 5 study / Sergey / Did / computer science ?
- 6 launch / Google / in 1999 / Sergey and Larry / Did ?

- b** **CD2** **19** **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the questions in **9a** and the short answers. Copy the stress.

Did Sergey and Larry meet in 1994?

- c** Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in **9a**.

Get ready ... Get it right!

- 10** Write *yes/no* questions with *you* and these ideas. Use these verbs.

go play have read
watch (x2) go to (x2)

- 1 shopping last weekend?
Did you go shopping last weekend?
- 2 a good book last month?
- 3 sport on TV last weekend?
- 4 a concert last month?
- 5 tennis or football last week?
- 6 a DVD last weekend?
- 7 the cinema last week?
- 8 dinner at home last night?

- 11 a** Ask other students your questions. Find one person who did each thing. Ask follow-up questions.

- b** Tell the class two things about the people you talked to.

Beata went shopping last weekend.
She bought a new laptop.

QUICK REVIEW Past Simple yes/no questions

Write five questions with *Did you ... ?* about yesterday. Choose a partner and guess his/her answers. Then work with your partner and ask the questions. How many guesses were correct?

Vocabulary and Speaking**Mobile phones and TVs**

- 1 a** Work in pairs. Which of these words/phrases do you know? Check in

VOCABULARY 6.2 p140.

send/get a text charge your phone GPS
a channel a TV programme a battery
an app turn on turn off record

- b** Work on your own. Put the words/phrases into three groups: TVs, mobile phones, TVs and mobile phones.

- c** Work in pairs. Compare answers. Did you put the words/phrases in the same groups?

- 2 a** Put these past time phrases in order.

twenty minutes ago 1	in 1986
two years ago	last year
in May 2002	last Monday
in the eighteenth century	yesterday
the day before yesterday	in the nineties

- b** Fill in the gaps with *ago*, *last* or *in*.

- I left school four years ago.
- I went to bed quite late _____ Saturday.
- My parents were born _____ the sixties.
- My parents got married _____ 1985.
- I didn't have a holiday _____ year.
- I started learning English six years _____.
- I got my mobile _____ March.
- I bought my computer two years _____.

- c** Tick the sentences in **2b** that are true for you. Change the time phrases in the other sentences to make them true for you.

I left school ten years ago.

- d** Work in pairs. Compare sentences. Are any the same?

Our First Colour TV

Gavin Jones looks back on the day his family got their first colour TV.

These days the internet, laptops, mobiles and video games are part of normal life. My son and daughter **can't understand** how people lived without them. But life wasn't always like this. I was a child in the seventies, when things were very different.

I remember my family's first TV very well. In the seventies you **could** only **get** three channels – and they were in black and white. Everybody watched live TV all the time because you **couldn't record** TV programmes. And you **couldn't watch** TV all night because there weren't any programmes after midnight!

Reading and Speaking

- 3 a** Before you read, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

without colour black and white live TV explain

- b** Read the article. How was TV different in the seventies?

- c** Read the article again. Answer these questions.

- How many children has Gavin got?
- When was Gavin a child?
- When did his family get their first colour TV?
- What did his family do that evening?
- What type of TV has Gavin got now?

Then, in June 1974, my life changed for ever. I came home from school and there it was – our family's first colour TV. I was really excited because I **could watch** all my favourite programmes in colour! After dinner my father turned on the TV for the first time and my grandfather took a photo. Then the whole family watched TV together until midnight with biscuits and cups of hot chocolate. It was one of the best evenings of my life – and I've still got the photo!

Of course, now you **can choose** from hundreds of TV channels and watch anything you want at any time of day. You **can watch** TV programmes online and download them onto your mobile. So I think children today are very lucky – but I **can't explain** this to my kids because they're too busy watching football on our 3D TV!

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

can/can't; could/couldn't

- 4 a** Look at the phrases in **blue** in the article. Complete the rules with **can** and **could**.

- We use _____ + infinitive to say that something is possible in the present.
- We use _____ + infinitive to say that something was possible in the past.

- b** Look at the phrases in **pink** in the article. What is the negative of **can**? What is the negative of **could**?

- c** Fill in the gaps in these questions and short answers with **can**, **can't**, **could** or **couldn't**.

- 1 A **Can** you watch TV online?
B Yes, you _____. /No, you _____.
2 A _____ you record programmes in 1974?
B Yes, you _____. /No, you _____.
TIP • Can/can't and could/couldn't are the same for all subjects (I, you, he, she, it, we, they).

d Check in **GRAMMAR 6.3** p141.

HELP WITH LISTENING can and can't

- 5 a** **CD2** **20** Listen to these sentences. Notice how we say **can** and **can't**. When is **can** stressed?

You can /kən/ watch TV programmes online.
I can't /kɑːnt/ explain how lucky they are.
Can /kən/ you watch TV online?
Yes, you can /kən/. No, you can't /kɑːnt/.

- b** **CD2** **21** Listen to these sentences. Do you hear **can** or **can't**?

1 **can't**

- 6** **CD2** **22** **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise. Copy the stress and weak form of **can**.

You **can** /kən/ watch TV programmes online.

- 7 a** Read about mobile phones. Fill in the gaps with **can**, **can't**, **could** or **couldn't**.

Motorola launched the first mobile phone in 1983, but you ¹ **could** (+) only use it in a car because it needed a big battery. A few years later you ² _____ (+) buy a mobile that you ³ _____ (+) take to work – but it was in a suitcase!

In the early nineties you ⁴ _____ (+) buy a small mobile for \$200, but you ⁵ _____ (–) send texts until 1995. The BlackBerry, launched in 1999, was one of the first phones you ⁶ _____ (+) use to go online. And you ⁷ _____ (–) buy a mobile with a camera in Europe until 2002.

These days most people ⁸ _____ (–) leave home without their mobile. You ⁹ _____ (+) use your phone to go online, make video calls and find your way with GPS. You ¹⁰ _____ (+) also download apps, watch TV programmes or play games. But a lot of people still ¹¹ _____ (–) remember to charge their phone or turn it off in the cinema!



- b** **CD2** **23** Listen and check your answers.

- 8 a** Write four sentences with **could** and **couldn't** about your first mobile.

I could send texts with my first mobile.

I couldn't make video calls.

- b** Work in pairs. Compare sentences. Are any the same?

Get ready ... Get it right!

- 9** Make notes on what you can and can't do with these things.

- your mobile (and apps)
 - your computer/laptop
 - your TV
- my mobile – I can make video calls, send texts, find restaurants ...*

- 10 a** Work in pairs. Ask questions to find out what you can do with the things in **9**, but your partner can't do.

Can you make video calls on your mobile?

Yes, I can.

- b** Tell the class two things you found out about your partner's mobile, computer or TV.

QUICK REVIEW Past time phrases Work in pairs. Take turns to ask your partner when he/she last did these things: cook a meal, eat out, play tennis, go clubbing, read a good book, go to the cinema. Ask follow-up questions. **A** When did you last cook a meal? **B** Two weeks ago. **A** What did you cook?

The one o'clock news

1 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.

- Where do you usually get your news – the internet, the TV, the radio or newspapers?
- Do you watch or listen to the news every day? If so, at what time of day?
- What's in the news at the moment?

2 a Work in pairs. Which of these verbs do you know? What are the Past Simple forms of the irregular verbs? Check in **VOCABULARY 6.4 p140**.

REGULAR VERBS	IRREGULAR VERBS
damage sail	buy lose
die receive	find put
crash save	say tell

b CD2 24 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise all the verbs in **2a** and their Past Simple forms.

3 a Before you listen, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

a train a hospital a storm a couple
missing at sea the coast a helicopter
a boat an envelope

b Work in pairs. Look at photos A–D of some news stories. Which words are in each story, do you think?



4 a CD2 25 Listen to the news and put photos A–D in order.

b Listen again and choose the correct answers.

- a** Over 16/60 people are in hospital after a train crash.

b The train crashed in *London/Scotland*.
- a** There were storms in *Florida/California* last night.

b 53/153 people died in the storms.
- a** Bill and Nancy Potter are 70/80 years old.

b They are now in *Australia/missing at sea*.
- a** Joe Hall won over £3/£13 million last night.

b *Joe/His dog* chose the lottery numbers.

HELP WITH LISTENING Sentence stress (3)

5 a CD2 25 Listen again to the first two sentences from the news. Notice the stressed words.

It's one o'clock and here's George Lucan with the news.

Over sixty people are in hospital after a train crash in Scotland this morning.

b Look at Audio Script **CD2 25** p159. Listen again and follow the stressed words.

Read all about it!

6 Look at the headlines on page 53 of two news reports from the next day. Which TV news stories are they about?



COUPLE FOUND AT SEA

Bill and Nancy Potter, the 80-year-old British couple who were missing at sea, are now safe. A helicopter found them a hundred miles from the Australian coast and took them to a hospital in Sydney.

"The weather was beautiful when we left New Zealand," said Nancy. "But when we were about a hundred and fifty miles from Sydney there was a terrible storm. There was a lot of damage to the boat. Things were really bad and we couldn't use the radio because that was damaged too. All we could do was wait for help. We were very happy to see the helicopter. Those people saved our lives."

The couple bought the boat two years ago. "We wanted to be the first 80-year-old couple to sail round the world," said Bill. "Nancy wants to try again next year, but I'm not so sure."

7 a Work in two groups. Group A, read report 1 and answer questions 1–5. Group B, read report 2 and answer questions a–e.

- 1 Where did the helicopter find Bill and Nancy?
- 2 Which city are they in now?
- 3 Where were they when the storm started?
- 4 Why didn't they use their radio?
- 5 When did they buy their boat?

- a What did Joe do yesterday?
- b What did he write on the envelopes?
- c Where did he put them?
- d Why did the dog want to find the envelopes?
- e What does Joe want his dog to do now?

b Work in pairs. Student A, ask your partner questions a–e. Student B, ask your partner questions 1–5.

What happened?

8 a VIDEO 6 CD2 26 Watch or listen to four conversations about the news. Which news story is each conversation about?

b Watch or listen again. Match sentences 1–6 to responses a–f.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------|
| 1 Over thirteen million pounds. | a Oh no, that's terrible. |
| 2 His dog chose the numbers for him! | b Really? |
| 3 Over sixty people are in hospital. | c You're joking! |
| 4 Did you hear about the storms in Florida? | d Oh, dear. Are they OK? |
| 5 Their boat was damaged in a storm. | e Oh, that's good. |
| 6 Yes, a helicopter found them yesterday. | f Yes, isn't it awful? |

DOG WINS LOTTERY!

Wednesday night's lottery winner Joe Hall received a cheque for over £13 million yesterday at the supermarket where he works. His dog, Max, who chose the winning numbers, was there with him.

"I usually choose the numbers," said 28-year-old Joe. "But I never win anything. So this time I asked Max to choose the numbers for me – and I won over £13 million!"

But how did the dog choose the numbers? "I wrote the numbers 1 to 50 on envelopes and put a dog biscuit in each envelope," Joe explained. "I put the envelopes in different places in my house and told Max to find the biscuits. Then I wrote down the numbers from the first six envelopes he found – and now I'm a millionaire!"

Now Joe wants Max to find him a girlfriend!

2

REAL WORLD Talking about the news

9 a Fill in the gaps in the questions and responses with these words.

was happened about hear

- 1 A Did you _____ about that train crash?
B No, where _____ it?
- 2 A Did you read _____ the eighty-year-old couple and their boat?
B No, what _____ ?

b Write responses a–f in **8b** in the table.

good news	bad news	surprising news
		Really?

c Check in **REAL WORLD 6.1** p141.

10 CD2 27 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions and responses in **9a** and **9b**. Copy the stress and intonation.

Did you hear about that train crash?
No, where was it?

11 Work in pairs. Student A p106. Student B p111.

QUICK REVIEW Irregular verbs Work in pairs. What can you remember about the four news stories from 6C? Compare ideas with another pair. Then check on p52 and p53.

- 1 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
 - 1 Do you play video games? If so, discuss questions a–d. If not, discuss questions e–h.
 - a What games do you play?
 - b How often do you play?
 - c When and where do you play?
 - d What's your favourite game?
 - e Why don't you play video games?
 - f Do your friends or family play them?
 - g Did you play when you were young?
 - h Do you know any video games?
 - 2 Do you think video games are a good or a bad thing? Why?/Why not?

- 2 a Before you read, check these words with your teacher.

a designer art
an award a hero
a villain a princess
a prince

- b Read about Shigeru Miyamoto. Answer the questions.

- 1 What's Shigeru's job?
- 2 Who does he work for?
- 3 Where was he born?
- 4 Where did he study?
- 5 Is he married?
- 6 What was his wife's job at Nintendo?
- 7 Does he play a lot of video games?
- 8 Who is his favourite video game character?

- 3 **CD2 28** Listen to the beginning of a radio programme about Shigeru Miyamoto. Fill in gaps 1–7 in the fact file.

Shigeru Miyamoto

FACT FILE

Occupation

World-famous video game designer. Works for Nintendo. People call him the father of video games.

Born

Kyoto, Japan, November 16th 1

Education

Studied art at Kanazawa College of Art from 1970 to 2

Awards

Between 1998 and 2010 he won awards in the USA, the UK, 3 and Spain.

Family life

Married with two children, a boy and a girl. Met his wife, Yasuko, when she was a manager at Nintendo in Japan.

Interesting facts

Doesn't play video games very often. Usually goes to work by 4
Can write with both hands, but usually uses his left hand. Can play the guitar and write 5

Once said

"They say video games are 6 for you. But that's what they said about rock 'n' roll."

The video games

Shigeru designed the first Mario Brothers game in 7 and Mario is his favourite video game character.

All Mario Bros. video games have a **story**. The story always has a **hero**, a **princess** and a **villain**. The villain wants to marry the princess, so he takes her to a **place** where the hero can't find her. But the hero always finds the place and saves the princess from the villain. And that's the end of the game.



HELP WITH VOCABULARY

Articles: *a, an* and *the*

- 4 a** Look at the words in bold in these sentences. Then complete the rules with *a* or *the*.
- People call him **the father** of video games.*
- The story always has **a hero**, **a princess** and **a villain**.*
- The villain** wants to marry **the princess**.*
- We use _____ when we know which thing, person, place, etc. because there is only one.
 - We use _____ or *an* to talk about things or people for the first time.
 - We use _____ to talk about a person or a thing for the second, third, fourth, etc. time.
- TIP** • We use *the* in some fixed phrases: *at **the** weekend*, *in **the** evening*, *go to **the** cinema*, etc.
- b** Check in **VOCABULARY 6.5** ➔ p140.
- 5** Work in pairs. Look at the words in bold in the last paragraph of the fact file. Match the words in bold to rules 1–3 in **4a**.
- 6 a** Read about a new video game. Fill in the gaps with *a, an* and *the*.



I bought ¹ **a** new video game at ² _____ weekend.
³ _____ game is about ⁴ _____ beautiful princess.
 One day ⁵ _____ princess goes for ⁶ _____ walk. She meets
⁷ _____ old man and ⁸ _____ beautiful white dog. ⁹ _____
 old man takes ¹⁰ _____ princess away because he wants to
 marry her. But ¹¹ _____ dog saves ¹² _____ princess from
¹³ _____ old man. Then at ¹⁴ _____ end of ¹⁵ _____ game,
 you find out that ¹⁶ _____ dog is really ¹⁷ _____ prince.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

- 7 a** Choose the correct word.
- Did you have *a/the* big lunch yesterday?
 - Is there *a/the* park near your home?
 - Did you go to *a/the* capital city of another country last year?
 - Do you often go to *a/the* cinema at *a/the* weekend?
 - What was *a/the* last film you saw?
 - Is there *a/the* TV programme you watch every week?
- b** Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Ask follow-up questions if possible.

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

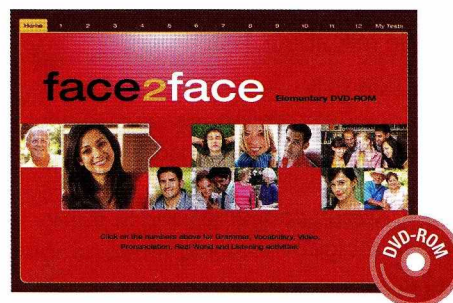
Past Simple of regular verbs

- 1 a** **CD2** ➔ **29** Listen to these regular verbs and their Past Simple forms. Notice how we say the *-ed* endings.
- watch → watched /t/ ask → asked /t/
 - stay → stayed /d/ enjoy → enjoyed /d/
 - start → started /ɪd/ want → wanted /ɪd/
- TIP** • When a regular verb ends in /t/ or /d/, *-ed* is pronounced /ɪd/.
- b** Listen again and practise.
- 2 a** Work in pairs. Which Past Simple form has an /ɪd/ ending?
- moved loved wanted
 - downloaded liked played
 - lived crashed chatted
 - listened hated worked
 - recorded travelled finished
 - walked visited phoned
- b** **CD2** ➔ **30** Listen and check. Listen again and practise.
- 3** Work in pairs. Take turns to say a verb from **1a** or **2a**. Your partner says the Past Simple form.

continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 6 and Progress Portfolio 6** p120
- **Language Summary 6** p140
- **6A–D Workbook** p30
- **Self-study DVD-ROM 6** with Review Video



Reading and Writing

- **Portfolio 6** Text me! Workbook p74
- **Reading** entertainment adjectives
- **Writing** messages (2); a text message

QUICK REVIEW Verbs Work in pairs. Can you write one verb for each letter of the alphabet? A = *ask*, B = *buy*, C = *come*, etc. Compare verbs with another pair. Which pair has the most verbs?

Vocabulary

Places in a town

- 1 a** Work in pairs. Which of these words do you know? Then do the exercise in Language Summary

VOCABULARY 7.1 → p142.

a building a house a flat
a square a market a station
a bus station a park a museum
a theatre a cinema a hotel a café
a shop a restaurant a bar
a pub an airport a beach a road

- b** Look again at the pictures on p142. Take turns to cover the words and test your partner.

What's picture n?

It's a hotel.

Listening and Speaking

- 2 a** Look at photos 1–3. Which is: a big city, a small town, a village? Which things from **1a** can you see in the photos?

- b** **CD2** → **32** Listen to conversations A–C. Match them to the photos and the things the people talk about 1–3.

- 1 where he/she lives now
- 2 where his/her grandparents live
- 3 where he/she went last weekend

- 3 a** Work in pairs. Which conversation talks about these things?

- 1 beautiful old buildings
- 2 a flat near a beach
- 3 a great place to go out at night
- 4 a place two hours from an airport
- 5 pubs that have very good food
- 6 a good place to go for walks

- b** Listen again. Check your answers.



1 Eyeries



2 Brisbane

HELP WITH LISTENING Weak forms (3): prepositions

- Remember: we often say small words (*do, does, you, was, were, can, etc.*) with a schwa /ə/. These are called weak forms.

- 4 a** **CD2** → **33** Listen to these sentences from conversations A and B. Notice how we say the prepositions in **pink**. Are these words stressed?

We lived there **for** /fə/ 12 years and then we moved **to** /tə/ London.

I stayed **at** /ət/ home all weekend.

It's about two hours **from** /frəm/ Cork airport.

And all **of** /əv/ the houses are different colours!

- b** Look at Audio Script **CD2** → **32** p160. Listen to conversations A and B again. Notice how we say the prepositions and the other weak forms in **pink**.

- 5 a** Work in groups. Which place would you like to visit: Eyeries, Brisbane or Burford? Why?

- b** Compare answers with the class. Which place is the most popular?



HELP WITH GRAMMAR *there is/there are*

- 6 a** Fill in the gaps in the tables with *'s*, *is*, *are*, *isn't* or *aren't*.

	singular
POSITIVE (+)	There _____ a nice beach.
NEGATIVE (-)	There _____ a station.
QUESTIONS (?)	_____ there a hotel?
SHORT ANSWERS	Yes, there _____. / No, there _____.
	plural
POSITIVE (+)	There _____ lots of things to do.
NEGATIVE (-)	There _____ any restaurants.
QUESTIONS (?)	_____ there any good pubs?
SHORT ANSWERS	Yes, there _____. / No, there _____.

TIP • We use *any* in negatives and questions with *there are*.

- b** What is the Past Simple of *there is* and *there are*?

- c** Check in **GRAMMAR 7.1** p144.

- 7 a** Look at these sentences about Burford. Fill in the gaps with *There's*, *There are*, *There isn't* or *There aren't*.

- (✓) *There are* lots of good shops.
- (X) *There isn't* a station.
- (✓) _____ a market every weekend.
- (X) _____ any five-star hotels.
- (X) _____ a theatre.
- (✓) _____ lots of nice cafés.
- (✓) _____ an interesting museum.
- (X) _____ an airport near the town.

- b** **CD2** → **34 PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the sentences in **7a**. Notice how we say *there's* /ðeəz/ and *there are* /ðeərə/.

- 8 a** Look at the table. Complete questions 1–8 with *Is there* or *Are there*.

places near my home	me	my partner
1 _____ a station?		
2 _____ any shops?		
3 _____ a hotel?		
4 _____ a market?		
5 _____ any good restaurants?		
6 _____ a park?		
7 _____ a cinema or a theatre?		
8 _____ any nice cafés?		

- b** Think about places near your home. Put *yes* or *no* in the *me* column.

- c** **CD2** → **35 PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the questions in **8a** and the short answers.

Is there a station? Are there any shops?

- d** Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in **8a**. Write *yes* or *no* in the *my partner* column. Continue the conversation if possible.

Is there a station near your home?

Yes, there is. It's about ten minutes away.

Get ready ... Get it right!

- 9** Choose your favourite town, city or village in your country (not the one you're in now). Tick the things in the box that are in this place and cross out the things that aren't.

My favourite place is: _____
 beautiful/famous buildings big/small parks
 a market a square an airport a beach
 old/new houses interesting shops
 a museum a theatre a cinema a station
 cheap/expensive restaurants
 nice cafés, bars or pubs good hotels

- 10 a** Work in groups. Tell the other students about your favourite place.

There are lots of beautiful buildings and two big parks.

- b** Choose one of your group's places that you would like to visit. Tell the class why you want to go there.

QUICK REVIEW *there is/there are* Work in groups. Talk about the good and bad things about the town or city you're in now. Use *there is*, *there are*, *there isn't*, and *there aren't*.



Vocabulary Rooms and things in a house

- 1 Read the advert and look at the plan of the flat. Match the words in bold to A-E on the plan.
- 2 Match these things in a house to 1-20 on the plan.

furniture **1** a double bed **10** a single bed
a fridge a coffee table a bath a shower
a cooker a toilet a sink a desk a plant
a sofa an armchair a washing machine
a washbasin a table a chair a cupboard
a shelf

- 3 Look again at the advert and the plan of the flat. Answer these questions.

- 1 How much space is there? **80m²**
- 2 What's the postcode of the flat?
- 3 How many bedrooms are there?
- 4 How much is the rent?
- 5 How many chairs are there in the kitchen?
- 6 How many plants are there?
- 7 How much furniture is there in the living room?
Make a list.

Description

Map & Schools

Street View

LOGIN

Park Road M13 7ED

Large flat (80m²) for rent in city centre. On quiet street near station and park. Large **kitchen**, **living room**, **bathroom**, two **bedrooms**, small **balcony**. No garden.

Rent: £800 per month



HELP WITH GRAMMAR

How much ... ? and How many ... ?

- 4 a Which of these nouns are countable (C)? Which are uncountable (U)?

table **C** bedroom furniture people
money chair space time plant

- b Look again at the questions in 3. Then complete the rules with *How much ... ?* or *How many ... ?*.

- We use _____ with plural countable nouns.
- We use _____ with uncountable nouns.

- c Check in **GRAMMAR 7.2** p144.



Listening and Speaking

6 a **CD2** → **37** John and his wife, Becky, want to find a flat. Listen to their conversation with the estate agent. Put the things they talk about in order.

- a the furniture **1** c the kitchen e the rent
b the bathroom d the bedrooms f shops

b Listen again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 There's some furniture in the flat. **T**
- 2 There's a TV in the flat.
- 3 The estate agent says there are two big bedrooms.
- 4 John and Becky haven't got any children.
- 5 The estate agent says there isn't a cooker.
- 6 There aren't any shops near the flat.
- 7 John and Becky don't want to see the flat.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR *some, any, a*

7 a Fill in the gaps in the table with *some, any* or *a*.

	singular countable nouns	plural countable nouns	uncountable nouns
+	There's <u>a</u> cooker.	There are <u>some</u> chairs.	We'd like _____ information.
-	There isn't _____ TV.	We haven't got _____ children.	I haven't got <u>any</u> money.
?	Has it got _____ shower?	Are there _____ shops?	Is there _____ furniture?

b When do we use *some* and *any*?

c Check in **GRAMMAR 7.3** → p144.

8 **CD2** → **38** **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the sentences in **7a**. Notice the way we say *some*.

There's a cooker. There are some /səm/ chairs.

9 a John and Becky now live in the flat. Read their phone conversation. Fill in the gaps with *some, any* or *a*.

BECKY Hi. I'm at the supermarket. Have we got ¹ any bread?

JOHN Yes, we've got ² _____ bread, but we haven't got ³ _____ butter.

B OK. So we need ⁴ _____ butter. Is there ⁵ _____ milk?

J No, there isn't. And we need ⁶ _____ meat and ⁷ _____ eggs.

B Right. Have we got ⁸ _____ fruit?

J We've got ⁹ _____ big bag of oranges, but we haven't got ¹⁰ _____ apples.

B OK, I'll get ¹¹ _____ more fruit. And ¹² _____ cheese.

J And can you get ¹³ _____ big bottle of water too?

B Yes, OK. See you later. Bye.

b **CD2** → **39** Listen and check.

Get ready ... Get it right!

10 Work in two groups. Group A p106. Group B p111.

5 a Fill in the gaps with *How much* or *How many*.

HOME SWEET HOME

- 1 *How many* people live in your home?
- 2 _____ rooms are there?
- 3 _____ furniture is there in your living room?
- 4 _____ TVs are there in your home?
- 5 _____ time do you spend watching TV every day?
- 6 _____ pictures are there in your bedroom?
- 7 _____ time do you spend cleaning the house every week?

b **CD2** → **36** **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and check. Listen again and practise. Copy the stress.

How many people live in your home?

c Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in **5a**. Are any of your partner's answers surprising?

QUICK REVIEW Rooms and things in a house What's your favourite room in your home? Work in pairs. Tell your partner five things about your favourite room. Use *There's a ...*, *There are some ...*, *There isn't a ...*, *There aren't any ...*.

I love shopping!

- 1 a** Work in pairs. Which of these words do you know? Check in **VOCABULARY 7.3** p142.

a bookshop a clothes shop
a shoe shop a supermarket
a kiosk a newsagent's
a department store a post office
a bank a chemist's a butcher's
a baker's

- b** Work in the same pairs. Think of two things you can buy or do in each place.

You can buy books and birthday cards in a bookshop.

- 2** Work in groups. Discuss these questions.

- 1 Do you like shopping? Why?/Why not?
- 2 What do you like or hate buying? Why?
- 3 Which shops do you go to every week? What do you buy there?
- 4 What's your favourite shop? Why?

- 3 a** Tick the words you know. Then do the exercise in **VOCABULARY 7.4** p143.

stamps a map a suitcase
tissues aspirin a lamp
postcards a cake a guide book
a newspaper cigarettes chocolate

- b** Work in new pairs. Think of two places where you can buy the things in **3a**.

You can buy stamps in a post office or a newsagent's.



Can I help you?

- 4 VIDEO 7 CD2 40** Look at the photos. Paul and Clare are at the shops. Watch or listen to their conversations. Answer these questions.

	Paul	Clare
1 Which shop is he/she in?		
2 What does he/she buy?		
3 How much does he/she spend?		

HELP WITH LISTENING What sales assistants say

- 5 a** Read these things that sales assistants say. Check new words with your teacher.

CONVERSATION 1

- a Here's your change and your receipt.
- b Anything else?
- c Can I help you?
- d Yes, they're over there.
- e Would you like a bag?

CONVERSATION 2

- f Would you like anything else?
- g Your pin number, please.
- h That's £17.50, please.
- i Do you need any help?
- j They're on the second floor.

- b VIDEO 7 CD2 40** Watch or listen again. Put sentences a-j in **5a** in the order you hear them (1-10).



Clare

REAL WORLD What customers say

- 6 a Fill in the gaps with the phrases in the boxes.

Have you got Do you sell I'll have Can I have

SAYING WHAT YOU WANT

Have you got any guide books for London?
 _____ four stamps for Europe, please?
 _____ suitcases?
 _____ this one, please.

your help that's all Here you
 How much is How much are

ASKING ABOUT PRICES

_____ this map?
 _____ these lamps?

OTHER USEFUL PHRASES

No, _____, thanks.
 _____ are.
 Thanks for _____.

TIPS • We use *one* in place of a singular noun:

A *Would you like a bag?* B *No, thanks. I've got one.*

• We use *ones* in place of a plural noun:

A *How much are these lamps?* B *The big ones are £25.*

- b Check in **REAL WORLD 7.2** p144.

- 7 **CD2** 41 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the sentences in 6a.

Have you got any guide books for London?

- 8 a Clare is now on the second floor of the department store. Read the conversation and choose the correct words.

SALES ASSISTANT Do you ¹*have/need* any help?

CLARE Yes, please. I'd like to buy a suitcase.

SA Yes, they're over ²*their/there*.

C Oh, yes. How much ³*is/are* they?

SA The big ⁴*one/ones* are £55 and the small ⁵*one/ones* are £40.

C OK. ⁶*I/It*'ll have this small ⁷*one/ones*, please.

SA Sure. ⁸*Do/Would* you like anything else?

C No, that's ⁹*every/all*, thanks.

SA OK, ¹⁰*that/that's* £40, please.

C ¹¹*Here you are/Here are you*.

SA Thank you. Your ¹²*pin number/number pin*, please. Right, here's your suitcase and your ¹³*change/receipt*. Have a nice day.

C You too. Bye.

SA Goodbye.

- b Work in pairs. Practise the conversation. Take turns to be the sales assistant.

- 9 a Work in new pairs. Write a conversation in a department store.

- b Practise the conversation until you can remember it.

- c Work in groups of four. Take turns to say your conversations. Listen to the other pair's conversation. What does the customer buy and how much does he/she spend?

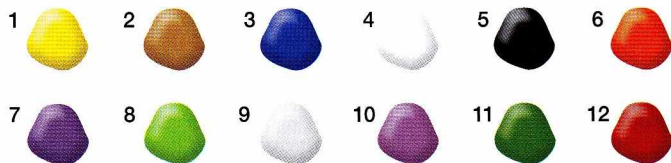
QUICK REVIEW Shops Write a list of shops. Work in pairs and compare lists. Who has more words? Tell your partner the last time you went to shops on your list. What did you buy there? *I went to a supermarket two days ago. I bought ...*

- 1** Work in pairs. Which of these words do you know? Then do the exercise in **VOCABULARY 7.5** p143.

trousers shorts jeans a dress shoes
a suit a skirt a jumper trainers a jacket
a hat a tie boots socks a T-shirt
a top a coat a cap a shirt

- 2** Match these words to colours 1–12.

white 4 black red blue yellow grey pink
brown orange purple dark green light green



- 3 a** Write lists for you.

- 1 clothes and colours I usually wear
- 2 clothes and colours I sometimes wear
- 3 clothes and colours I never wear

b Work in groups. Tell other students about the clothes and colours you wear.

I usually wear a suit in the week.

I sometimes wear jeans.

I never wear pink.

HELP WITH VOCABULARY Plural nouns

- 4 a** Some nouns look plural, but they mean 'one thing'. Look at these examples.

Those jeans are nice. (= 1 thing)

Where are my shoes? (= 2 things)

b Which of these nouns can mean 'one thing'? Which can be singular?

jeans shoes socks shorts
boots trousers trainers

TIP • We can use *a pair of ...* with both types of plural noun: *I've got a pair of red jeans/shoes.*

- 5 a** Fill in the gaps with *some*, *any* or *a*.

- 1 I haven't got _____ white shirts.
- 2 I've got _____ black jeans.
- 3 I need _____ new pair of trainers.
- 4 I haven't got _____ blue suit.
- 5 I want to buy _____ brown shoes.
- 6 I haven't got _____ shorts.
- 7 I've got _____ clothes that I never wear.

b Which sentences are true for you? Compare with a partner.

- 6 a** Before you read, check these phrases with your teacher.

designer clothes fashion magazines
try on send back

b Read the article. Match paragraphs 1–3 to the people in the photos.

Me and my clothes

Do you think what you wear is important? We talked to three people from different countries to find out what they think about clothes, shopping, the internet – and, of course, shoes!

1 I like looking good and I spend a lot of money on clothes and shoes. I'm a sales manager for a software company, so what I wear at work is important. I do a lot of shopping online because it's quick and easy. And if you don't like something, you can send it back. I buy a lot of shirts and I love designer clothes. They're expensive, but they look great. Yes, what I wear is important to me – and to my girlfriend!

2 I don't like shopping for clothes and I don't think what people wear is very important. When I go shopping, I only buy the clothes I need and that's all. The last time I went clothes shopping was about two months ago. I bought a nice blue jumper and five pairs of socks! I usually wear the same thing every day – jeans, a T-shirt and trainers. And I really hate buying shoes – I've only got three pairs!

3 Oh, I really love clothes! I read all the fashion magazines and I watch programmes about clothes on TV. And I love buying shoes – I've got about fifty pairs at home! And I love shopping with my friends. We go into town every Saturday and look at all the new clothes. I never buy clothes online because you can't try them on before you buy them. Next weekend I want to buy a dress for a party – and some new shoes, of course!

7 a Read the article again. Fill in the gaps with *Ronnie*, *Catherine* or *Samantha*.

- 1 Samantha has a lot of shoes.
- 2 _____ doesn't buy clothes very often.
- 3 _____ buys clothes to look good at work.
- 4 _____ buys a lot of clothes online.
- 5 _____ never buys clothes online.
- 6 _____ doesn't have many pairs of shoes.
- 7 _____ likes reading about clothes.
- 8 _____ wears the same thing every day.
- 9 _____ likes buying designer clothes.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

8 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.

- 1 Which person from the article is similar to you? Why?
- 2 Do you like shopping for clothes? Why?/Why not?
- 3 What's your favourite clothes shop? What do you usually buy there?
- 4 Do you buy clothes online? Why?/Why not?



Catherine from the UK



Samantha from Australia



Ronnie from the USA

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

/ɔ:/ and /3:/

1 **CD2** → **42** Listen to these sounds and words. Listen again and practise.

/ɔ:/ shorts walk four /3:/ shirt work girl

2 a Work in pairs. Look at the letters in bold. Write the words in the table.

Thursday	strawberry	tall	word	August
birthday	person	bought	divorced	skirt

/ɔ:/ shorts

/3:/ shirt

strawberry

Thursday

b **CD2** → **43** Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

3 a Work in pairs. Look at the letters in bold in these words. Are the sounds the same (S) or different (D)?

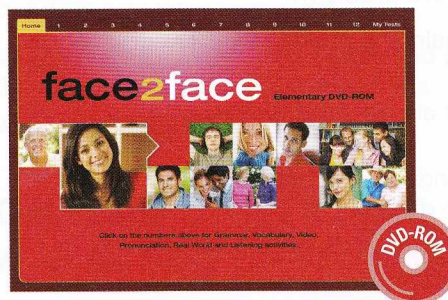
- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 daughter poor S | 6 sport early |
| 2 boring furniture | 7 dirty water |
| 3 Turkish German | 8 first burger |
| 4 morning always | 9 tall floor |
| 5 thirty surname | 10 awful boring |

b **CD2** → **44** Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 7 and Progress Portfolio 7** p121
- **Language Summary 7** p142
- **7A-D Workbook** p35
- **Self-study DVD-ROM 7** with Review Video



Reading and Writing

- **Portfolio 7** Renting a flat Workbook p76
- Reading** adverts for places to live
- Writing** paragraphs (2); a letter to a friend

QUICK REVIEW Clothes Write all the clothes you know. Work in pairs and compare lists. Then tell your partner about your favourite clothes: *I've got a really nice black jacket. I bought it in Milan.*

Vocabulary Work

- 1 a** Work in pairs. Which of these words do you know? Then do the exercise in **VOCABULARY 8.1 p145**.

a customer a report notes
a letter a message a contract
a company a meeting a conference

- b** Work on your own. Which word/phrase does not go with the verb?

- 1 write** ~~a customer~~/a report/a letter
- 2 answer** the phone/notes/an email
- 3 take** contracts/messages/notes
- 4 sign** a contract/a letter/a meeting
- 5 work** for a company/in an office/a report
- 6 go to** a meeting/a contract/a conference
- 7 write to** a contract/a customer/a company

- c** Work in pairs. Compare answers. Then take turns to test your partner.

letters

You write letters and sign letters.

Listening and Speaking

- 2 a** Look at pictures 1 and 2. It's 9.50 a.m. Where are the people?

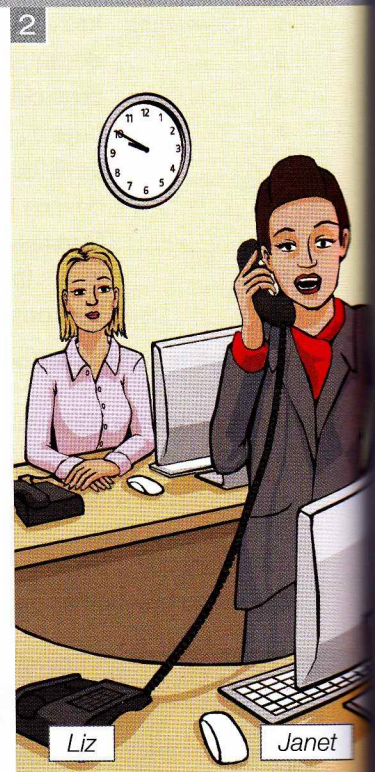
- b** **CD2 45** Listen to the conversation. What is Frank's problem?

- c** Listen again and choose the correct answers.

- Frank isn't at work because the *bus/train* was late.
- The meeting with the Tamada brothers is at *ten/eleven* o'clock.
- Frank wants Janet to *start the meeting/wait* for him.
- The contract is *Frank's/Janet's*.
- Adriana is *in the office/at home*.
- Janet wants Liz to *take notes in the meeting/finish some reports*.



Frank



Liz

Janet

- 3 a** Who says these sentences – Frank, Janet or Liz?

- I'm waiting for a taxi. *Frank*
- They're sitting in your office.
- They aren't looking very happy.
- She's working at home today.
- I'm not doing anything important at the moment.
- Danny isn't doing anything.

- b** Work in pairs. Compare answers.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Present Continuous: positive and negative

- 4 a** Are the sentences in **3a** about now or every day?

- b** We use *be + verb+ing* to make the Present Continuous. Fill in the gaps with *'m, 're, aren't, 's* or *isn't*.

POSITIVE (+)		NEGATIVE (-)	
I _____	verb+ing	I _____ not	verb+ing
you/we/they _____		you/we/they _____	
he/she/it _____		he/she/it _____	

- c** Write the *-ing* form of these verbs.

play *playing* make study sit
look go run write live stop

- d** Check in **GRAMMAR 8.1 p146**.



CD2 46 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **3a**. Copy the stress.

I'm waiting for a taxi.

a Look at picture 3. Liz is talking to Danny. It's 9.55 a.m. Put the verbs in the Present Continuous.

LIZ Danny, are you busy?

DANNY Well, er, I ¹ *'m writing* (write) a letter.

LIZ Can you take notes at the meeting, please?

DANNY Why me? Look, Bob ² _____ (read) the newspaper. Ask him.

LIZ He ³ _____ (not read) the newspaper.

He ⁴ _____ (study) the business pages.

DANNY Well, I ⁵ _____ (wait) for a phone call from New York.

LIZ They ⁶ _____ (not work) in New York now, Danny. It's 5.00 a.m. there!

DANNY OK, OK, I ⁷ _____ (go) now. Which room?

b **CD2 47** Listen and check your answers.

7 Work in pairs. It's 10.05 a.m. What are these people doing now, do you think?

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------|
| 1 Janet | 3 Danny |
| 2 The Tamada brothers | 4 Frank |

I think Janet's having a meeting.

3 **CD2 48** It's now 10.15 a.m. Frank is phoning Liz. Listen and answer the questions.

- Where is Frank calling from?
- Is the taxi moving?
- Are they having the meeting now?
- What is Danny doing?
- What is Frank doing at the end of the phone call?

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Present Continuous: questions and short answers

9 a Write questions 3 and 4 from **8** in the table.

question word	auxiliary	subject	verb+ing	
Where	is	Frank	calling	from?
	Is	the taxi	moving?	

b Write positive and negative short answers for these questions.

1 Am I working here today?

Yes, *you are* ./No, _____.

2 Is Janet answering her phone?

Yes, _____ ./No, _____.

3 Are they having the meeting now?

Yes, _____ ./No, _____.

c Check in **GRAMMAR 8.2** p146.

10 **CD2 49** Who signs the contract, do you think – Janet or Frank? Listen and check.

11 a It's now 6.30 p.m. Frank is talking to his wife, Karen, on the phone. Make questions in the Present Continuous.

FRANK Hi! It's me.

KAREN Hello, love. ¹you / work / late this evening?
Are you working late this evening?

FRANK No, I'm having a drink with Liz. I signed the Tamada contract today.

KAREN Oh, that's fantastic! ²you / have / a nice time?

FRANK Yes, thanks. ³What / you / do?

KAREN I'm making dinner.

FRANK ⁴the kids / do / their homework?

KAREN Er ... no, they're not.

FRANK ⁵What / they / do?

KAREN They're watching TV.

b **CD2 50** Listen and check.

c **CD2 51 PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the questions in **11a**. Copy the stress.

Are you working late this evening?

Get ready ... Get it right!

12 Work in two groups. Group A p107. Group B p112.

QUICK REVIEW Present Continuous Write six actions (*play tennis, watch TV, etc.*). Work in pairs. Take turns to mime the actions to your partner. He/She guesses what you are doing:
A Are you playing tennis? **B** Yes, I am.

Vocabulary and Speaking

Types of transport

- 1 a** Work in pairs. Which words do you know?
Check new words in **VOCABULARY 8.2** p145.

a car a plane a train a taxi a bus
a tram a bike a scooter a boat
a motorbike a ferry a coach

- b** Put the words into two groups: public transport and private transport. Some words can go in both groups.

- c** Work in pairs. Compare groups. Are they the same?

- 2 a** Match phrases 1–7 to a–g. Check in **VOCABULARY 8.3** p145.

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 go by car | a cycle |
| 2 go by bike | b take the bus/coach |
| 3 go by plane | c walk |
| 4 go on foot | d take the ferry/boat |
| 5 go by bus/coach | e fly |
| 6 go by ferry/boat | f drive |
| 7 go by train/tube/tram | g take the train/tube/tram |

- b** Work in groups. Talk about how you travel:

- to work/school/university
- to the centre of your town/city
- to other places in your country
- to parties
- when you're on holiday

Listening and Speaking

- 3 a** Before you listen, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

snow a traffic jam a journey a normal day

- b** Look at the news website and the photo. What is happening in London?

www.newsworld.com/London



NewsWorld

London in the Snow

Traffic Jams All Over City

Heavy snow continues to fall in central London this morning as people try to get to work.

Travel news and updates



- 4 a** **CD2** 52 Listen to a news report. Fill in the table.

	how he/she usually travels to work	how he/she is travelling to work today
first man	by train	
woman		
second man		

- b** Listen again and answer these questions.

- Are there any trains today?
- What time does the first man usually start work?
- How long is the woman's journey to work on a normal day?
- When did she leave home?
- Where is the second man from?
- Do they have the same traffic problems in his country?

HELP WITH LISTENING Linking (2)

- Remember: we often link consonant sounds at the end of a word with vowel sounds at the beginning of the next word.

- 5 a** **CD2** 53 Listen and notice the linking.

YOU EXPECT TO HEAR

I start at eight.
And it's eight thirty now.

YOU USUALLY HEAR

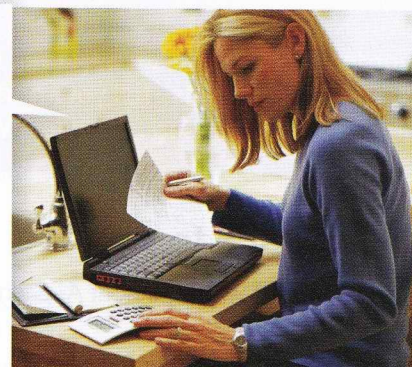
I start_at_eight.
And_it's_eight thirty now.

- b** Look at Audio Script **CD2** 52 p161. Listen again and notice the consonant-vowel links.



- 7 a** Read what some other people are doing on the same day. Put the verbs in the Present Simple or Present Continuous.

MADDY I'm an accountant and I
 1 work (work) for a bank. I usually
 2 _____ (work) in the city, but
 today I 3 _____ (work) at home
 because of the snow. At the moment
 I 4 _____ (sit) in the kitchen and
 I 5 _____ (write) emails on my
 laptop. I 6 _____ (not work)
 at home very often, so I'm happy
 it 7 _____ (snow) today!



EVE On Mondays we usually 8 _____ (drive) to Wimbledon and
 9 _____ (visit) some friends. But we 10 _____ (stay) at home
 today because of the snow. At the moment my husband, Lenny,
 11 _____ (answer) his emails and I 12 _____ (watch) the news.
 Normally I 13 _____ (not watch) TV in the day, but I want to know
 about the weather.



HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Present Simple or Present Continuous

- a** Look at this sentence. Then complete the rules with *Present Simple* or *Present Continuous*.
I usually go by train, but I'm taking the bus today.

- We use the _____ to talk about things that happen every day/week/month, etc.
- We use the _____ to talk about things that are happening now.

- b** Do we usually use the Present Simple (PS) or the Present Continuous (PC) with these words/phrases?

usually **PS** now
 today sometimes
 always often normally
 at the moment never
 hardly ever every day

- c** Check in **GRAMMAR 8.3** p146.

- b** **CD2** 54 Listen and check your answers.

- 8 a** Make questions about the people in **7a**. Fill in the gaps with *do*, *does*, *is*, *are* and the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- What does Maddy do ? (do)
- _____ she _____ in the city today? (work)
- What _____ she _____ at the moment? (do)
- _____ she _____ at home very often? (work)
- What _____ Lenny and Eve usually _____ on Mondays? (do)
- What _____ they _____ today? (do)
- _____ Eve normally _____ TV in the day? (watch)
- Why _____ she _____ it today? (watch)

- b** **CD2** 55 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

- c** Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

What does Maddy do?

She's an accountant.

Get ready ... Get it right!

- 9** Work in two groups. Group A p107. Group B p112.

QUICK REVIEW Types of transport Write ten words for types of transport (*car, bus, etc.*). Work in pairs. Compare lists. Tell your partner which types of transport you used last week. Where did you go?

I'll get back to you

1 Emily is at work. Look at A–C and answer the questions.

- 1 What is Chris Morris's job?
- 2 Where can you see *Not Now*?
- 3 What is the postcode of Morris Computers?
- 4 In which month is the conference?
- 5 How many phone calls does Emily want to make?
- 6 What is Chris Morris's email address?
- 7 Who are the actors in *Not Now*?
- 8 Is Clare a friend or a customer, do you think?

HELP WITH LISTENING

Phone messages

2 a Look at these sentences from phone messages. Work in pairs. Try to fill in the gaps with these words.

voicemail person choose
back message press try

- a Hello, this is Alan Wick's voicemail.
- b If you leave a message, I'll get _____ to you.
- c I'm sorry, but the _____ you called is not available.
- d Please leave your _____ after the tone.
- e Please _____ one of the following three options.
- f For all other enquiries, _____ zero.
- g Please _____ later.

b **CD2 56** Listen to four messages. Check your answers to **2a**. What do you do after each message?

- a end the call
- b leave a message
- c press a number on the phone

3 **CD2 57** Emily is making three phone calls. Listen and answer these questions.

- 1 When does Emily want to:
 - a meet Alan Wick?
 - b meet Clare?
 - c go to the theatre?
- 2 How much are the theatre tickets?

Emily

A

To do – Wed 16th

- * phone Chris Morris
- * check contract
- * call Alan Wick
- * check date of March conference
- * call theatre – prices?
- * phone Clare – coffee later?

B



**Morris
Computers Ltd**

Chris Morris
Business Manager

103 Dean Street
Manchester
M18 7FT
Tel: 0161 496 0723
email: c.morris@mc.co.uk

C

Not Now

by Lionel Mayers

starring
Bill Marks and Kelly Bolton

"THE YEAR'S BEST COMEDY!"
The Evening News

The Queen's Theatre, Manchester
Box Office: 08081 570570
www.queentheatremanchester.com



Clare



Chris

Can I call you back?

4 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

- How many phone calls do you make or get on a normal day?
- Do you always answer your phone at work or at home? If not, why not?
- When was the last phone call you made? Who did you call? Why?

5 a VIDEO 8 CD2 58 Close your book. Watch or listen to two phone calls. What does Emily talk to Clare about? When can Emily talk to Chris Morris again?

b Work in pairs. Choose the correct words/phrases.

TIM Hello, 3DUK. Can I help you?
 CLARE Hello, ¹*I want to (can I) speak to Emily, please?*
 TIM ²*Hold on/Stop* a moment, she's here.
 EMILY Hello. Emily Wise.
 CLARE Hi. ³*It's/I'm* Clare. I ⁴*got/had* your message.
 EMILY Good. Do you want to go for a coffee after work?
 CLARE Sure. Is six o'clock OK?
 EMILY Yes, that's fine. Let's meet at Café Uno.
 CLARE OK. See you there at six. Bye.
 EMILY Bye.

CHRIS Hello?
 EMILY Hello, ⁵*is that/lare* you Chris Morris?
 CHRIS ⁶*Speaking. I am.*
 EMILY ⁷*This is/I'm* Emily Wise from 3DUK.
 CHRIS Hello, Emily. Look, I've got a conference call in a minute. Can I call you ⁸*back/lagain* in an hour?
 EMILY Of course. Call me ⁹*only/by* my mobile.
 CHRIS Right. ¹⁰*I'll call/I'm calling* you later.
 EMILY Thanks a lot. Bye.
 CHRIS Bye.

c Watch or listen again. Check your answers.

6 Close your books. Work in pairs. What can you remember about the two conversations?

REAL WORLD Talking on the phone

7 Write these headings in a-d in the table.

other useful phrases calling people back
 saying who you are asking to speak to people

a	b
Hello, can I speak to (Emily), please?	This is (Emily Wise) from (3DUK).
Hello, is that (Chris Morris)?	Speaking.
	It's (Clare).
c	d other useful phrases
Can I call you back (in an hour)?	I got your message.
I'll call you later.	Call me on my mobile.
Can you call me back?	Hold on a moment.

REAL WORLD 8.1 p146

8 CD2 59 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in 7. Copy the stress and intonation.

Hello, can I speak to Emily, please?

9 a Clare is making some phone calls. Fill in the gaps with parts of the phrases from 7.

CLARE Hello, ¹*is that* Simon Dale?
 SIMON Speaking.
 CLARE Hi, Simon. ²_____ Clare Ross.
 SIMON Oh, hello, Clare. Look, I can't talk right now.
³_____ you back?
 CLARE Yes, of course. ⁴_____ my mobile.
 SIMON Right. I'll ⁵_____ later. Bye.

CLARE Hi, Vicky. ⁶_____ Clare.
 VICKY Hi, Clare. How are you?
 CLARE I'm fine, thanks. ⁷_____ to Rob, please?
 VICKY ⁸_____ a moment, I'll get him.
 ROB Hello, Clare. I ⁹_____ your message.
 Let's meet at 8.30 outside the cinema.
 CLARE OK, see you then. Bye.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

10 a Work in new pairs. Write a phone conversation.

b Swap conversations with another pair. Correct any mistakes.

c Practise the new conversation with your partner. Then role-play it for the other pair.

QUICK REVIEW Talking on the phone

Write all the phrases for talking on the phone you can remember. Work in pairs. Take turns to say your phrases. How many are the same?

- 1 a Tick the words/phrases you know. Then do the exercise in **VOCABULARY 8.4** p145.

swim ski surf windsurf sail sing
cook drive speak another language
ride a horse ride a motorbike
play a musical instrument

- b Work in pairs. Find four things that you can do, but your partner can't do. Use the words/phrases in 1a or your own ideas.

Can you swim?

Yes, I can./No, I can't.

- 2 Read the job advert. Would you like to do this job? Why?/Why not?

South Wales Adventure Centre

Course Leaders

We are looking for people to work as course leaders at our outdoor centre in Pembrokeshire, Wales. We offer holidays and weekend courses for adults and teenagers (including school groups from Europe).

We are looking for people who:

- like working with people of all ages
- can ride and enjoy working with horses
- enjoy outdoor activities
- are good at languages
- are good at water sports
- have a driving licence



Email welshadventure@iol.co.uk for an application form. Experience and references required.

- 3 a Before you read, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

excellent popular fluent
work hard careful

- b Read the reference letter. Do you think Ray is a good person for the job?

- c Read the reference and advert again. Find five reasons why Ray can do the job.



Devon Outdoor Centre

Woodside | Devon | PL3 1GZ

Tel: 01541 766902 email: d.outdoor@gmail.co.uk

23rd March

Dear Sir or Madam

Reference: Mr Ray Downing

I am writing to recommend Ray for the position of course leader with your company. He worked for our outdoor centre for four months last summer. He was a very **popular** course leader and he planned all his group's activities very **carefully**. He always worked very **hard** and made friends **easily** with people of all ages.

Ray loves all outdoor activities, particularly cycling and horse riding. He can sail very **well** and he's a **good** surfer and a **fast** swimmer. He speaks Spanish **fluently** and is an **excellent** driver. Ray also wrote a **wonderful** blog for the teenagers' course and all the children's parents really enjoyed reading it.

If you would like any further information, please contact me by phone or email.

Yours faithfully

Stella James

Stella James
Centre Manager

HELP WITH VOCABULARY Adjectives and adverbs

- 4 a Look at this sentence. Then complete the rules with **adverbs** or **adjectives**.

adverb

adjective

*He speaks Spanish **fluently** and is an **excellent** driver.*

- We use _____ to describe nouns. They usually come **before** the noun.
- We use _____ like *well*, *carefully*, etc. to describe verbs. They usually come **after** the verb.

- b Look at the words in bold in the letter. Which are adverbs and which are adjectives? Which verbs or nouns do they describe?

- c Write the adverbs for these adjectives. What are the spelling rules? Which adverb is irregular?

1 fluent 2 easy 3 careful 4 good

- d Check in **VOCABULARY 8.5** p145. Learn the irregular adverbs.



Ray

5 Write the adverbs.

- | | | |
|----------------------|-------------|---------|
| 1 safe safely | 4 slow | 7 quiet |
| 2 happy | 5 beautiful | 8 bad |
| 3 fast | 6 hard | 9 noisy |

6 a Choose the correct words.

- I'm a *good/well* tennis player.
- I usually sleep quite *bad/badly*.
- I work very *hard/hardly*.
- I'm a *bad/badly* driver.
- I speak more than one language *fluent/fluently*.
- I'm a very *well/good* cook.
- I can sing *beautiful/beautifully*.

b Tick the true sentences. Change the other sentences to make them true for you.

I'm not a very good tennis player.

I usually sleep very well.

c Work in pairs and compare sentences. How many are the same?

7 a Choose three adjectives or adverbs from **4c** or **5**. Write a sentence about you for each word. Give the sentences to your teacher.

b Listen to your teacher read sentences about different students. Can you guess who he/she is talking about?

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

/ɪ/ and /i:/

1 **CD2** **60** Listen to these sounds and words. Listen again and practise.

- /ɪ/ live fish biscuits
- /i:/ leave week people

2 a Work in pairs. Match the vowels in bold in these words with sounds 1 or 2 in **1**.

milk 1	teeth	his	he's	ill	ski
beach	meeting	excited	thirteen		
window	interesting	machine	chicken		

b **CD2** **61** Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

3 a Work in new pairs. Look at the vowels in bold. Which vowel sound is different?

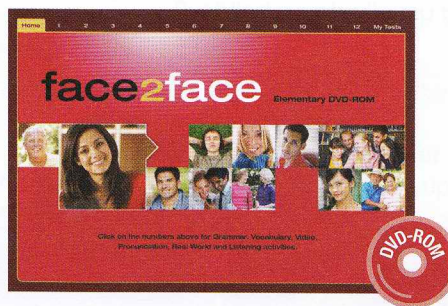
- beach machine **window**
- engineer assistant teacher
- market building three
- cheese sausage meat
- busy message email
- terrible crowded clean
- English Chinese Brazilian

b **CD2** **62** Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- Extra Practice 8 and Progress Portfolio 8** p122
- Language Summary 8** p145
- 8A-D Workbook** p40
- Self-study DVD-ROM 8** with Review Video



Reading and Writing

- Portfolio 8** Finding a job Workbook p78
- Reading** job adverts
- Writing** a formal letter

QUICK REVIEW Adjectives and adverbs Write six adjectives. Work in pairs. Take turns to say your adjectives. Your partner says the adverb and a sentence with that adverb: **A** fluent **B** fluently. *My sister can speak Russian fluently.*

Vocabulary and Speaking Holiday activities

- 1 a** Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps with these verbs. Then check new words/phrases in **VOCABULARY 9.1** p147.

have go on stay go to rent go travel

- 1 have {
 - a picnic
 - a good/great/fantastic time
- 2 _____ {
 - in a hotel
 - with friends or family
- 3 _____ {
 - a car
 - a bike
 - a boat
- 4 _____ {
 - sightseeing
 - diving
 - skiing
 - camping
- 5 _____ {
 - museums
 - the beach
- 6 _____ {
 - holiday
 - a boat trip
 - a guided tour
- 7 _____ {
 - by public transport
 - around

- b** Work in pairs. Which of the things in **1a** do you usually do on holiday?

- 2 a** Make Past Simple questions with these words.

- 1 did / last / you / When / on / holiday / go ?
When did you last go on holiday?
- 2 did / go / Where / you ?
- 3 a good time / you / Did / have ?
- 4 with / you / Who / go / did ?
- 5 do / did / there / What / you ?
- 6 did / stay / you / Where ?
- 7 you / travel / did / around / How ?
- 8 you / What else / do / did ?

- b** Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Give more information if possible.

Listening and Speaking

- 3 a** What do you know about Cape Town?

- b** Before you listen, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

a tourist a cable car a wildlife park
an elephant a prison a cell a whale

- c** **CD3-1** Jessica is asking her friend Andy about his last holiday. Listen and put photos A–D in order.

- d** Listen again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Andy went to Cape Town for three weeks.
- 2 He went there with a friend from university.
- 3 They walked up Table Mountain.
- 4 They stayed in a hotel in Cape Town.
- 5 They rented a car for the first week.
- 6 They went on a boat trip on the last day of their holiday.

B

A



HELP WITH LISTENING Weak forms: review

- Remember: we often say words like *was*, *you*, *of*, etc. with a schwa /ə/. These are called weak forms.

4 a Work in pairs. Look at these sentences. Underline the words you hear as weak forms.

- I went to Cape Town for two weeks.
- Nigel, a friend from university.
- And where did you stay?
- I took lots of photos.
- Yes, it was amazing.

b CD3 2 Listen and check.

- c Look at Audio Script CD3 1 p162. Listen again and notice the weak forms of the words in pink.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Infinitive of purpose

5 a Look at sentences 1 and 2. Do they have the same meaning?

- We drove to a wildlife park to see some elephants.
- We drove to a wildlife park because we wanted to see some elephants.

b Choose the correct words in the rule.

- To say why we do something, we often use the infinitive/infinitive with *to*.

TIP • We often answer *Why ... ?* questions with the infinitive with *to*: **A** *Why did you go there?* **B** *To see some elephants.*

GRAMMAR 9.1 p148



D

C



6 CD3 3 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

to see some elephants →
We drove to a wildlife park to see some elephants.

7 a Make sentences about why tourists go to these places. Use these verbs.

see stay take learn see go (x2)

Tourists go to:

- Nevada / the Grand Canyon
Tourists go to Nevada to see the Grand Canyon.
- Hawaii / diving
- Dubai / in amazing hotels
- Agra / the Taj Mahal
- Switzerland / skiing
- Kenya / photos of animals
- London / English

b Work in pairs. Ask your partner why tourists go to the places in 7a.

Why do tourists go to Nevada?

To see the Grand Canyon.

8 a Complete these sentences. Use the infinitive with *to* and your own ideas. Write true sentences if possible.

- I need some money ...
- I often go online ...
- I'm studying English ...
- Last weekend I went into town ...
- Last night I phoned my friend ...
- Yesterday I went to the supermarket ...

b Work in pairs. Take turns to say your sentences. Ask follow-up questions if possible.

Get ready ... Get it right!

9 Write four places you went to in the last four weeks (cities, countries, places, shops, etc.). Think why you went there.

Rome France my parents' house the post office

10 a Work in pairs. Ask why your partner went to the places on his/her list. Ask follow-up questions.

Why did you go to Rome?

To visit my sister.

When did you go there?

A week ago.

b Tell the class about one place your partner went to.

A week ago Reza went to Rome to visit his sister.

QUICK REVIEW Adjectives Work in pairs. Write six adjectives that can describe places (*crowded, safe, etc.*). Take turns to say sentences about places you know. Use the adjectives on your list: *The town centre is very crowded on Saturdays.*

Vocabulary and Speaking

Natural places

- 1 a** Tick the words you know. Then do the exercise in **VOCABULARY 9.2** p147.

the countryside a mountain a hill
a forest a wood a river an island
a lake the sea the desert

b Think of three famous natural places in your country. Use vocabulary from **1a** and your own ideas.

c Work in groups. Tell other students about the natural places you chose.

There's a beautiful lake in Hungary called Lake Balaton.

Reading

- 2 a** Before you read, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

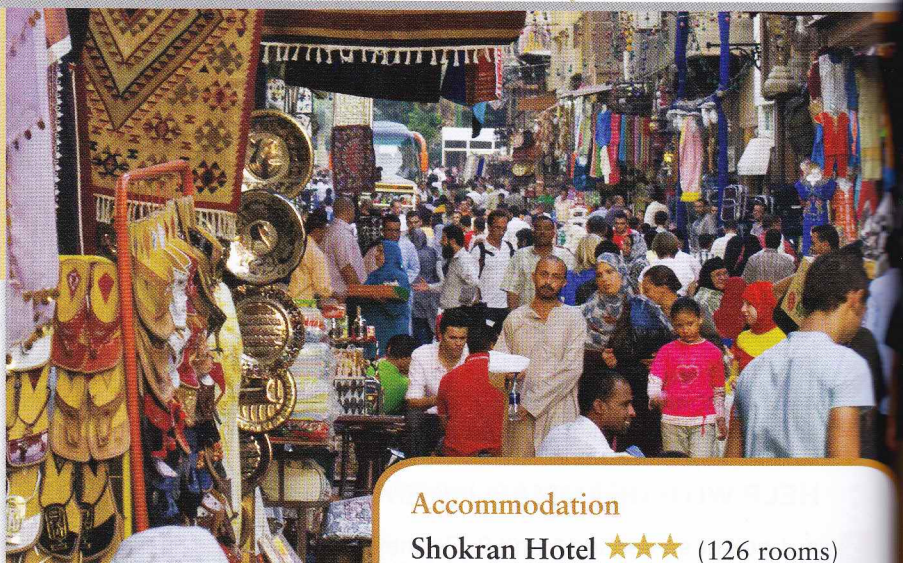
the Pyramids a mosque
go snorkelling a coral reef a camel

b Read a holiday brochure about two holiday places in Egypt. Choose one place for a holiday. Tell another student why you chose it.

c Read about the places again. Find three things you can do in each place.

- 3** Read these sentences. Which sentence is false?

- a The Sels Hotel is **smaller** than the Shokran Hotel.
- b Cairo is **hotter** than Sharm El Sheikh.
- c Cairo is probably **noisier**.
- d Cairo is **more crowded** than Sharm El Sheikh.
- e The holiday in Cairo is **more expensive**.



Accommodation

Shokran Hotel ★★★★★ (126 rooms)

Cost per week (including flight): €1,490

Average temperature (April–May): 30°C

Cairo

Egypt's busy capital city is a wonderful place to visit. Most people come to Cairo to see the Pyramids at Giza and the famous Egyptian Museum. You can also go on a guided tour of Old Cairo to see the beautiful mosques and old buildings, or go shopping in the famous Khan al-Khalili market.

In the evening you can enjoy traditional Egyptian food in restaurants all over the city, or you can go on a boat trip and have dinner on the River Nile. Come to Cairo – and have the holiday of a lifetime!



HELP WITH GRAMMAR Comparatives

- 4 a** Look at the comparatives in bold in **3**. Then complete the rules.
- Most 1-syllable adjectives (*small, old*) → add **-er**.
 - 1-syllable adjectives ending in consonant + vowel + consonant (*hot, big, etc.*) → double the last consonant and add _____.
 - 2-syllable adjectives ending in -y (*noisy, happy, etc.*) → change the -y to _____ and add _____.
 - Other 2- and 3-syllable adjectives (*crowded, expensive, etc.*) → put _____ before the adjective.
 - The comparatives for *good* and *bad* are irregular: *good* → *better*, *bad* → *worse*.
- b** Look at sentences a, b and d in **3**. Which word do we often use after the comparative?
- c** Check in **GRAMMAR 9.2** p148.



Sharm El Sheikh

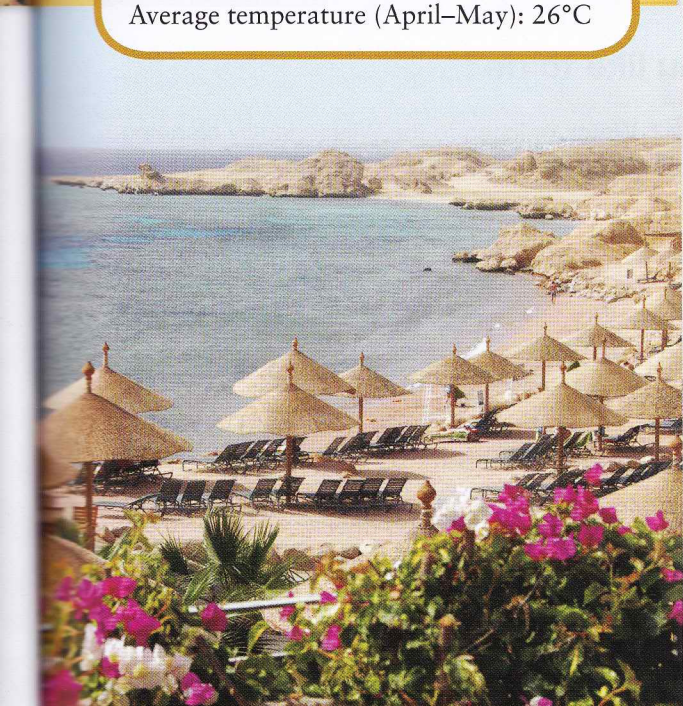
People come to Sharm El Sheikh from all over the world to go diving and snorkelling in the Red Sea – the beautiful coral reefs and colourful fish are amazing! You can also rent a motorbike and go into the desert to see the red mountains, or maybe go on a camel ride instead. And at the end of the day you can enjoy fresh seafood in one of Sharm El Sheikh's excellent restaurants and then go clubbing with your friends. Whatever you want from your holiday, it's here in Sharm El Sheikh!

Accommodation

Sels Hotel ★★★★★ (39 rooms)

Cost per week (including flight): €1,670

Average temperature (April–May): 26°C



5 Write the comparatives.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|---------|-------------|--------------|
| 1 safe <i>safer</i> | 4 big | 7 dangerous | 10 easy |
| 2 clean | 5 dirty | 8 fast | 11 difficult |
| 3 boring | 6 good | 9 bad | 12 lucky |

Listening and Speaking

6 a **CD3** **4** Listen to Patrick and Juliet planning a holiday in Egypt. Where does each person want to go? Find one reason why they want to go there.

b Fill in the gaps with the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets. Use *than* if necessary.

- Sharm's *more beautiful than* Cairo. (beautiful)
- Cairo's _____. (interesting)
- Sharm looks _____ Cairo. (nice)
- Cairo's _____ Sharm. (busy)
- The hotel in Cairo is _____. (cheap)
- Cairo's _____ Sharm. (good)
- Sharm's probably _____. (safe)
- Sharm's _____ with young people. (popular)

c Work in pairs. Compare sentences. Who says each sentence in **6b** – Patrick or Juliet?

d Listen again and check.

7 **CD3** **5** **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the sentences in **6b**. Copy the stress and weak form of *than*.

Sharm's more beautiful than /ðən/ Cairo.

8 **CD3** **6** Where do you think Patrick and Juliet went on holiday? Listen and check.

Get ready ... Get it right!

9 Write five sentences comparing two friends or two people in your family. Use these words/phrases or your own ideas.

young old beautiful tall short friendly
happy busy rich famous popular
a good/boring/interesting job a big/small/nice house
a difficult/easy/busy/interesting life

Carlos is younger than Diego.

Diego's got a more interesting job.

10 a Work in pairs. Tell your partner about the people you chose in **9**. Give more information if possible.

Carlos is younger than Diego.
Carlos is 27 and Diego is 30.

b Tell the class two things about the people your partner chose.

QUICK REVIEW Natural places Write all the words for natural places that you know (*a mountain, etc.*). Work in pairs. Compare lists. Then tell your partner about the last time you went to two of the places on your list.

Two places to go

- 1 a** Work in pairs. Which of these animals do you know? Then do the exercise in **VOCABULARY 9.3** p147.

a lion a chicken a tiger a cow
a monkey a sheep a wolf a rabbit
a mouse a snake a bird a gorilla

- b** Put the animals from **1a** into these groups. Some animals can go in more than one group.

- 1 wild animals
- 2 farm animals
- 3 pets

- c** Work in pairs. Compare groups. Are they the same?

- d** Work in the same pairs. Which other animals do you know? Add them to your groups.

- 2 a** Read about two places in the UK where people go for a day out. Which place is more interesting, do you think? Why?

- b** Read the articles again. Answer the questions.

LONGLEAT

- 1 How do you travel around the Safari Park?
- 2 Which animals can you see there?
- 3 Can you visit Longleat House?
- 4 Where does the gorilla live?

REGENT'S PARK

- 5 When did London Zoo first open?
- 6 Is the theatre open in October?
- 7 How many places to eat are there in the park?
- 8 Where can you hire boats from?

- c** Work in pairs. Compare answers.

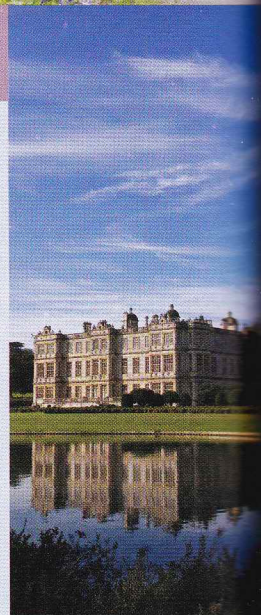


LONGLEAT

Longleat is a fantastic day out for all the family. You can drive around the Safari Park and see hundreds of animals in the wild. There are monkeys, wolves, lions and tigers in the park, so don't forget to close your car windows!

You can also go on a guided tour of Longleat House, built in the 16th century, or just have lunch in the beautiful gardens. And then in the afternoon you can go on an exciting safari boat trip – look out for the gorilla that lives on an island in the middle of the lake!

Longleat is open every day from February to November. You can buy tickets online at www.longleat.co.uk.



What would you like to do?

- 3 a VIDEO 9 CD3 7** Watch or listen to the Wilson family planning a day out. Put the places they talk about in order. Where do they decide to go?

- | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------|
| a Longleat | c a theatre | e London Zoo |
| b Regent's Park | d the beach 1 | f school |

- b** Listen again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 The Wilson family went to the beach last weekend.
- 2 Josh's parents want to go to Regent's Park.
- 3 Josh's sister works at a restaurant every weekend.
- 4 Josh doesn't want to go to Longleat.
- 5 His friends went to Longleat two weeks ago.
- 6 He went to London Zoo last year.
- 7 He can't take a friend with him on Saturday.



WHAT'S ON IN REGENT'S PARK

LONDON ZOO

This world-famous zoo first opened in 1828 and is now home to 12,000 animals. You can see tigers, camels, snakes, colourful birds and lots more – and don't forget to visit the exciting rainforest area. For more information, go to www.zsl.org.

THE OPEN AIR THEATRE

The theatre is open from May to September. One of the plays this season is Shakespeare's *A Midsummer Night's Dream*. You can book tickets at www.openairtheatre.org.

EVENTS IN THE PARK

There are sometimes free concerts in the afternoons and guided bird walks at the weekend. See www.royalparksgov.uk for more details of what's on this week.

FOOD AND DRINK

There are six excellent cafés and restaurants in Regent's Park. The Boathouse Café is a popular place for lunch, and the Garden Café is a great place for a meal before going to the open air theatre.

BOAT HIRE

You can hire boats on the lake from March to October from the Boathouse Café.



REAL WORLD Deciding what to do

- 4 a Look at these questions and answers. We use them when we're deciding what to do.

asking people what they want to do	saying what you want to do
What would you like to do?	I'd like (to go to the beach).
Where do you want to go?	I want (to go to Longleat).
Would you like (to go to London)?	Yes, that's a good idea.
Do you want (to go to Regent's Park)?	Not really. I'd rather (stay at home).

TIPS • *Would like* is more polite than *want*.

• We use *I'd rather* to say *I want to do this more than something else*.

- b Complete the rules with *would/d like*, *want* and *would/d rather*.

- After _____ we use the infinitive (*go, do, etc.*).
- After _____ and _____ we use the infinitive with *to* (*to go, to do, etc.*).

REAL WORLD 9.1 p148

- 5 CD3 8 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in 4a. Copy the stress.

What would you /wʊdʒə/ like to dō?

I'd /aɪd/ like to gō to the beach.

- 6 a Work in pairs, A and B. Take turns to ask your partner what he/she would like to do.

Would you like to go to the cinema?

I'd rather watch a DVD.

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 A go to the cinema? | B watch a DVD |
| 2 B go for a walk? | A ✓ |
| 3 A play tennis? | B go swimming |
| 4 B watch TV? | A go out |
| 5 A go shopping? | B ✓ |
| 6 B go out for a meal? | A go out for a drink |

- b Take turns to make and respond to three more suggestions.

- 7 a Choose a place near where you are now for a day out. Think of three reasons why you want to go there.

- b Work in groups of three. Decide what to do for your day out. Talk about these things.

which place when to go what you can do there
where and when to meet how to get there

Where would you like to go?

I'd like to go to ...

I'd rather go to ...

- c Tell the class about your group's day out.

QUICK REVIEW Comparatives Write eight adjectives. Work in pairs. Take turns to say your adjectives. Your partner says a sentence using the comparative form: **A Tall. B My sister is taller than me.**

1 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.

- 1 Do you live in a city or in the country?
- 2 Do you like where you live? Why?/Why not?
- 3 Would you like to move house? If yes, where to? Why?

2 Work in the same groups. Which of these sentences do you agree with? Give reasons if possible.

- 1 People have an easier life in the country.
- 2 It's more difficult to find jobs in the country.
- 3 It's cheaper to live in the country than the city.
- 4 Public transport is better in the city.
- 5 Life in the city is more interesting.
- 6 The city is more dangerous for young people.

3 a Work in pairs. Look at the photos of the people. Who agrees with the sentences in **2**, do you think – Neil or Barry?

b Read the article and check your answers.

4 a Read the article again and answer the questions.

- 1 When did the Price family decide to move house?
- 2 Why does Neil want to move to the country?
- 3 How often does Neil see his children?
- 4 Do all the Price family want to move to the country?
- 5 Was it easy for Barry to find a job in the city?
- 6 Has he got a car?
- 7 Does he sleep well, do you think?
- 8 Where does he want to live in the future?

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

The Grass Is Always Greener

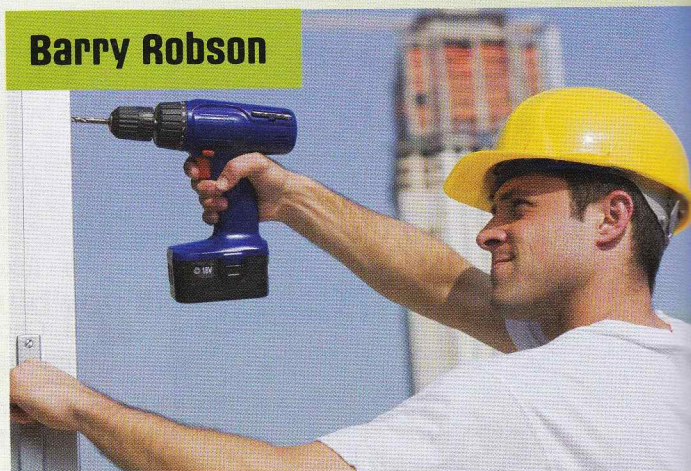
They say that the grass is always greener on the other side of the fence. But can moving house really solve your problems? We asked two people from different parts of the UK why they decided to change the way they live.

Neil Price



A month ago I got a job as a National Park manager, so we decided to sell our house in the city and move to the country. We want to have an easier life and I'd like to spend more time with my family. I really enjoy spending time with my two children, but I only see them on Sundays at the moment. I work six days a week because you need to have a lot of money to live in the city. Everything's more expensive here, especially if you have children. But the kids aren't very happy about moving. They love living in the city, but my wife and I think the country is safer for them. Of course, teenagers like going out on their own, but it can be quite dangerous around here, especially at night.

Barry Robson



I moved to the city two years ago because I needed to get a job. I stopped looking for work in the country because there weren't any jobs, but when I moved here I found one in the first week. I enjoy living in the city because there are more things to do in your free time – life in the country can be quite boring. Also public transport is a lot better in the city, so I don't need to have a car. But houses are more expensive, so generally the cost of living is about the same. Sometimes I hate living in the city – it's dirty, crowded and noisy at night – and I'd like to go back to the country one day. When I'm old, I'd love to have a little place in the mountains where it's really quiet.

HELP WITH VOCABULARY Verb patterns (like doing, would like to do, etc.)

a Look at these sentences. What verb form comes after *like*? What verb form comes after *'d like*?

*Teenagers like **going** out on their own.*

*I'd like **to go** back to the country one day.*

b Find these verbs in the article. What verb form comes after them? Write the verbs in the table.

decide want enjoy need love
stop hate would/'d love

+ verb+ing	+ infinitive with to
like	would/'d like

c Check in **VOCABULARY 9.4** p148.

6 a Fill in the gaps with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- I like reading fashion magazines. (read)
- My sister hates _____ early. (get up)
- I want _____ some new clothes. (buy)
- My son loves _____ video games. (play)
- I need _____ a new job. (find)
- I'd like _____ this evening. (go out)
- Last night Tim decided _____ his job. (leave)
- I'd love _____ to Australia. (go)
- My parents enjoy _____ new places. (visit)
- I stopped _____ three years ago. (smoke)

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

7 a Fill in the gaps with the correct form of these verbs.

live watch be go to travel buy

- I'd like to live in the USA.
- I like _____ by train.
- I like _____ the cinema.
- I'd like _____ a new computer.
- I like _____ football on TV.
- I'd like _____ famous!

b Make questions with *you* from the sentences in **7a**. Then write two more questions, one with *like* and one with *would like*.

Would you like to live in the USA?

c Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Give reasons if possible.

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

Silent letters

1 a **CD3** **9** In some words we don't pronounce every letter. Listen to these words. Notice the silent letters in brackets ().

lis(t)en cam(e)ra dau(gh)ter su(i)tcase
int(e)resting si(gh)tseeing (k)now
gran(d)father choc(o)late fru(i)t

b Listen again and practise.

2 a Put brackets () round the silent letters in these words.

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1 (w)rite | 7 sandwich |
| 2 island | 8 hour |
| 3 friend | 9 bread |
| 4 vegetables | 10 different |
| 5 building | 11 white |
| 6 two | 12 half |

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

c **CD3** **10** Listen and practise the words.

3 a **CD3** **11** Listen and write the words. Be careful of the silent letters!

1 wrote

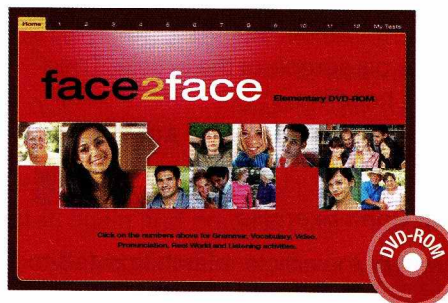
b Work in pairs. Compare your spelling. Put brackets () round the silent letter in each word.

c Check your spelling in Audio Script **CD3** **11** p163.

continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 9 and Progress Portfolio 9** p123
- **Language Summary 9** p147
- **9A-D Workbook** p45
- **Self-study DVD-ROM 9** with Review Video



Reading and Writing

- **Portfolio 9** Places to go Workbook p80
- **Reading** tourist information
- **Writing** describing places: paragraphs (3); phrases with and without *the*

QUICK REVIEW: Verb patterns Work in pairs. Take turns to say something that you: love doing, would like to do tomorrow, enjoy doing at the weekend, need to do soon, hate doing, would love to do in the future. Continue the conversations if possible.

Vocabulary and Speaking Verb phrases

- 1 a** Work in pairs. Match the verbs in A to the words/phrases in B. Check new words/phrases in **VOCABULARY 10.1** p149.

A	B
get	the windows/the car
spend	fit/stressed
carry	time/money
wash	the shopping/the bags
take	a bath/a shower
have	a bus/a train
do	the lift/the escalator
get on/off	the housework/some exercise

- b** Work in pairs. Take turns to test your partner.

fit

get fit

- 2 a** Write the name of one person you know who:

- walks to work
- watches TV a lot
- does a lot of sport
- gets stressed easily

- b** Work in pairs. Tell your partner about the people in **2a**. Ask follow-up questions.

Reading and Speaking

- 3 a** Before you read, check these words with your teacher.

a member a survey a calorie a mile healthy

- b** Read the first paragraph of the article. Then choose the best headline.

- **Cheaper Gym Membership For All**
- **Get Fit For Free**
- **City People Don't Exercise**

- c** Read the rest of the article. Match tips 1–8 to pictures a–h.

- d** Work in groups. Discuss these questions.

- 1 Which do you think is the best tip? Why?
- 2 Do you do any of these things now? If so, which ones?
- 3 Which would you like to do in the future?

Everyone wants to look good and get fit, so many of us go to a gym. In the UK there are over 6,000 gyms and 7 million gym members. That's a lot of exercise – or is it? A typical gym member spends £372 a year, but people spend £200 million every year on gym membership they don't use. So here are our top tips for getting fit without spending any money.

- 1** Walk up and down stairs. Don't take lifts. If there aren't any stairs and there's an escalator, walk up or down the escalator. Walking up an escalator uses ten calories, walking down uses four.

- 2** Get off the bus one stop earlier. You use about 80 calories for every mile you walk.

- 3** Walk around when you are talking on the phone. You use six calories **every minute**.

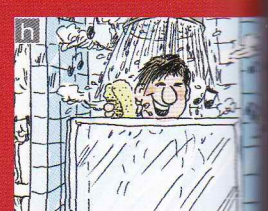
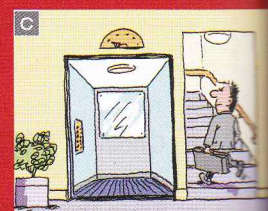
- 4** Wash the car. Don't use a car wash. Washing the car for 30 minutes uses 100 calories.

- 5** Do the housework faster than normal. You use four extra calories every minute.

- 6** Don't drive to the supermarket once a week. Walk to the shops three times a week and carry your shopping home. This can use 100 calories every mile.

- 7** Don't have a bath, have a shower instead. It saves water and you use one more calorie every three minutes.

- 8** Go for a run **twice a week**. You can use 150–200 calories a mile – and it's a lot cheaper than a gym!



HELP WITH GRAMMAR Imperatives

4 We often use imperatives to give strong advice. Look at these sentences and answer the questions.

Walk up and down stairs. Don't take lifts.

- 1 Is the positive imperative the same as the infinitive?
- 2 How do we make the negative imperative?

GRAMMAR 10.1 p150

5 a Write five more tips on how to stay fit and healthy.

Don't watch TV every night. Eat a lot of fruit.

b Work in groups. Compare sentences and choose your top five tips. Then tell the class what they are.

HELP WITH VOCABULARY

Frequency expressions

6 Look at the frequency expressions in bold in the article. Then fill in the gaps.

once	a day		
	a	every	day
three times	a month		week
four times	a year		month
			year

TIP • We use *How often ... ?* to ask about frequency:

A **How often** do you go to the gym? B **Twice a week.**

VOCABULARY 10.2 p149

7 a Underline all the frequency expressions in the article. Then compare answers in pairs.

b Work in the same pairs. Ask your partner how often he/she does these things.

- 1 go for a walk?
- 2 go swimming?
- 3 have a holiday?
- 4 get very stressed?
- 5 eat vegetables?
- 6 eat fish?

How often do you go for a walk?

Oh, about once a week.

Listening

8 a CD3 12 Look at the photo. Mrs Lee is at the doctor's. Listen to their conversation. Is she fit and healthy? Why?/Why not?

b Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 How much does Mrs Lee weigh? **Seventy kilos.**
- 2 How often does she walk to school with the children?
- 3 When did she start going to the gym?
- 4 How often does she go to the gym?
- 5 What does she usually eat?
- 6 What advice did the doctor give her?



HELP WITH GRAMMAR should/shouldn't

9 We use *should* and *shouldn't* to give advice. Look at these sentences and choose the correct words in the rules.

You should do some exercise **three times a week.**

You shouldn't eat so many pizzas and biscuits.

- We use *should* to say something is a *good/bad* thing to do.
- We use *shouldn't* to say something is a *good/bad* thing to do.
- After *should* and *shouldn't* we use the *infinitive/infinitive with to*.

GRAMMAR 10.2 p150

10 a The doctor gave Mrs Lee some more advice. Fill in the gaps with *should* or *shouldn't*.

- 1 You _____ go swimming every week.
- 2 You _____ eat big meals in the evening.
- 3 You _____ eat more salads.
- 4 You _____ drive to work every day.
- 5 You _____ walk to work twice a week.
- 6 You _____ sit and watch TV every evening.

b CD3 13 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Then listen again and practise. Copy the stress.

You should go swimming every week.

Get ready ... Get it right!

11 Work in groups of three. Student A p108. Student B p113. Student C p114.

QUICK REVIEW *should/shouldn't; clothes* Write all the clothes you know. Work in pairs and compare lists. What clothes do you think people should and shouldn't wear when they go to: a wedding, a job interview, a birthday party?

Vocabulary and Speaking

Appearance

- 1 a** Look at photos A–D for one minute. Remember the people and their clothes!
- b** Work in pairs. Close your book. What are the people wearing?
- 2 a** Work in new pairs. Which of these words/phrases do you know? Check new words in **VOCABULARY 10.3** p149.

A

young middle-aged old
tall short
thin slim fat overweight
beautiful good-looking attractive
white black Asian
bald

B

blue/brown/green eyes
long/short hair
dark/fair/blonde/grey hair
a beard a moustache

b Which group of words do we use with *have got*? Which do we use with *be*?

- 3 a** Write a description of one person in photos A–D. Don't write his/her name.
- b** Work in pairs. Read your partner's description. Who is it? Is the description correct?

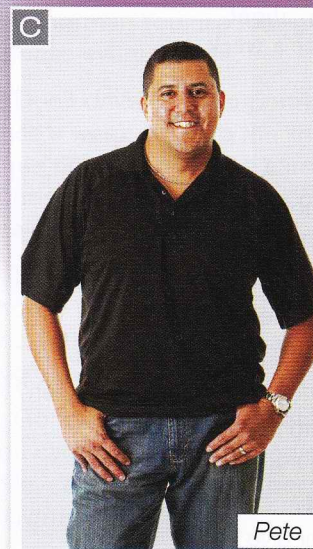
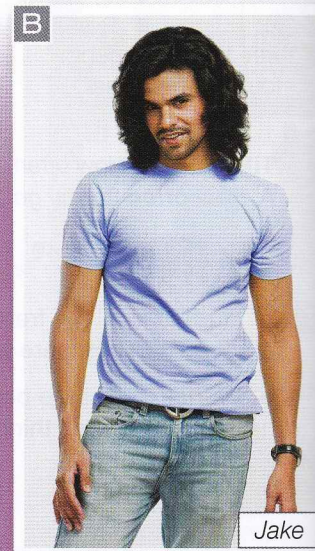
Listening

- 4 a** **CD3** **14** Leo and Tina want someone to advertise *Break*, a new chocolate bar. Listen and put the people they talk about in order.
- b** Listen again. How do Leo and Tina describe each person? Make notes.
- c** Work in pairs. Compare your answers. Who do Leo and Tina choose for the *Break* poster, do you think? Why?
- d** **CD3** **15** Listen to the end of the conversation. Who did they choose? Why?

Vocabulary and Speaking

Character

- 5 a** Tick the sentences that are true for you.
- I work very hard.
 - I don't like working.
 - I like doing things to help other people.
 - I make people laugh a lot.
 - I usually think about myself, not other people.
 - I'm friendly and I like meeting new people.
 - When I promise to do something, I always do it.
 - It's difficult for me to talk to new people.
 - I like giving people money and presents.
- b** Work in pairs. Compare your answers. How many are the same?



- 6 a Match these adjectives to the sentences in 5a. Check in VOCABULARY 10.4 p149.

hard-working 1 generous kind funny
selfish outgoing lazy reliable shy

- b Work in groups. Use the adjectives in 6a to describe members of your family.

Listening and Speaking

- 7 CD3 16 Listen to Leo and Tina three weeks later. Match 1–3 to a–c. Who is Leo's new girlfriend?

- 1 What's she like?
 - 2 What does she like doing?
 - 3 What does she look like?
- a She's tall and slim, and she's got long dark hair.
 - b She likes clubbing and going to restaurants.
 - c She's friendly and outgoing. And she's very beautiful.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Questions with like

- 8 Complete the rules with questions 1–3 in 7.
- We use _____ to ask for a general description. The answer can include character and physical appearance.
 - We use _____ to ask about physical appearance only.
 - We use _____ to ask what people enjoy doing in their free time.

TIP • *How is he/she?* asks about health, not personality:
A *How's your mum?* B *She's fine, thanks.*

GRAMMAR 10.3 p150

HELP WITH LISTENING Sentence stress (3)

- 9 a CD3 17 Listen and notice the stressed words.
- What's she like?*
What does she like doing?
What does she look like?
- b Look at Audio Script CD3 16 p163. Listen again and follow the stress.

- 10 a Write the questions for these answers.

- 1 She's tall, attractive and friendly. *What's she like?*
- 2 She's quite short and has got dark hair.
- 3 He's selfish and lazy, but really good-looking!
- 4 She likes swimming and cycling.
- 5 He's not very tall and he's bald.
- 6 They're both quite shy.

- b CD3 18 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise. Copy the stress.

Get ready ... Get it right!

- 11 Write the names of three friends on a piece of paper. Think how you can describe their character, appearance and the things they enjoy doing. Don't write this information.
- 12 a Work in pairs and swap papers. Take turns to ask and answer the questions in 7 about your partner's friends.
- b Choose one of your partner's friends that you would like to meet. Tell the class why you chose that person.



QUICK REVIEW Describing people's appearance and character
Think of two famous people. Make notes on how to describe them.
You can talk about their appearance, character, job, age, nationality,
etc. Work in pairs. Take turns to describe the people, but don't say
their names. Guess the people your partner describes.



What's the matter?

1 Match the sentences to the people A–H.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 I've got a stomach ache. B | 5 I've got a cough. |
| 2 I feel sick. | 6 My back hurts. |
| 3 I've got a headache. | 7 I've got a temperature. |
| 4 I've got a cold. | 8 I've got a sore throat. |

2 a Work in pairs. Write these words in the table.
Check in **VOCABULARY 10.5** p149.

a stomach ache ill back terrible a headache
arm toothache sick a sore throat foot
a cold better a cough leg a temperature

I've got ... *a stomach ache*

I feel ... *ill*

my ... hurts *back*

TIP • We can say *I've got a stomach ache/toothache* or *I've got stomach ache/toothache*, but not *I've got headache*.

b **CD3** 19 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise.

Get well soon

3 a Work in pairs. Match these words/phrases to the verbs. Check in **VOCABULARY 10.6** p150.

to bed at home the day off some painkillers
home to the doctor some cough medicine
in bed to the dentist some antibiotics

go	stay	take
<i>to bed</i>	<i>at home</i>	<i>the day off</i>

b Work in groups. Look at the words/phrases in 2a and 3a again. What do you usually do when you're ill?

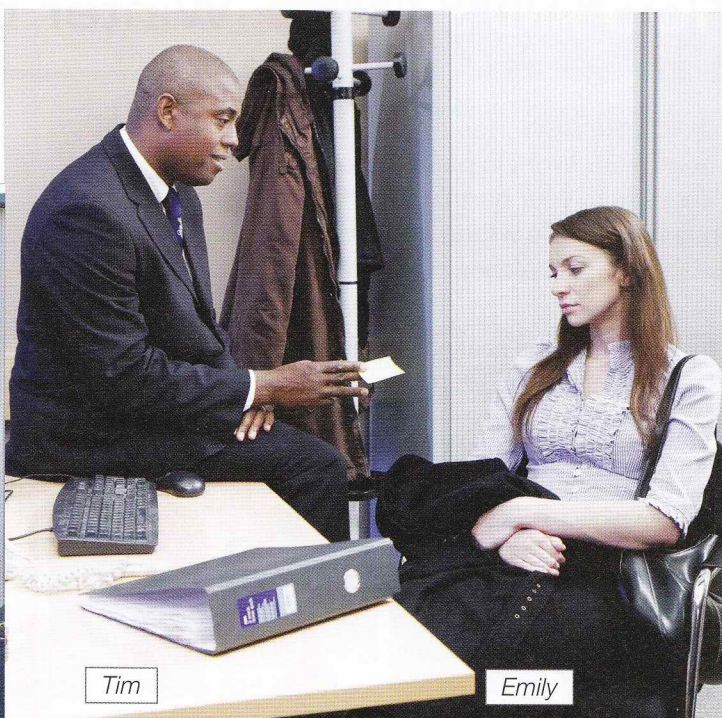
When I've got a cold I usually stay in bed.

I usually take some aspirin.



Rachel

Simon



Tim

Emily

4 a VIDEO 10 CD3 20 Watch or listen to two conversations. What's wrong with Simon and Emily? Are they going to the meeting?

b Watch or listen again. Who says these things – Rachel (R) or Tim (T)?

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 Are you OK? <i>R</i> | 6 You shouldn't go to work today. |
| 2 Are you alright? | 7 You should go to the doctor. |
| 3 What's the matter? | 8 I hope you get better soon. |
| 4 What's wrong? | 9 Take the day off. |
| 5 Why don't you go home? | 10 Get well soon. |

REAL WORLD

Talking about health

5 Cover **4b**. Then fill in the gaps in the table with the words in the boxes.

OK matter
alright What's

better Get
dear hope

off should
shouldn't don't

asking about
someone's health

Are you ¹OK?
Are you ²_____
³____ wrong?
What's the ⁴_____?

expressing
sympathy

Oh, ⁵_____.
I ⁶_____ you get
⁷_____ soon.
⁸_____ well soon.

giving advice

Why ⁹_____ you go
home?
You ¹⁰_____ go to
work today.
You ¹¹_____ go to
the doctor.
Take the day ¹²_____.

HELP WITH LISTENING

Being sympathetic

6 a CD3 21 Listen to this question said twice. The first is not sympathetic. The second is sympathetic.

What's the matter?

b CD3 22 Which person sounds sympathetic, a or b?

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|
| 1 Are you OK? | <input checked="" type="radio"/> a | b |
| 2 Are you alright? | a | b |
| 3 What's wrong? | a | b |
| 4 What's the matter? | a | b |
| 5 Oh, dear. | a | b |
| 6 I hope you get better soon. | a | b |

7 CD3 23 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **5**. Copy the intonation.

Are you OK?

8 Work in pairs. Look at Audio and Video Script **VIDEO 10 CD3 20** p163. Choose conversation 1 or 2. Underline all the phrases from **5**. Then practise the conversation with your partner. Change roles and practise the conversation again.

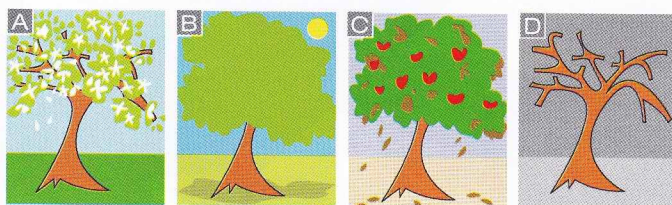
9 a Choose an illness from **2a**. Have conversations with other students. Take turns to be sympathetic and give advice.

b Tell the class about your illness. What advice did students give you? Was it good advice, do you think?

QUICK REVIEW Health problems and treatment Work in pairs. Take turns to mime illnesses to your partner. Don't speak! He/She guesses what's wrong and gives advice.

- 1 a** Match the seasons to pictures A–D. Then check in **VOCABULARY 10.7** p150.

winter summer autumn spring



- b** Work in pairs. Which is your favourite season? Why?

- 2 a** Before you read, check these words with your teacher.

depressed a scientist a box bright light sad

- b** Read the first paragraph of the article. Why does the woman have a light on her desk?

- c** Read the whole article. Answer these questions.

- 1 What happened to Herb Kern in winter?
- 2 What did some scientists make for him?
- 3 Why do people get SAD?
- 4 Do men get SAD more than women?
- 5 How do you know if people have SAD?
- 6 In which countries is SAD common?
- 7 How long should you use a light box every day?

- d** Work in pairs. Compare answers.

- 3** Work in the same pairs. Discuss these questions.

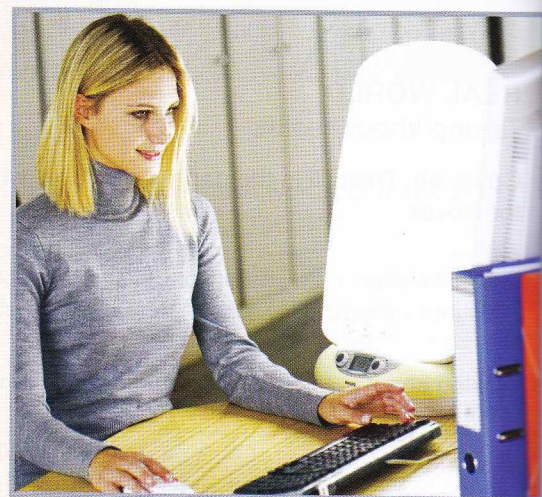
- 1 Do you feel depressed in winter? Why?/Why not?
- 2 What activities do you usually do in winter?

If you're SAD, see the light!

A lot of people feel depressed in winter – but there's an easy way to fight those winter blues.

In the 1970s, an American engineer called Herb Kern noticed that in spring and summer he was happy and had a lot of energy, but every winter he became depressed and lazy. He thought it was because there wasn't much daylight in the winter and asked some scientists to make a 'light box'. He put the box on his desk and after a few days he felt a lot better. In 1982 the scientists gave his illness a name – Seasonal Affective Disorder, or SAD.

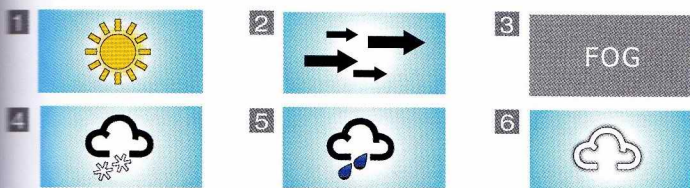
People get SAD in autumn and winter, when the days are shorter and there is less daylight. It is more common in women than in men. People with SAD usually sleep a lot and feel tired all the time. They also eat a lot of sweet food and feel depressed. In the UK about 5%



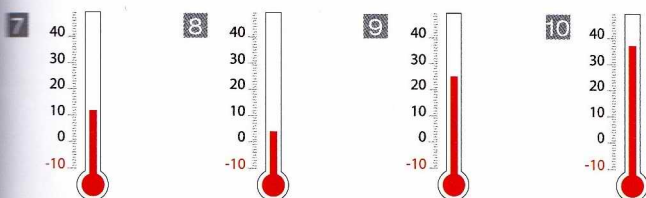
of people have SAD and it is common in other countries like the USA, Sweden and Ireland. The best treatment for this illness is bright light. People with SAD should use a light box for half an hour a day. Or you can go on holiday to a sunny country, of course!

- 4 a Work in pairs. Match these weather words to the pictures. Then check in **VOCABULARY 10.8** p150.

foggy 3 raining snowy
windy cloudy sunny



12° (degrees) 7 hot warm cold



- b What's the weather like today?

- 5 Work in pairs. Student A p108. Student B p113.

HELP WITH VOCABULARY Word building

- 6 a Look at the table. Fill in the gaps. How do we make adjectives from nouns? How do we make nouns from adjectives?

noun	adjective	adjective	noun
sun	<i>sunny</i>	ill	<i>illness</i>
	windy		happiness
cloud		sad	
fog		fit	

- b Check in **VOCABULARY 10.9** p150.

- 7 a Choose the correct words.

- It was very sun/(sunny) yesterday.
- There's a lot of cloud/cloudy today.
- It was wind/windy last weekend.
- We get a lot of fog/foggy where we live.
- I always get the same ill/illness every winter.
- I'm usually sad/sadness at the end of a holiday.
- Some of my friends are very fit/fitness.
- I think money is more important than happy/happiness.

- b Tick the sentences that are true for where you live and for you.

- c Work in pairs. Compare sentences. How many are the same?

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

The letter a

- 1 **CD3** 24 Listen and notice four ways we say the letter a. Listen again and practise.

/æ/ hat bank /eɪ/ lazy headache
/ɑ:/ bath father /ə/ ago stomach

- 2 a Work in pairs. Write these words in the table.

rabbit radio another contract
answers games elephant family
arm famous island dance

/æ/ hat *rabbit*

/ɑ:/ bath

/eɪ/ lazy

/ə/ ago

- b **CD3** 25 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

- 3 a **CD3** 26 Listen and practise these sentences.

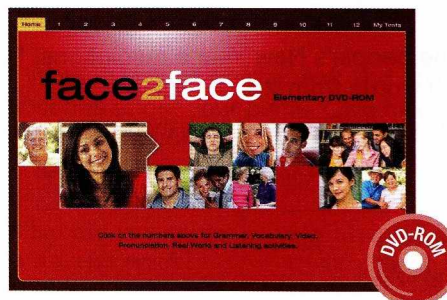
- I often have my laptop with me when I travel by taxi.
- My hard-working father likes fast food and dancing.
- Take a suitcase when you go on holiday by plane.
- This is the address of the accountant's company.
- The manager of our company has fast food every day.

- b Work in pairs. Take turns to say the sentences.

continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 10 and Progress Portfolio 10** p124
- **Language Summary 10** p149
- **10A-D Workbook** p50
- **Self-study DVD-ROM 10** with Review Video



Reading and Writing

- **Portfolio 10** The advice page Workbook p82
Reading letters asking for advice
Writing pronouns and possessive adjectives;
a letter of advice

QUICK REVIEW The weather Work in pairs. Write all the weather words you know. Then use words on your list to describe the weather in your town or city: today, yesterday, last weekend, in December, in June.

Speaking and Vocabulary

New Year's resolutions

1 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

- How do people in your country celebrate New Year?
- Where were you last New Year's Eve? What did you do?
- Do people in your country make New Year's resolutions? If so, what kind of resolutions?

2 a Look at New Year's resolutions 1–8. Then match these words/phrases to the verbs in bold. Check in

VOCABULARY 11.1 p151.

fit weight smoking house less
fun more exercise chocolate cake

- get** a new job/ fit
- work** hard/ _____
- lose** three kilos/ _____
- have** a holiday/ _____
- do** a computer course/ _____
- stop** working at weekends/ _____
- move** to another country/ _____
- not eat** sweet things/ _____

b Work in pairs. Take turns to test your partner.

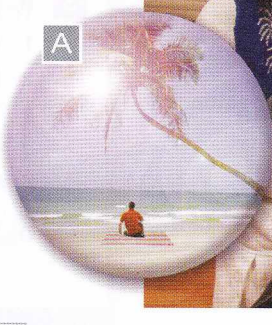
Listening and Speaking

3 **CD3** 27 Look at the photo of a New Year's Eve party. Listen to two conversations. Match the people to their New Year's resolutions A–E.

4 a Look at the people's New Year's resolutions. Fill in the gaps with words from **2a**.

- I'm going to work less and have more fun.
- I'm going to have a _____ this year.
- I'm going to _____ to Australia.
- I'm going to do a _____.
- We're going to get _____.
- Val's going to stop _____.
- David's going to _____ weight.
- I'm going to do more _____.
- I'm not going to eat _____ things any more.

b **CD3** 27 Listen again and check.



HELP WITH GRAMMAR

be going to (1): positive and negative

5 a Look at the sentences in **4a**. Then choose the correct words in the rules.

- These sentences talk about the *past/present/future*.
- The people decided to do these things *before/when* they said them.
- We use *be going to* + infinitive for *future plans/ things we do every day*.

b Look at the sentences in the table. Then write sentences 7, 8 and 9 from **4a** in the table.

subject	<i>be</i> (+ not)	<i>going to</i>	infinitive	
We	're	going to	get	fit.
Val	's	going to	stop	smoking.

c Check in **GRAMMAR 11.1** p152.



- 6** **CD3** **28** **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the sentences in **4a**. Copy the stress.

I'm going to /gəʊɪŋtə/ work less and have more fun.

- 7** **a** Fill in the gaps with the correct form of *be going to* and the verb in brackets.

- 1 I 'm going to look for a new job. (look for)
- 2 He _____ working at weekends. (stop)
- 3 They _____ to the gym. (go)
- 4 I _____ any cigarettes. (not/buy)
- 5 She _____ her house. (sell)
- 6 We _____ every weekend. (not/eat out)
- 7 He _____ a new computer. (buy)
- 8 She _____ in the UK. (not/stay)

b Work in pairs. Match the sentences to the people at the party.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

be going to (1): *Wh-* questions

- 8** **a** Look at the questions in the table. Notice the word order.

question word	be	subject	going to	infinitive	
What	are	you	going to	do	next year?
Where	's	she	going to	live?	

- b** Write questions 1 and 2 in the table.

- 1 Where's he going to study?
- 2 When are they going to start getting fit?

c Check in **GRAMMAR 11.2** p152.

- 9** **a** Make questions with *you* and *be going to*.

- 1 What / do after class?
What are you going to do after class?
- 2 How / get home today?
- 3 What / do next weekend?
- 4 What / have for dinner tonight?
- 5 Where / have lunch tomorrow?
- 6 When / do your English homework?

b **CD3** **29** **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the questions in **9a**. Copy the weak forms.

What are you /əjə/ going to /tə/ do after class?

c Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in **9a**.

Get ready ... Get it right!

- 10** What are you going to do in the future? Write notes about your plans for: next week, next month, next year. Use the phrases in **2a** or your own ideas.

next week – have lunch with my sister

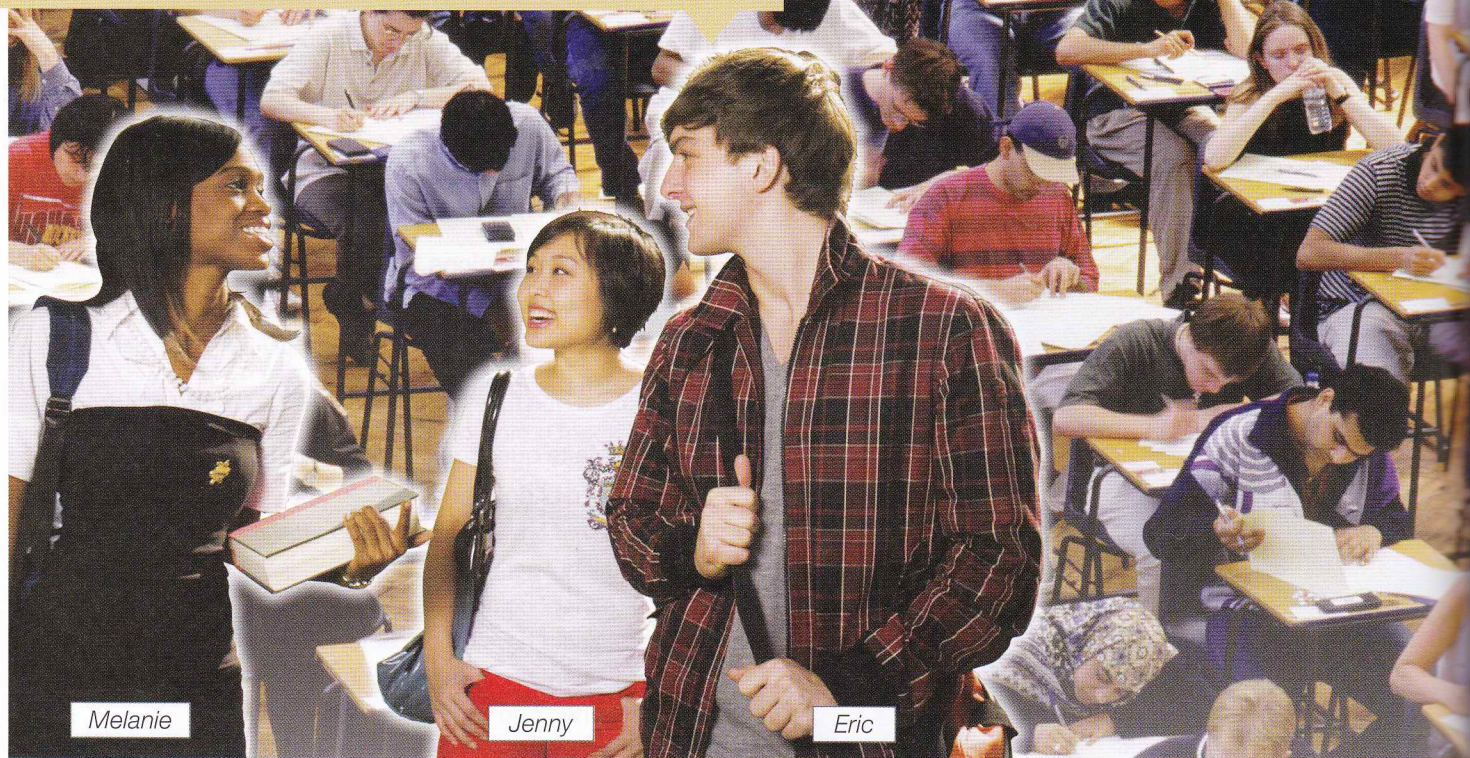
- 11** **a** Work in groups of four. Ask and answer questions about your plans. Give more information if possible. Are any of your plans the same?

What are you going to do next week?

On Monday I'm going to have lunch with a friend.

b Tell the class about people with the same plans as you.

QUICK REVIEW *be going to* Work in pairs. Take turns to say three things you're going to do tomorrow. Ask follow-up questions if possible. Are you going to do the same things?



Melanie

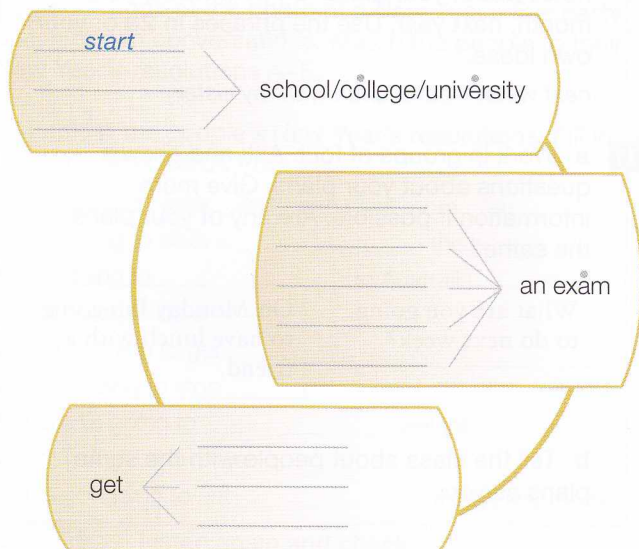
Jenny

Eric

Vocabulary and Speaking Studying

- 1** Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps with these words/phrases. Then check in **VOCABULARY 11.2** p151.

start revise for take go to some qualifications
do pass fail a degree leave a job



- 2** Work in the same pairs. Discuss these questions.

- Which things in **1** do people usually celebrate?
- What was the last exam you took? Was it difficult?
- Did you celebrate when you finished? If so, what did you do?

Listening and Speaking

- 3 a** **CD3** **30** Listen to Eric, Jenny and Melanie talking after their final university exam. Tick the things they talk about.

the exam a party a film a drink a club
a phone call a concert a meal a job

- b** Listen again. Tick the true sentences. Correct the false ones.

difficult

- The exam was easy.
- Eric couldn't answer the last three questions.
- There's a big party at Caroline's house this evening.
- Eric wants to go home and sleep.
- He's going to meet some friends this evening.
- Jenny's going to phone her sister.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR *be going to or might*

- 4 a Look at these sentences. Then choose the correct words in the rules.

I'm going to meet some friends in town at seven.

I might go to the party or I might go out for a meal.

- We use *might/be going to* to say a future plan is decided.
- We use *might/be going to* to say something in the future is possible, but not decided.
- After *might* we use the *infinitive/infinitive with to*.

TIP • *Might* is the same for all subjects (*I, you, he, etc.*).

- b Check in **GRAMMAR 11.3** p152.

- 5 **CD3** 31 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise sentences with *might*.

I might go to the party.

- 6 Look at Eric, Jenny and Melanie's plans for the summer. Fill in the gaps with the correct form of *be going to* or *might* and the verb in brackets. (✓) = decided, (✓X) = not decided.

- (✓) Eric *'s going to have* a holiday. (have)
- (✓) Jenny _____ a Spanish course. (do)
- (✓X) Melanie _____ camping. (go)
- (✓) Eric _____ for his father. (not work)
- (✓) Jenny and Sam _____ married. (get)
- (✓X) Melanie _____ friends in Scotland. (visit)
- (✓X) Eric _____ in a restaurant. (work)

- 7 a Write three things you might do and three things you're going to do next month.

- b Work in pairs. Take turns to say your sentences. Are any the same?

Listening and Speaking

HELP WITH LISTENING *going to*

- 8 a **CD3** 32 Listen and notice the two different ways we say *going to*. Both are correct.

- How are you going to /gəʊɪŋtə/ celebrate tonight?
- I'm going to /gənə/ meet some friends in town.

- b **CD3** 33 Listen to these sentences. Which way do these people say *going to*, a or b?

- | | /gəʊɪŋtə/ | /gənə/ |
|---------------------------------------|-----------|--------|
| 1 Are you going to look for a job? | a | (b) |
| 2 My cousin's going to teach English. | a | b |
| 3 I'm going to do a business course. | a | b |
| 4 How are you going to pay for it? | a | b |
| 5 My parents are going to help me. | a | b |
| 6 Are you going to sell your car? | a | b |

- 9 **CD3** 34 Listen to Eric, Jenny and Melanie talk about their plans. Answer the questions.

- Is Jenny going to look for a job? *Yes, she is.*
- Are Jenny and Sam going to Italy next month?
- Is Melanie going to teach English?
- Is Eric going to do a computer course?
- Are Eric's parents going to help him pay for the course?
- Is Eric going to sell his car?

HELP WITH GRAMMAR *be going to* (2): *yes/no* questions and short answers

- 10 a Fill in the gaps with the correct part of the verb *be*.

- A Are you going to look for a job?
B Yes, I _____. /No, I _____ not.
- A _____ he going to sell his car?
B Yes, he _____. /No, he _____.
- A _____ his parents going to help him?
B Yes, they _____. /No, they _____.

TIP • We can also answer *yes/no* questions with (Yes,) *I might*: A *Are you going to buy it?* B *I might.*

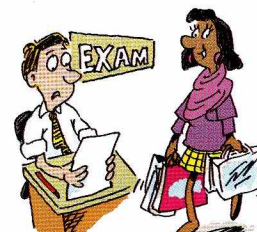
- b Check in **GRAMMAR 11.4** p152.

- 11 Work in pairs. Student A p108. Student B p113.

Get ready ... Get it right!

- 12 Look at these possible plans. Make *yes/no* questions with *you* and the correct form of *be going to*.

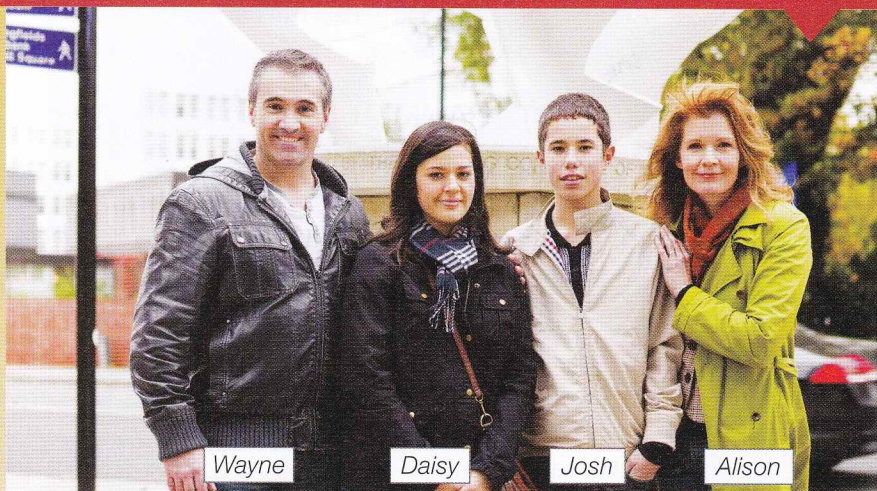
- meet a friend after class
Are you going to meet a friend after class?
- work next weekend
- study tonight
- stay at home tomorrow
- go away next weekend
- have a holiday in the next three months
- watch a DVD this evening
- buy some clothes next weekend
- take an exam this year



- 13 a Ask other students your questions. Try to find one person who is going to do each thing. Then ask two follow-up questions.

- b Tell the class about another student's plans.

QUICK REVIEW *Places in a town/city* Write a list of places in a town or city (a museum, etc.). Work in pairs and compare lists. How many of these places are near where you are now?



Hill Place

- Three bedrooms (two double, one single). Sleeps 5.
- Kitchen and small garden.
- Living room with TV and DVD player.
- Shower room and separate toilet.
- 5 min walk to town centre.
- 10 min walk to beach.
- From £430 per week.

Benton House

- Three double bedrooms. Sleeps 6.
- Large kitchen and garden.
- Comfortable living room with DVD player and cable TV.
- Bathroom with separate shower.
- 10 min walk to town centre.
- Only 1 min from beach.
- From £480 per week.

Seaton Holiday Homes 01834 654389

Choosing a holiday home

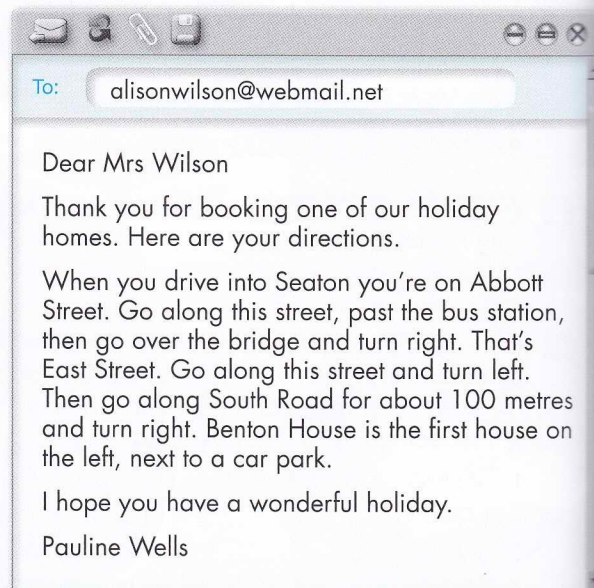
- a** Look at the photo of the Wilson family. Then read the adverts for holiday homes in Seaton. Which place is better for the family's holiday, do you think? Why?
b Work in pairs. Say which holiday home you chose and why.
- CD3** ▶ **35** Listen to Alison phone Seaton Holiday Homes. When is the family's holiday? Which holiday home does she choose? Why?

It's on the left

- Work in pairs. Which of these phrases do you know? Then do the exercise in **REAL WORLD 11.1** ▶ **p152**.

turn right turn left go over the bridge go past the pub
go along this road/street it's on the/your left
it's on the/your right it's opposite it's next to

- a** Read the email and look at the map. Draw the route from *You are here* to the holiday home.
b Work in pairs. Check your route. Which number is the holiday home on the map?



- CD3** ▶ **36** Look at the map and listen. Start at *You are here*. Which four places do the directions take you to?
- a** **VIDEO** ▶ **11** **CD3** ▶ **37** The Wilson family are at the bus station. Close your book. Watch or listen to their conversations. Which places do they want to go to?
b Watch or listen again. Find the places on the map. What numbers are they?



REAL WORLD

Asking for and giving directions

7 a Fill in the gaps with these words.

Excuse Where's get there

ASKING FOR DIRECTIONS

Excuse me. Is _____ (a newsagent's) near here?

Excuse me. _____ (the post office)?

Excuse me. How do I/we _____ to (the market)?

one there over miss
turn on past next It's

GIVING DIRECTIONS

There's one in (Berry Street).

Go along this road/street and _____ right/left.

Go _____ the pub.

Go _____ the bridge.

(The newsagent's) is _____ the/your right/left.

_____ opposite (the supermarket).

It's _____ to (the café).

It's over _____.

You can't _____ it.

b Check in **REAL WORLD 11.2** p152.

8 **CD3 38 PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the sentences in **7a**.

Excuse me. Is there a newsagent's near here?

9 a Fill in the gaps in these conversations with words from **7a**. They all start at *You are here* on the map.

1 A Excuse me. Is ¹ there a police station ² _____ here?

B Yes, there's one ³ _____ Berry Street. Go ⁴ _____ this road and ⁵ _____ right. The police station is ⁶ _____ your left, next ⁷ _____ the baker's.

A Thank you very much.

2 A Excuse me. How do I ⁸ _____ to the Park Hotel?

B ⁹ _____ along this road and go ¹⁰ _____ the bridge.

Go ¹¹ _____ the market and turn left. That's Russell Street. The Park Hotel is on ¹² _____ left. You ¹³ _____ miss it.

A Thanks a lot.

3 A Excuse me. ¹⁴ _____ the museum?

B It's ¹⁵ _____ there, opposite the station.

A Oh yes, I can see it. Thanks.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers. Find the places on the map. What numbers are they?

c Work in the same pairs. Practise the conversations.

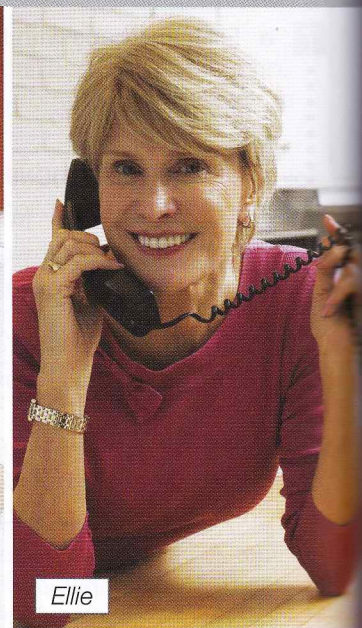
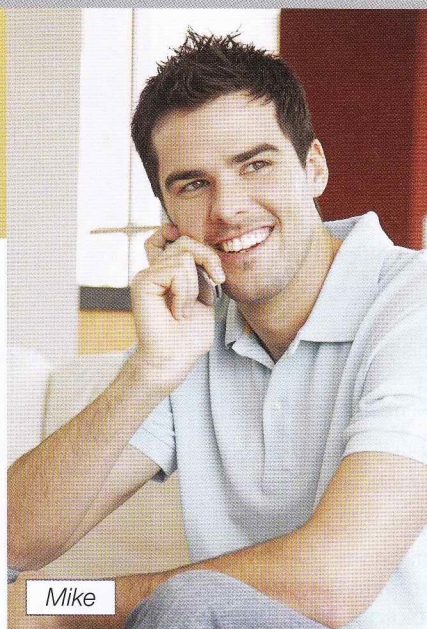
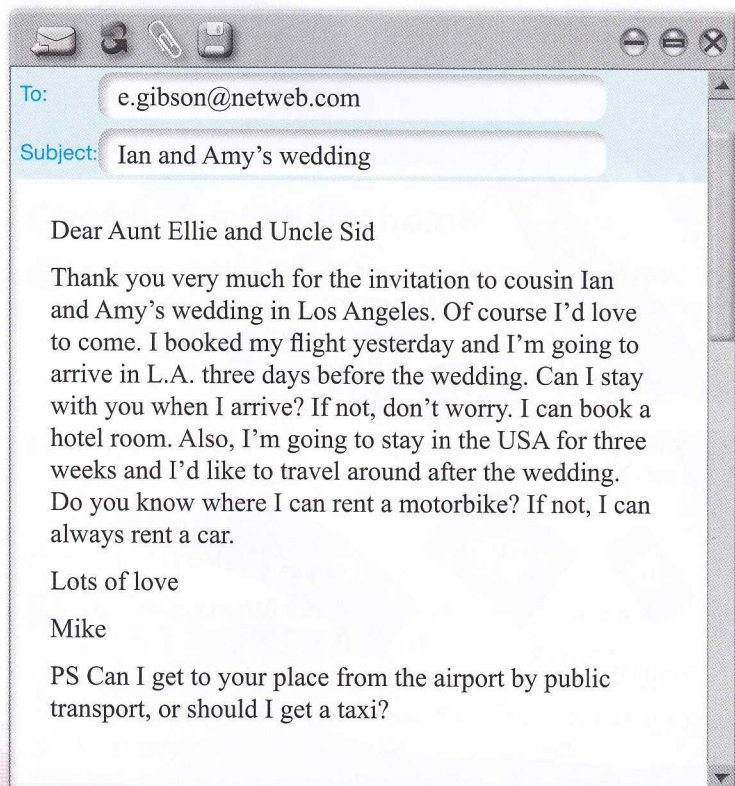
10 Work in pairs. Student A p105. Student B p110.



QUICK REVIEW **Directions** Work in pairs. Write five places near where you are now that you both know. Take turns to give directions to two of the places. Your partner guesses the place. Start with: *Go out of the building and ...*

- 1 a** Work on your own. Answer these questions.
- 1 When did you last go to a wedding or a party?
 - 2 Where was it?
 - 3 Whose wedding or party was it?
 - 4 How many people were there?
 - 5 What did you wear?
 - 6 What did/didn't you like about the wedding or party?
 - 7 What else do you remember about it?
- b** Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in **1a**. Give more information if possible.

- 2 a** Read the email. Answer the questions.
- 1 Whose wedding is Mike going to?
 - 2 When did he book his flight?
 - 3 When is he going to arrive in L.A.?
 - 4 Where does he want to stay?
 - 5 What is he going to do after the wedding?
- b** Work in pairs. Compare answers.



- 3 a** **CD3 39** Mike is phoning his aunt in L.A. Put these things in the order they talk about them.

a hotel a motorbike the wedding 1
Mike's email a restaurant

- b** Listen again. Tick the true sentences. Correct the false ones.

- 1 Aunt Ellie replied to Mike's email.
- 2 Mike can stay at Ellie and Sid's house.
- 3 Ellie is going to book a hotel room for him.
- 4 Mike is going to rent a motorbike.
- 5 He's going to get a taxi from the airport.
- 6 He's going to have dinner at Ellie and Sid's favourite restaurant.

HELP WITH LISTENING Linking: review

- Remember: we usually link words that end in a consonant sound with words that begin with a vowel sound.

- 4 a** Work in pairs. Look at the beginning of the conversation and mark the linking.
- MIKE Hello, Aunt Ellie. This is Mike. I'm calling from England about Ian and Amy's wedding. Is this a good time to call?
- ELLIE Mike! Yes, of course it is.
- b** Look at Audio Script **CD3 39** p165. Check your answers.
- c** **CD3 39** Listen again to the whole conversation and follow the linking.

HELP WITH VOCABULARY Collocations

- 5 a Read the email again. Find two words or phrases that go with these verbs. Write them in the table.

book	stay	rent	get
	with (you)		

- b Choose the correct verbs in these words/phrases.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 stay/rent a flat | 6 rent/book a house |
| 2 book/rent a train ticket | 7 get/stay in a hotel |
| 3 get/book married | 8 rent/get divorced |
| 4 get/rent home | 9 stay/get at home |
| 5 book/stay a seat on a train | 10 book/rent a table in a restaurant |

- c Check in VOCABULARY 11.3 p151.

- 6 Work in pairs. Take turns to test your partner on the collocations in 5a and 5b.

a flight

book a flight

- 7 a Fill in the gaps with the correct form of *book*, *stay*, *rent* or *get*.

- When did you last stay with a friend?
- Do you _____ flights or train tickets online?
- How do you _____ home after class?
- Where was the last hotel you _____ in?
- Do you _____ your house or flat?
- When did you last _____ a table at a restaurant?
- What's a good age to _____ married?
- Do you usually _____ a car when you go on holiday?

- b Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Ask follow-up questions if possible.

- 8 Two friends from another country want to visit you. Write them an email and answer their questions.

- Where can we stay?
- How can we get there from the airport?
- How can we travel around?
- What can we see and do?

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

/u/ and /u:/

- 1 CD3 40 Listen to these sounds and words. Listen again and practise.

/u/ look put would /u:/ room do fruit

- 2 a Work in pairs. Look at the vowels in bold. Write the words in the table.

book	blue	woman	June	should
wood	suit	food	sugar	boots
choose	good-looking			

/u/ look book

/u:/ room blue

- b CD3 41 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

- 3 a Work in pairs. Look at the vowels in bold. Which vowel sound is different?

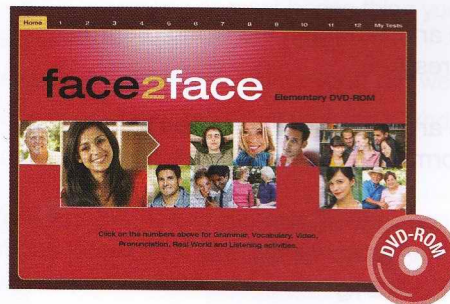
- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 lose knew <u>look</u> | 4 took school scooter |
| 2 juice shoes wolf | 5 soup good wouldn't |
| 3 too bookshop could | 6 cook butcher's move |

- b CD3 42 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- Extra Practice 11 and Progress Portfolio 11 p125
- Language Summary 11 p151
- 11A-D Workbook p55
- Self-study DVD-ROM 11 with Review Video



Reading and Writing

- Portfolio 11 A town by the sea Workbook p84
- Reading a tourist brochure; an email
- Writing common mistakes; a description of a town or city

Wedding
Invitation

QUICK REVIEW Collocations Write words or phrases that go with these verbs: *book, stay, rent, get* (*book a flight, stay in a hotel, etc.*). Work in pairs. Compare lists. Take turns to make sentences with the phrases on your lists: *I stayed in a hotel last month.*

Vocabulary Big and small numbers

- 1 Work in pairs. Match the numbers to the words. Then check in **VOCABULARY 12.1** p153.

0.2 1,000,000 2.45 850,000
32,470 127 2,300 50,000,000

- 1 nought point two 0.2
- 2 two point four five
- 3 a hundred and twenty-seven
- 4 two thousand, three hundred
- 5 thirty-two thousand, four hundred and seventy
- 6 eight hundred and fifty thousand
- 7 a million
- 8 fifty million

- 2 a **CD3** 43 Listen and write the numbers.
b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

Reading

- 3 a Before you read, check these words with your teacher.

a bowl a chilli heavy
cost a haircut a litre

- b Read the article. Match the world records 1–5 to pictures A–E.

- 4 a Read the article again. Fill in gaps a–h with this information.

73 hours £8,000 \$399
152 hours 35.6 kg 5,350 litres
one second 182 kg

- b **CD3** 44 Listen to the article. Check your answers.
c Which record is the most interesting or surprising, do you think?

RECORD BREAKERS

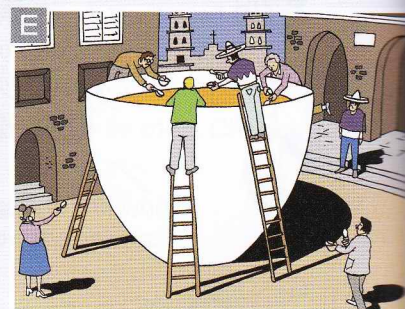
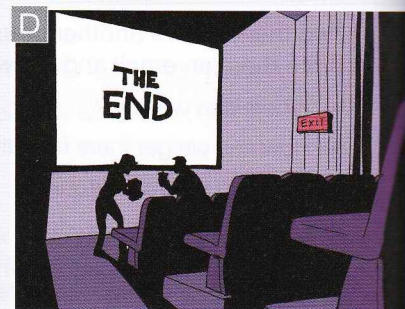
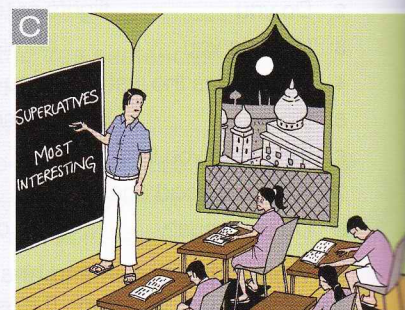
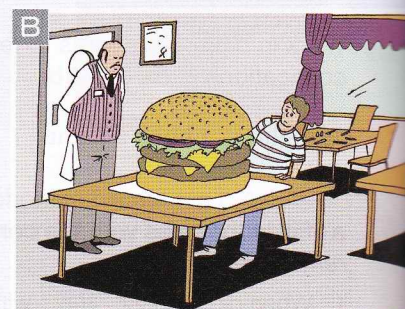
1 Sanjay Kumar Sinha taught the **longest** lesson in the world at a school in Bandra, India, in 2005. The lesson was a _____ and 37 minutes long and it was all about English grammar.

2 In July 2007, a group of people from the city of Durango, Mexico, made ^b _____ of soup – the **biggest** bowl of soup in the world. It had ^c _____ of chillis in it, so it was probably the world's **hottest** soup too!

3 The **heaviest** burger you can buy is from the Mallie's Sports Grill and Bar in Michigan, USA. It weighs ^d _____ and it costs ^e _____. It might not be the **best** burger in the world, but if you'd like to try one, you should call the restaurant 24 hours before you want to eat.

4 The **shortest** film in the world is *Colin*, made by Marc Price, and it's just ^f _____ long. And the longest film is *Cinématon*, directed by Gérard Courant. It's ^g _____ long – so it might also be the world's **most boring** film.

5 Beverley Lateo, from Italy, had the world's **most expensive** haircut in October 2007. She paid ^h _____ for a visit to Stuart Philips Hair Salon in London – but she got a free lunch!



HELP WITH GRAMMAR Superlatives

- 5 a** Look at the superlatives in bold in the article. Write them in the table.

adjective	comparative	superlative
long	longer	<i>longest</i>
short	shorter	
big	bigger	
hot	hotter	
heavy	heavier	
boring	more boring	
expensive	more expensive	
good	better	
bad	worse	<i>worst</i>

- b** Choose the correct words in these rules.

- We use *comparatives/superlatives* to compare two things.
- We use *comparatives/superlatives* to compare three or more things.

- c** Work in pairs. Look at the table in **5a** again. What are the rules for making superlatives? (Think about spelling and the number of syllables.)

- d** Check in **GRAMMAR 12.1** p153 and read the **TIPS**.

- 6 a** Write the superlatives.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------|
| 1 rich <i>richest</i> | 6 slow |
| 2 difficult | 7 safe |
| 3 thin | 8 beautiful |
| 4 happy | 9 bad |
| 5 dirty | 10 careful |

- b** **CD3** 45 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the superlatives in **6a**. Notice how we say -est.

richest /ˈrɪtʃɪst/

Reading, Listening and Speaking

- 7 a** Work in groups. Read the World Quiz. Fill in the gaps with the superlative form of the adjectives in brackets. Then do the quiz.

- b** **CD3** 46 Listen to Abby and Len do the quiz. Check your answers. How many answers did your group get right?

- c** Listen again. What do these numbers refer to?

- | | |
|-----------|----------------|
| a \$6,000 | d 74.2 million |
| b 57.8° | e 6,650 km |
| c 8,000 | f 17,000 |

- d** Work in pairs. Compare answers.

The World Quiz

- What's the world's _____ city? (expensive)
a Moscow b Tokyo c Milan
- Which of these countries is the _____ (hot)
a Libya b USA c Australia
- Which of these cities is the _____ ? (old)
a Athens b Rome c Damascus
- Which of these countries is the _____ with tourists? (popular)
a Spain b China c France
- Which is the _____ river in the world? (long)
a The Nile b The Amazon c The Yangtze
- Which is the world's _____ country? (crowded)
a Bangladesh b Singapore c Monaco

HELP WITH LISTENING Sentence stress: review

- 8 a** Work in pairs. Look at the beginning of Abby and Len's conversation. Decide which words are stressed.

ABBY Do you like doing quizzes, Len?

LEN Yes, I love them. Ask me the first question.

ABBY OK. What's the world's most expensive city?

- b** Look at Audio Script **CD3** 46 p165. Check your answers.

- c** **CD3** 46 Listen to the whole conversation again. Follow the sentence stress.

Get ready ... Get it right!

- 9** Write six of these things on a piece of paper. Write one or two words, not complete sentences. Don't write the answers in order.

- the name of the oldest or youngest person in your family
- your oldest or most important possession
- the most interesting or most boring thing you did last weekend
- the latest or earliest you went to bed last week
- the best or worst present you got last birthday
- the best or worst film you saw last year

- 10 a** Work in pairs. Swap papers. Take turns to ask questions about your partner's words. Ask follow-up questions.

Is Clara the youngest person in your family?

Yes, she is. She's two years old.

- b** Tell the class two things about your partner.

QUICK REVIEW Comparatives and superlatives Write ten adjectives. Work in pairs. Say the adjectives. Your partner says the comparative and superlative: **A good B better, best.**

Speaking, Listening and Reading

- 1** Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
- Do you know anyone who is self-employed? What do they do?
 - What are the good and bad things about being self-employed?
 - Would you like to be self-employed? Why?/Why not?

- 2 a** **CD3** 47 Listen and read about three friends, Steve, Lucy and Guy. Do they like being self-employed?

b Tick the true sentences. Correct the false ones.

- Steve went to Mexico two weeks ago.
- He was in the Caribbean two months ago.
- He wants to go to Australia on holiday.
- Guy and Lucy were self-employed three years ago.
- The Prime Minister came to their restaurant last month.
- Guy and Lucy are going to Peru next year.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Present Perfect: positive and negative

- 3 a** Look at sentences 1 and 2. Then answer questions a and b.

- I've **been** to about forty countries. (Present Perfect)
- Two weeks ago I **went** to Mexico. (Past Simple)

- In sentence 1, do we know when Steve went to these countries?
- In sentence 2, do we know when he went to Mexico?

b Complete these rules with *Present Perfect (PP)* or *Past Simple (PS)*.

- We use the _____ to talk about experiences in life until now. We don't say when they happened.
- We use the _____ if we say when something happened.

c Look at the examples of the Present Perfect in **blue** in the texts. Then complete the table with 've, 's, *haven't* and *hasn't*.

POSITIVE (+)

I/you/we/they + _____ + past participle

he/she/it + _____ + past participle

NEGATIVE (-)

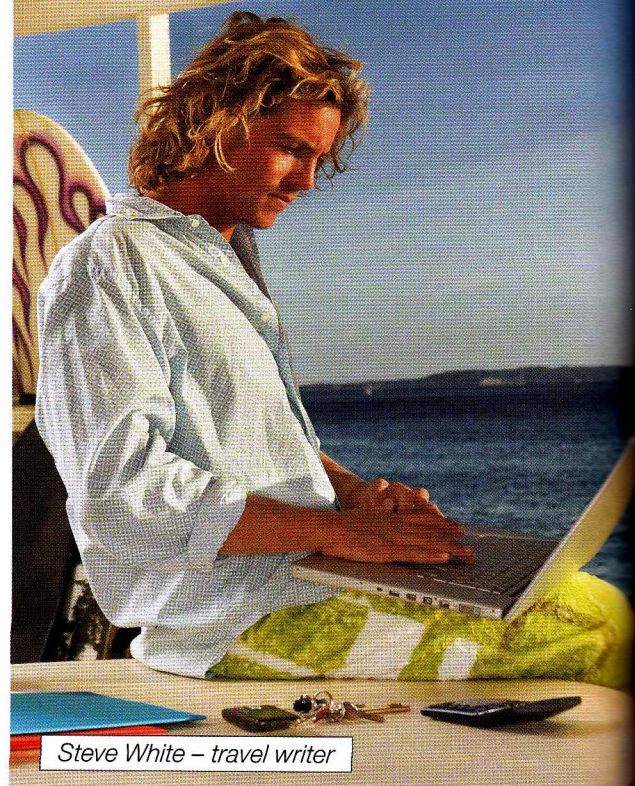
I/you/we/they + _____ + past participle

he/she/it + _____ + past participle

TIP • We can say *I haven't ...* or *I've never ...* :
I've never been to Australia.

d Check in **GRAMMAR 12.2** p154. Read the rules for making past participles and the **TIPS**.

I love being a self-employed travel writer. I've **been** to about forty countries and I've **stayed** in some of the world's best hotels. I've **written** travel articles about lots of amazing places. Two weeks ago I went to Mexico and last month I spent five days in the Caribbean. But I **haven't been** to Australia. That's one country I'd love to go to – but for a holiday, not for work!



Steve White – travel writer

Vocabulary and Speaking

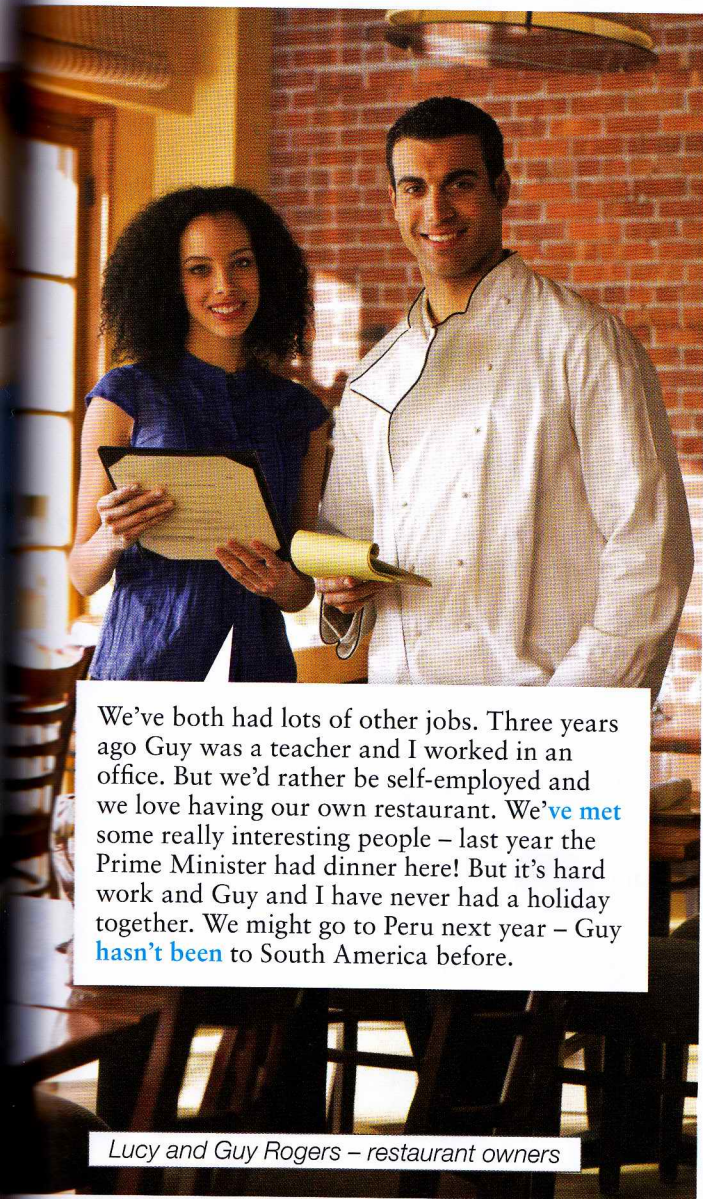
Past participles

- 4 a** What are the past participles of these verbs? Check irregular past participles in the Irregular Verb List, p167. Which five verbs are regular?

- | | | |
|------------------|--------|----------|
| 1 be been | 5 lose | 9 study |
| 2 cook | 6 meet | 10 visit |
| 3 go | 7 see | 11 work |
| 4 have | 8 stay | 12 write |

b **CD3** 48 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the infinitive, Past Simple and past participle of the verbs in **4a**.

be, was/were, been



We've both had lots of other jobs. Three years ago Guy was a teacher and I worked in an office. But we'd rather be self-employed and we love having our own restaurant. We've met some really interesting people – last year the Prime Minister had dinner here! But it's hard work and Guy and I have never had a holiday together. We might go to Peru next year – Guy hasn't been to South America before.

Lucy and Guy Rogers – restaurant owners

- 5 a** Look at these phrases and write six sentences about your experiences. The sentences can be positive or negative.

- work in a restaurant
I've worked in a restaurant.
- go to Canada
I haven't been to Canada.
- meet someone from Ireland
- see a Japanese film
- stay in a five-star hotel
- cook a meal for someone's birthday
- work in an office
- study another foreign language
- lose something important

- b** Work in groups. Tell other students your sentences. How many are the same?

Listening and Speaking

- 6 a** **CD3** **49** Listen to a conversation between Steve and Lucy. Where are they? What do they talk about?

- b** Listen again. Choose the correct words.

- 1 Steve has been to *Peru/Brazil*.
- 2 He went there about *two/three* years ago.
- 3 Lucy went to Australia *six/eight* years ago.
- 4 She travelled around Australia by *bus/car*.
- 5 Guy *has/hasn't* been to Australia.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Have you ever ... ? questions and short answers

- 7 a** Fill in the gaps in these questions and short answers with *have*, *haven't*, *did* or *didn't*.

A _____ you ever been to Peru?

B Yes, I _____. / No, I _____.

A _____ you have a good time?

B Yes, I _____. / No, I _____.

- b** Complete the rule with *Present Perfect (PP)* or *Past Simple (PS)*.

- We use the _____ to ask about people's experiences. If the answer is yes, we use the _____ to ask for (or give) more information.

TIP • *ever* + Present Perfect = any time in your life until now. We often use *ever* in questions.

- c** Check in **GRAMMAR 12.3** p154.

- 8** **CD3** **50** **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise. Copy the stress.

Have you ever been to Peru?

Yes, I have.

- 9 a** Fill in the gaps. Put the verbs in brackets in the Present Perfect or Past Simple and complete the short answers.

1 A ¹ *Have* you ever *been* to France? (go)

B Yes, I ² _____. I ³ _____ there six years ago. (go)

A Where ⁴ _____ you _____? (stay)

B I ⁵ _____ a flat near Bordeaux. (rent)

2 A ⁶ _____ you ever _____ a diary? (write)

B Yes, I ⁷ _____. I ⁸ _____ one when I was a teenager. (write)

A ⁹ _____ you _____ in it every day? (write)

B No, I ¹⁰ _____. Only when I ¹¹ _____ on holiday. (be)

- b** Work in pairs. Compare answers. Then practise the conversations.

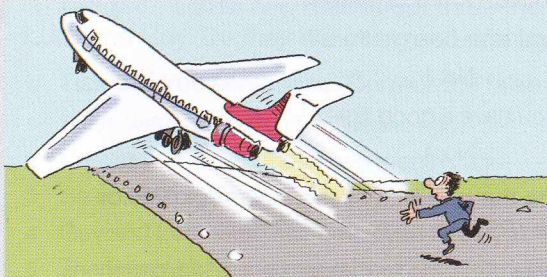
Get ready ... Get it right!

- 10** Work in two groups. Group A p108. Group B p113.

QUICK REVIEW Past participles Write ten verbs. Work in pairs. Say the verbs to your partner. He/She says the Past Simple and the past participle: **A see B saw, seen.**

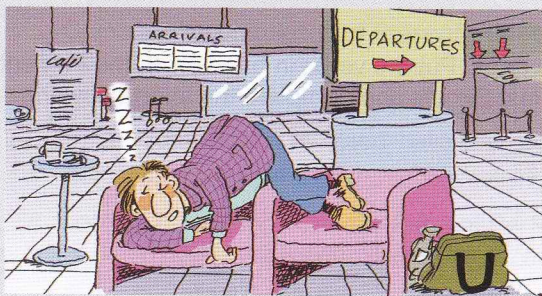
Travel experiences

- 1 a** Fill in gaps 1–8 with the past participles of the verb in brackets. Check new past participles in the Irregular Verb List, p167.



Have you ever ...

- 1 **missed** a plane? (miss)
- 2 _____ to another country by boat or ferry? (travel)
- 3 _____ on a long train or coach journey? (go)
- 4 _____ in a very small plane? (fly)
- 5 _____ at an airport or a station? (sleep)
- 6 _____ a really terrible journey? (have)
- 7 _____ ill on a plane? (be)
- 8 _____ or _____ in another country? (drive, cycle)



- b** Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Ask follow-up questions if possible.

Have you ever missed a plane?

Yes, I have.

When was that?

About two years ago.

- c** Tell the class about your partner's travel experiences.

At the airport

- 2** Tick the words/phrases you know. Then do the exercise in **VOCABULARY 12.2 p153.**


a passport a boarding pass hand luggage a ticket
pack your bags passengers a flight number
a gate a check-in desk a bag drop
a window/a middle/an aisle seat on time delayed

- 3 a VIDEO 12.1 CD3 51** Daisy is at the airport. Watch or listen and answer the questions.

- 1 How many bags does she check in? 3 Has she got an aisle seat?
- 2 What is her seat number? 4 Is the flight delayed?

- b** Work in pairs. Look at the conversation. What does the man at the bag drop say to her?

Hello, can I have your passport, please?

MAN Hello. Can I have your , please?


DAISY 1 _____

MAN How many  are you checking in?

DAISY 2 _____

MAN Did you  yourself?


DAISY 3 _____

MAN And have you got any  ?

DAISY 4 _____

MAN OK. Here's your . You're in seat 16F.

DAISY 5 _____

MAN No, an .

DAISY Oh, OK. 6 _____

MAN **gate 12**

DAISY 7 _____

MAN Yes, it is. Boarding is at . Enjoy your .

DAISY 8 _____

MAN Bye.

- 4 a** Fill in gaps 1–8 in **3b** with these sentences.

Yes. Here you are. One. Is that a window seat?
Yes, this bag. Which gate is it? Yes, I did.
Is the flight on time? Thanks. Bye.

- b VIDEO 12.1 CD3 51** Watch or listen again. Check your answers.

5 a Work in pairs. Practise the conversation in **3b**. Take turns to be Daisy.

b Work in new pairs. Practise the conversation again. When you're Daisy, close your book.

REAL WORLD Saying goodbye

6 Fill in the gaps with these words/phrases.

Don't forget Have you got See you Have a

1 _____	everything? your passport? your boarding pass?	Yes, I have, thanks.
2 _____	nice holiday. good time. good trip.	Thanks, I will.
3 _____ to send me/us	a text. an email. a postcard.	Yes, of course.
4 _____	in a month. soon. on the next course.	Yes, see you.

REAL WORLD 12.2 p154

7 **CD3** **52** **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the sentences in **6**.

Have you got everything?

8 a **VIDEO** **12.2** **CD3** **53** Watch or listen to Daisy saying goodbye to her parents at the airport. Answer the questions.

- Which country is she going to?
- Who is she going to send a postcard to?
- How long is she going away for?

b Watch or listen again. Tick the sentences in **6** that you hear.

9 a Work in pairs. Choose one of these situations and write a conversation.

- Two friends are saying goodbye at the airport. One of them is going on holiday to Morocco for two weeks.
- Two students are saying goodbye at the end of their course. Their new course starts in three months' time.

b Work in the same pairs. Practise your conversation until you can remember it.

c Work with another pair. Take turns to role-play your conversations.



HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION Vowel sounds: review

- 1 a** Work in pairs. Look at the letters in bold. Match the words in boxes A, B and C with the same vowel sound.

A	B	C
/i:/ cheese	great	wash
/əʊ/ boat	bank	foot
/ɒ/ cough	note	hand
/ʌ/ sunny	leave	lose
/ə/ sofa	live	train
/ɔ:/ shorts	money	week
/ɜ:/ shirt	often	snow
/ɪ/ build	heard	four
/æ/ hat	second	thin
/eɪ/ hate	fruit	young
/ʊ/ look	would	word
/u:/ room	call	woman

- b** **CD3** 54 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

- c** Work in groups of three: student A, student B, student C. Take turns to say words with the same vowel sounds in **1a**.

cheese

leave

week

- 2 a** Write one word with the same vowel sound as each group of three words in **1a**.

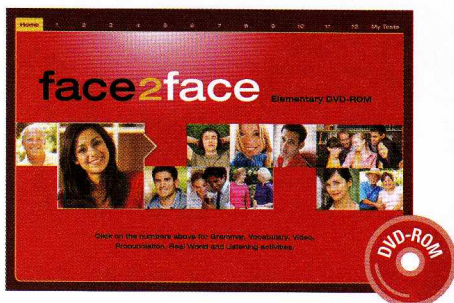
cheese, leave, week **seat**

- b** Work in pairs. Compare words. Are your partner's words correct?

continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 12 and Progress Portfolio 12** p126
- **Language Summary 12** p153
- **12A-C Workbook** p60
- **Self-study DVD-ROM 12** with Review Video



Reading and Writing

- **Portfolio 12** At the airport Workbook p86
Reading airport signs; a postcard
Writing useful phrases for a postcard

Work in groups of four. Read the rules. Then play the game!

Rules

You need: One counter for each student; one dice for each group.

How to play: Put your counters on **START**. Take turns to throw the dice, move your counter and read the instructions on the square. The first student to get to **FINISH** is the winner.

Grammar and Vocabulary

squares: The first student to land on a Grammar or Vocabulary square answers question 1. If the other students think your answer is correct, you can stay on the square. If the answer is wrong, move back to the last square you were on. The second student to land on the same square answers question 2. If a third or fourth student lands on the same square, he/she can stay on the square without answering a question.

Talk about squares: If you land on a Talk about square, talk about the topic for 20 seconds. Another student can check the time. If you can't talk for 20 seconds, move back to the last square you were on. If a second or third student lands on the same square, he/she also talks about the same topic for 20 seconds.

End of Course Review

START

Make a question with *Where* for this answer.
 1 His father was born in London.
 2 My sister lives in Australia.

Say eight:
 1 jobs
 2 free time activities

Say the positive and negative short answers.
 1 Were they at home last night?
 2 Did he call you?

MOVE FORWARD THREE SQUARES

Say the comparatives.
 1 happy, bad, beautiful, short
 2 good, boring, easy, thin

What are the opposites?
 1 happy, excited, safe, awful
 2 ill, slim, easy, different

Talk about your last holiday.

What is the Past Simple of these verbs?
 1 become, find, meet, lose
 2 leave, buy, write, put

How do we say these numbers and prices?
 1 376, 9,500, 0.8, £750,000
 2 \$250,000, 9.1, 524, 77,777

Make a sentence with these words.
 1 Sunday / tennis / on / usually / I / play .
 2 out / every / We / Thursday / eat .

Talk about what you did last weekend.

Correct this question.
 1 What you going to do tomorrow?
 2 Where you did go last month?

MOVE BACK TWO SQUARES

Make a sentence with these words.
 1 go to / usually / I / bed / eleven / at .
 2 We / our / ago / a year / bought / house

MOVE FORWARD TWO SQUARES

Make questions with these words.
 1 you / last / What / weekend / do / did ?
 2 do / tonight / What / you / going to / are ?

Say the nationalities.
 1 Turkey, Italy, Spain, the UK
 2 China, France, the USA, Poland

Talk about two people in your family.

Say eight:
 1 types of food
 2 things you can wear

Say six:
 1 types of shop
 2 weather words

Talk about your daily routine in the week.

Choose the correct word.
 1 There are *some/any* chairs in the kitchen.
 2 Is there *a/any* furniture?

What are the opposites?
 1 quiet, friendly, clean, fast
 2 interesting, tall, lucky, poor

MOVE FORWARD THREE SQUARES

Say the superlatives.
 1 rich, hungry, excited, bad
 2 good, long, dirty, crowded

MOVE BACK THREE SQUARES

Talk about your house or flat.

Do we use these words with the Present Simple or Present Continuous?
 1 sometimes, at the moment, now
 2 never, often, today

Talk about what you do in your free time.

Talk about things you can or can't do.

Say eight:
 1 things in a house
 2 family members

Make a sentence with these words.
 1 going to / I'm / today / not / meet / him .
 2 tonight / We / go to / might / the cinema .

Talk about what you're going to do next weekend.

Make adverbs from these adjectives:
 1 fluent, bad, beautiful, fast
 2 good, hard, happy, careful

FINISH

Make this sentence negative.
 1 We went to the theatre last night.
 2 They've got a new car.

Say eight:
 1 animals
 2 types of transport

MOVE BACK THREE SQUARES

Do we use *a* or *some* with these words?
 1 meat, banana, tomato, cheese
 2 milk, rice, sandwich, sausage

Pair and Group Work: Student/Group A


1A 11 p9

a Work with your partner. Ask questions about cards A, B and C. Write the names and countries. Don't look at your partner's cards.

Card A. What's her name?

How do you spell that?

Where's she from?






A NAME _____  COUNTRY _____	D NAME <u>Zhou Jingwei</u>  COUNTRY <u>China</u>
B NAME _____  COUNTRY _____	E NAME <u>Luciana Riquelme</u>  COUNTRY <u>Argentina</u>
C NAME _____  COUNTRY _____	F NAME <u>Mikhail Vasilyev</u>  COUNTRY <u>Russia</u>

b Answer your partner's questions about cards D, E and F.

c Check your answers and spelling with your partner.

2A 13 p17

a Work on your own. Guess the things your partner has got, but don't talk to him/her. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (X) in the *your guess* column.



	your guess	your partner's answer
		
		
		
		
		

b Look at the pictures. Write questions with *you*.
Have you got a mobile?

c Work with your partner. Ask and answer your questions. Put a tick or a cross in the *your partner's answer* column. Are your guesses correct?

d Work with a new partner. Tell him/her five things your first partner has/hasn't got.

1B 12 p11

a Work on your own. Look at the hotel conference list. Write *yes/no* questions to check the information in **pink** on the list (Mr =  Mrs = ).

Is Mrs Ramos a teacher?

b Work with your partner. Take turns to ask your questions from **a**. Tick (✓) the correct information. Change the wrong information.

Is Mrs Ramos a teacher?

No, she isn't. She's a doctor.

c Compare answers with another student A.

Mrs Ramos isn't a teacher. She's a doctor.

Conference Guest List

name	job	nationality	room
Mrs Ramos	a teacher	Mexican	216
Mr Demir	a manager	Turkish	112
Mr Wong	an actor	Japanese	204
Mrs Ivanova	a teacher	Russian	307
Mr Fisher	a mechanic	Australian	209
Mrs Fisher	a lawyer		
Mr Bruni	a builder	Italian	108
Mrs Bruni	a musician		

2C 13 p21

a You are a customer. Choose one of these films. Buy two tickets from your partner. Fill in the times and the prices for your film. You start.

48 Hours	Time: _____ £ _____
Three Long Years	Time: _____ £ _____
Two Weeks on Sunday	Time: _____ £ _____

b You are a ticket seller. Look at the times and prices of the films at your cinema. Sell tickets to your partner. Your partner starts.

Today's films

60 Seconds 7.10

Nine Months 8.25

A Day in the Life 9.35

Adults £10.50 Children £8

c Do **a** and **b** again. Buy tickets for different films. Change the number and type of tickets you buy.

4B 9 p35

Jo is 29 and she's a lawyer. In her free time she watches TV, goes shopping and reads a lot. On Saturday evenings she usually goes to the cinema or eats out – she loves Chinese food. She doesn't like sport and she hates football. Her favourite music is rock and she also likes jazz. She likes animals but hasn't got any pets.

**11C 10** p93

a Work on your own. Find these places on the map on p93. Don't tell your partner.

the cinema (2) The Pizza Place (6) a petrol station (11)

b Work with your partner. You are at *You are here* on the map. Ask for directions to these places:

a burger restaurant, the theatre, the school.

When you find the place, check the number on the map with your partner. Don't look at your partner's map. You start.

Excuse me. Is there a burger restaurant near here?

3B 10 p27

a Work on your own. Choose the correct words in phrases 1–5.

	name	name
1 watch TV <i>every/in</i> evening		
2 do sport <i>in/on</i> Saturdays		
3 go to bed after midnight <i>in/at</i> the week		
4 go to concerts <i>in/at</i> the weekends		
5 eat out <i>at/every</i> week		

b Make questions with *you* with phrases 1–5 in **a**.

1 *Do you watch TV every evening?*

c Ask other students in the class your questions. Try to find two people who answer yes for each question. Write their names in the table.

d Tell the class about the people in your table.

Kristina and Michiko watch TV every evening.

5A 11 p41

a Work on your own. Write questions with *you* or *your* about when you were thirteen.

	you	your partner
1 / happy at school? <i>Were you happy at school?</i>		
2 Who / best friend?		
3 / good at languages?		
4 What / favourite food?		
5 What / favourite TV programme?		

b Write your answers in the *you* column.

c Work with your partner. Ask and answer your questions. Write your partner's answers in the table.

d Tell another student about you and your partner when you were thirteen.

I was happy at school when I was thirteen, but Paola wasn't.

6C 11 p53

a Work on your own. Read about the news stories. Check you understand all the words.

Big storm

Mexico
13 people died

**Man who found
1 million dollars**

under the kitchen floor
gave money to a hospital

**Tourists missing
in Africa**

Sahara desert
lost for 2 weeks
other tourists found them –
they're OK now

**Man
tries to
post m**

A woman who
mentioned about t'
on Monday m
in the sleepy v
witness said th
man was in his

b Work with your partner. Take turns to tell each other about the news stories. Use these phrases.

Did you hear/read about ... ? No, what happened?
No, where was it? Oh, that's good. Oh no, that's terrible.
Oh, dear. Are they OK? You're joking! Really?

4B 10 c p35

MARK I like Kim very much and we like a lot of the same things. We both go to the cinema a lot and we both really like animals. But she doesn't like the same music as me and she hasn't got a TV – I don't believe that! Yes, I'd like to see her again. She's very beautiful.

KIM Sorry, I don't like Mark very much. He talks about football and TV programmes all the time and I don't like watching TV. Also, we don't like the same music – and music's very important to me. I don't want a second date with him. Sorry.

7B 10 p59

a Work with a student from group A. Describe the picture. Use the phrases in bold.

There's a cat in the picture.
There's some fruit on the table.
There are nine eggs in the fridge.
There are some pizzas on the table.

b Make questions to ask a student from group B about his/her picture. Use the phrases in bold.

Is there a cat in the room?
Are there any eggs in the fridge?
How many bananas are there?
How much milk is there?

c Work with a student from group B. Don't look at your partner's picture. Ask and answer questions about the pictures. Find twelve differences.

d Work with your partner from group A. Compare answers.



8A 12 p65

a Work with a student from group A. Look at the picture. What are the people doing? What are they wearing?

Kevin's talking on the phone.

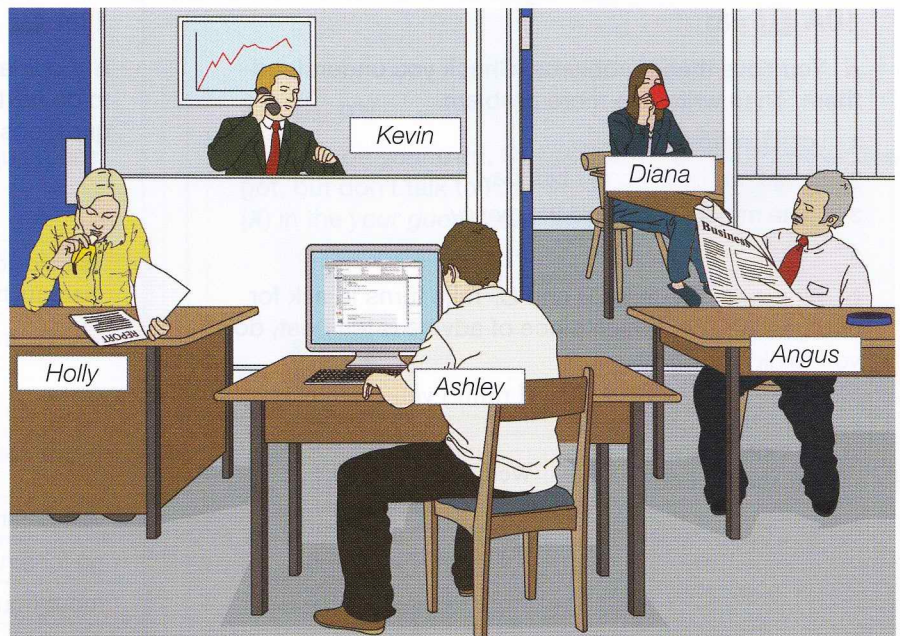
He's wearing a jacket, shirt and tie.

b Work with a student from group B. Don't look at his/her picture. Ask and answer questions. Find ten differences in the pictures.

What's Kevin doing?

What's he wearing?

c Work with a student from group A. Did you find the same differences?



8B 9 p67

a Work on your own. Write the questions (Q).

b Work with a student from group B. Look at the pictures. Take turns to ask and answer your questions. Write the answers (A). You start.

c Work with a student from group A. Compare answers.

USUALLY	TODAY	USUALLY	TODAY
<p>1 What / Colin / usually / wear ?</p> <p>Q <u>What does Colin usually wear?</u></p> <p>A _____</p>	<p>2 </p>	<p>7 </p>	<p>8 Where / Colin / work / this morning ?</p> <p>Q _____</p> <p>A _____</p>
<p>3 </p>	<p>4 How / Gabby / get / to work today ?</p> <p>Q _____</p> <p>A _____</p>	<p>9 Where / Gabby and her friends / usually / have / lunch ?</p> <p>Q _____</p> <p>A _____</p>	<p>10 </p>
<p>5 What / the children / usually / do / in the morning ?</p> <p>Q _____</p> <p>A _____</p>	<p>6 </p>	<p>11 </p>	<p>12 What / Colin / do / this afternoon ?</p> <p>Q _____</p> <p>A _____</p>

10A 11 p81

a You have these problems. Check you understand them. Then write one more problem.

- I can't sleep at night.
- I forgot my best friend's birthday.
- I hate my job, but I need the money.
-

b Work with students B and C. Take turns to ask for and give advice. Which piece of advice is the best, do you think?

I can't sleep at night.
What should I do?

(I think) you should ...

Well, you shouldn't ...






Don't ...

10D 5 p87

a Work with your partner. Ask and answer questions about the weather in these places. Fill in the gaps in the table. You start.

What's the weather like in ... today?

It's ... and it's ... degrees.

	weather	°C
Amsterdam		6
Athens		
Bangkok		31
Buenos Aires		
Chicago		0
Helsinki		
London		2
Munich		
Paris	FOG	5
Rome		
San Francisco		18
Sydney		

b Which places are: hot, warm, cold? Where's the best place to be today? Why?

11B 11 p91

a Look at what Eric, Melanie, Jenny and Sam are going to do next weekend. Take turns to ask and answer yes/no questions and fill in the gaps in the table.

✓ Yes, he is.

Is Eric going to visit his parents next weekend?

✗ No, he isn't.

✓X He might.

	Eric	Melanie	Jenny and Sam
visit parents		✓	
go for a run	✓		✗
move house		✗	
watch lots of TV	✓X		✗
go to a party		✗	
play tennis	✓		✓X
stay in bed on Sunday		✓	

b Who is going to have: a lazy weekend, a busy weekend, an active weekend?

12B 10 p99

a Work with a student from group A. Write questions with *you* in the Present Perfect and follow-up questions in the Past Simple.

1 / go / on a boat trip?

Have you ever been on a boat trip?

Where / go?

Where did you go?

2 / visit / the capital city of another country?

Which city / visit?

3 / go / to a really good party?

Whose party / be / it?

4 / meet / someone from the USA?

Where / meet them?

5 / have / a pet?

What / be / its name?

b Work with a student from group B. Ask and answer your questions. If the answer is yes, ask your follow-up question. Then ask two more questions if possible.

c Work with your partner from group A. Tell him/her about student B's life experiences.

Pair and Group Work: Student/Group B

1A 11 p9

a Work with your partner. Answer his/her questions about cards A, B and C.

A NAME <u>Natalia Grabowska</u>  COUNTRY <u>Poland</u> 	D NAME _____  COUNTRY _____ 
B NAME <u>Eduardo Acosta</u>  COUNTRY <u>Mexico</u> 	E NAME _____  COUNTRY _____ 
C NAME <u>Felicity Wheaton</u>  COUNTRY <u>the UK</u> 	F NAME _____  COUNTRY _____ 

b Ask questions about cards D, E and F. Write the names and countries. Don't look at your partner's cards.

Card D. What's his name?






How do you spell that?

Where's he from?

c Check your answers and spelling with your partner.

2A 13 p17

a Work on your own. Guess the things your partner has got, but don't talk to him/her. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (X) in the *your guess* column.

	your guess	your partner's answer
		
		
		
		
		



b Look at the pictures. Write questions with *you*.

Have you got a computer?

c Work with your partner. Ask and answer your questions. Put a tick or a cross in the *your partner's answer* column. Are your guesses correct?

d Work with a new partner. Tell him/her five things your first partner has/hasn't got.

1B 12 p11

a Work on your own. Look at the hotel conference list. Write *yes/no* questions to check the information in **pink** on the list (Mr =  Mrs = ).

Is Mr Demir a waiter?

b Work with your partner. Take turns to ask your questions from **a**. Tick (✓) the correct information. Change the wrong information.

Is Mr Demir a waiter?

No, he isn't. He's a manager.

c Compare answers with another student B.

Mr Demir isn't a waiter. He's a manager.

Conference Guest List

name	job	nationality	room
Mrs Ramos	a doctor	Spanish	216
Mr Demir	a waiter	Turkish	112
Mr Wong	a police officer	American	204
Mrs Ivanova	a waitress	Russian	317
Mr Fisher	a mechanic	British	209
Mrs Fisher	an accountant		
Mr Bruni	a builder	Italian	106
Mrs Bruni	an actress		

2C 13 p21

a You are a ticket seller. Look at the times and prices of the films at your cinema. Sell tickets to your partner. Your partner starts.

Today's films

48 Hours	7.20
Three Long Years	8.45
Two Weeks on Sunday	9.10
Adults	£9.95
Children	£7.35

b You are a customer. Choose one of these films. Buy two tickets from your partner. Fill in the times and the prices for your film. You start.

60 Seconds	Time: _____ £ _____
Nine Months	Time: _____ £ _____
A Day in the Life	Time: _____ £ _____

c Do **a** and **b** again. Buy tickets for different films. Change the number and type of tickets you buy.

3B 10 p27

a Work on your own. Choose the correct words in phrases 1–5.

	name	name
1 watch TV <i>in/on</i> the morning		
2 go shopping <i>every/in</i> Saturday		
3 go for a drink <i>at/on</i> Friday evenings		
4 go to the cinema <i>at/every</i> month		
5 work <i>at/in</i> the weekends		

b Make questions with *you* with phrases 1–5 in **a**.

1 *Do you watch TV in the morning?*

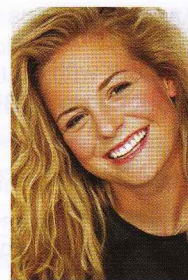
c Ask other students in the class your questions. Try to find two people who answer yes for each question. Write their names in the table.

d Tell the class about the people in your table.

Gabriela and Rudi watch TV in the morning.

4B 9 p35

Susie's 23 and she's a waitress. She really loves dance music but she doesn't like rock music. She doesn't go to restaurants very often but she loves fast food. On Saturday evenings she goes clubbing with friends or stays in and watches TV. She doesn't like watching sport on TV but she goes swimming a lot. And she has seven cats!

**11C 10** p93

a Work on your own. Find these places on the map on p93. Don't tell your partner.

The Burger Bar (4) the theatre (7) the school (12)

b Work with your partner. You are at *You are here* on the map. Ask for directions to these places: **the cinema, a pizza restaurant, a petrol station.** When you find the place, check the number on the map with your partner. Don't look at your partner's map. Your partner starts.

Excuse me. How do I get to the cinema?

5A 11 p41

a Work on your own. Write questions with *you* or *your* about when you were thirteen.

	you	your partner
1 / tall for your age? <i>Were you tall for your age?</i>		
2 Who / favourite teacher?		
3 / good at sport?		
4 Who / favourite singer?		
5 Where / thirteenth birthday party?		

b Write your answers in the *you* column.

c Work with your partner. Ask and answer your questions. Write your partner's answers in the table.

d Tell another student about you and your partner when you were thirteen.

I was tall for my age when I was thirteen, but Johann wasn't.

6C 11 p53

a Work on your own. Read about the news stories. Check you understand all the words.

3 students lost in Brazil

Amazon jungle
lost for six days
helicopter found them
they're OK now

Plane crash

in Africa
over 80 people died

Man who won the lottery

dog ate ticket
gave dog to friend

Planes at airport why the

Tuesday morning
a number of planes
and have made
to the press at
"I see no reason
said Mr Dawkins

b Work with your partner. Take turns to tell each other about the news stories. Use these phrases.

Did you hear/read about ... ? No, what happened?
No, where was it? Oh, that's good. Oh no, that's terrible.
Oh, dear. Are they OK? You're joking! Really?

4B 10 c p35

MARK Jo and I like some of the same things. We both like going to the cinema and eating Chinese food. But she talks about books and shopping *all* the time. We both like rock music, but she hates sport and I love it! No, I don't want to see her again. Sorry!

JO I *really* like Mark. He's very different from me, but that's a good thing, I think. I hate football, but he loves it. And he plays video games all the time and he never reads books. But yes, I'd like a second date with him. Definitely. He's very nice.

7B 10 p59

a Work with a student from group B. Describe the picture. Use the phrases in bold.

There's a TV in the picture.
There's some fruit on the table.
There are six eggs in the fridge.
There are some chairs in the room.

b Make questions to ask a student from group A about his/her picture. Use the phrases in bold.

Is there a TV in the room?
Are there any eggs in the fridge?
How many apples **are there**?
How much water **is there**?

c Work with a student from group A. Don't look at your partner's picture. Ask and answer questions about the pictures. Find twelve differences.

d Work with your partner from group B. Compare answers.



8A 12 p65

a Work with a student from group B. Look at the picture. What are the people doing? What are the people wearing?

Kevin's sleeping.

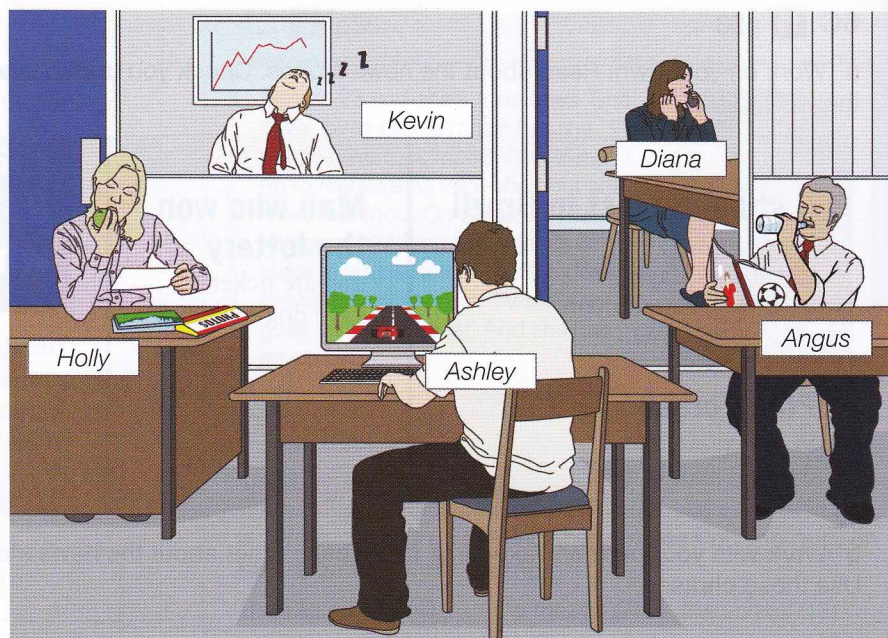
He's wearing a shirt and tie.

b Work with a student from group A. Don't look at his/her picture. Ask and answer questions. Find ten differences in the pictures.

What's Kevin doing?

What's he wearing?

c Work with your partner from group B. Did you find the same differences?



8B 9 p67

a Work on your own. Write the questions (Q).

b Work with a student from group A. Look at the pictures. Take turns to ask and answer your questions. Write the answers (A). Your partner starts.

c Work with a student from group B. Compare answers.

USUALLY	TODAY	USUALLY	TODAY
<p>1 </p>	<p>2 What / Colin / wear / today ?</p> <p>Q <i>What's Colin wearing today?</i></p> <p>A _____</p>	<p>7 Where / Colin / usually / work ?</p> <p>Q _____</p> <p>A _____</p>	<p>8 </p>
<p>3 How / Gabby / usually / get / to work ?</p> <p>Q _____</p> <p>A _____</p>	<p>4 </p>	<p>9 </p>	<p>10 Where / Gabby and her friends / have / lunch today ?</p> <p>Q _____</p> <p>A _____</p>
<p>5 </p>	<p>6 What / the children / do / this morning ?</p> <p>Q _____</p> <p>A _____</p>	<p>11 What / Colin / usually / do / in the afternoon ?</p> <p>Q _____</p> <p>A _____</p>	<p>12 </p>

10A 11 p81

a You have these problems. Check you understand them. Then write one more problem.

- 1 I want to practise my English more.
- 2 A friend bought me a present, but I hate it.
- 3 I need a holiday, but I haven't got any money.
- 4 _____

b Work with students A and C. Take turns to ask for and give advice. Which piece of advice is the best, do you think?

I want to practise my English more. What should I do?

(I think) you should ...

Well, you shouldn't ...






Don't ...

10D 5 p87

a Work with your partner. Ask and answer questions about the weather in these places. Fill in the gaps in the table. Your partner starts.

What's the weather like in ... today?

It's ... and it's ... degrees.

	weather	°C
Amsterdam		
Athens	FOG	17
Bangkok		
Buenos Aires		30
Chicago		
Helsinki		0
London		
Munich		6
Paris		
Rome		8
San Francisco		
Sydney		22

b Which places are: hot, warm, cold? Where's the best place to be today? Why?

11B 11 p91

a Look at what Eric, Melanie, Jenny and Sam are going to do next weekend. Take turns to ask and answer *yes/no* questions and fill in the gaps in the table.

✓ Yes, she is.

Is Melanie going to visit her parents next weekend?

✗ No, she isn't.

✓✗ She might.

	Eric	Melanie	Jenny and Sam
visit parents	✗		✓✗
go for a run		✗	
move house	✗		✓
watch lots of TV		✓	
go to a party	✓		✓✗
play tennis		✗	
stay in bed on Sunday	✗		✗

b Who is going to have: a lazy weekend, a busy weekend, an active weekend?

12B 10 p99

a Work with a student from group B. Write questions with *you* in the Present Perfect and follow-up questions in the Past Simple.

1 / go / on holiday to a cold country?

Have you ever been on holiday to a cold country?

Where / go?

Where did you go?

2 / learn / play a musical instrument?

What instrument / learn?

3 / go / to a very expensive restaurant?

What / eat?

4 / have / a really bad holiday?

What problems / have?

5 / cook / a meal for more than six people?

What / cook?

b Work with a student from group A. Ask and answer your questions. If the answer is yes, ask your follow-up question. Then ask two more questions if possible.

c Work with your partner from group B. Tell him/her about student A's life experiences.

Pair and Group Work: Other exercises

4B 10 c p35

MARK Susie's very nice. We both like the same things – watching TV and doing sport. Also, she has lots of cats and I really like cats. She doesn't like rock music very much, but that's OK. Yes, I'd like a second date with her. Yes, please!

SUSIE Mark? Yes, I like him. We both do a lot of sport. I like swimming and he likes football. And we both watch a lot of TV and DVDs, so that's a good thing. Do I want to see him again? Yes, why not? Maybe we can go clubbing next time.

10A 11 p81

a You have these problems. Check you understand them. Then write one more problem.

- 1 I can't find a job.
- 2 I need to find somewhere to live very quickly.
- 3 I want to learn more English vocabulary.
- 4 _____

b Work with students A and B. Take turns to ask for and give advice. Which piece of advice is the best, do you think?

I can't find a job.
What should I do?

(I think) you should ...

Well, you shouldn't ...

Don't ...

3D 2 b p30

Are you an early bird or a night owl?

- | | | | |
|---|------------|------------|------------|
| 1 | a 1 point | b 2 points | c 3 points |
| 2 | a 2 points | b 1 point | c 3 points |
| 3 | a 3 points | b 1 point | c 2 points |
| 4 | a 3 points | b 2 points | c 1 point |
| 5 | a 2 points | b 1 point | c 3 points |
| 6 | a 1 point | b 2 points | c 3 points |

6–9 points:

You're definitely an early bird. You probably get up very early and do lots of things before lunchtime. But you're probably not a good person to go to an all-night party with!

10–13 points:

You're not a night owl or an early bird – so you're probably an afternoon person! You probably get up early in the week and then sleep a lot at the weekend.

14–18 points:

You're definitely a night owl. You probably go out a lot in the evening and watch TV late at night. But you're probably not a good person to have breakfast with!

5B 11 p43

a Work on your own. Choose five to eight of these events in your life. Write the year/month when these things happened on a timeline.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| • born | • go to your first concert/football match | • start your first job/a new job |
| • brother/sister born | • start/leave university | • get married |
| • start/leave school | • meet your first girlfriend/boyfriend | • have a child |
| • move to a new school | • move to a different town/city | • meet your best friend |
| • start learning English | • meet your husband/wife | |

b Work with your partner. Take turns to tell each other about your timeline. Ask questions to get more information.

c Tell another student three things about your partner's life.



BORN IN ...

NOW

Extra Practice 1

Language Summary 1 p128

1A p8

1 a Find twelve countries (→↓).

R	E	B	R	A	Z	I	L	A
G	E	R	M	A	N	Y	R	R
U	P	S	E	D	F	P	U	G
K	I	T	A	L	Y	O	S	E
F	R	A	N	C	E	L	S	N
L	A	R	U	S	A	A	I	T
L	O	N	C	H	I	N	A	I
T	U	R	K	E	Y	D	W	N
A	U	S	T	R	A	L	I	A

b Write the nationalities.

Brazil → Brazilian

2 Fill in the gaps with 'm, 're, are or 's.

- A What¹ 's your name?
- B My name² Ali.
- A Where³ you from?
- B I⁴ from Egypt.
- A Where⁵ they from?
- B They⁶ from Australia.
- A What⁷ their names?
- B His name⁸ Jason and her name⁹ Kylie.
- A Hi, Jo. How¹⁰ you?
- B I¹¹ fine, thanks. And you?
- A I¹² OK, thanks.

3 Choose the correct words.

- 1 What's you/your name?
- 2 It's she/her dictionary.
- 3 We/Our 're Japanese.
- 4 My/I 'm from Turkey.
- 5 It's he/his computer.
- 6 They're/Their Spanish.
- 7 You're/Your in room C.
- 8 It's/Its an MP3 player.
- 9 What are they/their names?
- 10 We/Our names are Colin and Henry.
- 11 Where's you/your book?
- 12 We/Our 're students and Peter's we/our teacher.

1B p10

4 Fill in the gaps in these jobs with a, e, i, o or u. Then put a or an in the boxes.

- 1 a l a w y e r
- 2 d _ c t _ r
- 3 m _ s _ c _ n
- 4 w _ t r _ s s
- 5 _ c c _ n t _ n t
- 6 m _ n _ g _ r
- 7 _ n g _ n _ r
- 8 p _ l _ c e _ f f _ c _ r
- 9 m _ c h _ n _ c
- 10 c l _ n _ r
- 11 s _ l _ s _ s s _ s t _ n t
- 12 t _ c h _ r

5 Make these sentences negative. Write correct sentences.

- 1 Julia Roberts is Polish.
Julia Roberts isn't Polish.
She's American.
- 2 Leonardo DiCaprio is an accountant.
- 3 David and Victoria Beckham are from Spain.
- 4 Pepsi and Coca-Cola are British companies.
- 5 Sydney is in the USA.
- 6 Ferraris are German cars.
- 7 Liverpool and Manchester are in Australia.

6 a Fill in the gaps in these questions with Am, Are or Is.

- 1 Are you a student?
- 2 _ she an actress?
- 3 _ they Argentinian?
- 4 _ I in room 201?
- 5 _ it an English hotel?
- 6 _ he from Mexico?
- 7 _ we in room B?
- 8 _ you from London?

b Write positive and negative short answers for the questions in 6a.

- 1 Yes, I am. No, I'm not.

1C p12

7 Write questions with your for these answers.

- 1 Jones. *What's your surname?*
- 2 It's Anna.
- 3 I'm British.
- 4 67, West Road, London.
- 5 SE13 7GR.
- 6 My mobile number's 07954 362313.
- 7 It's 020 7946 0840.
- 8 jane22@webmail.com.

1D p14

8 Write the plurals.

- 1 a camera *cameras*
- 2 a surname
- 3 a watch
- 4 a dictionary
- 5 a dress
- 6 a pencil
- 7 a tooth
- 8 a woman
- 9 a man
- 10 an address

Progress Portfolio 1

Tick the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can introduce people.
- ☐ I can say countries and nationalities.
- ☐ I can say and understand the numbers 0-100.
- ☐ I can talk about jobs.
- ☐ I can ask for, give and understand personal information (name, etc.).
- ☐ I can ask people to repeat things.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 1.



2A p16

1 Write the adjectives. Then write their opposites.

- | | | | |
|----|--------|-----|-----|
| 1 | ewn | new | old |
| 2 | epahc | c | e |
| 3 | lamlis | s | b |
| 4 | swol | s | f |
| 5 | lygu | u | b |
| 6 | ysea | e | d |
| 7 | uogny | y | o |
| 8 | dogo | g | b |
| 9 | leayr | e | l |
| 10 | ghrit | r | w |

2 Choose the correct words.

- 1 She've/('s)got an old bike.
- 2 We haven't/hasn't got a car.
- 3 They've/'s got a new DVD player.
- 4 Jo haven't/hasn't got a camera.
- 5 I've/'s got a new laptop.
- 6 He haven't/hasn't got an MP3 player.
- 7 They haven't/hasn't got a very big car.
- 8 You've/'s got a nice watch.
- 9 She haven't/hasn't got a pen.
- 10 We've/'s got a beautiful cat.

3 Fill in the gaps with *have*, *has*, *haven't* or *hasn't*.

- 1 A Have you got a computer?
B Yes, I have.
- 2 A _____ Mona got a laptop?
B No, she _____.
- 3 A _____ you got a dictionary?
B Yes, I _____.
- 4 A _____ they got a new DVD player?
B No, they _____.
- 5 A _____ he got a camera?
B Yes, he _____.
- 6 A _____ we got his address?
B Yes, we _____.
- 7 A _____ Bob got a car?
B No, he _____.
- 8 A _____ they got a big TV?
B Yes, they _____.

2B p18

4 Complete these sentences.

- 1 Your mother's son is ...
your brother
- 2 Your mother's daughter is ...
- 3 Your son's children are ...
- 4 Your mother's brother is ...
- 5 Your father's sister is ...
- 6 Your father's parents are ...
- 7 Your mother's brother's daughter is ...

5 Look at these sentences. Does 's mean *is*, *has* or possessive?

- 1 Jack's got a camera. 's = *has*
- 2 She's got an MP3 player.
- 3 Mark's unemployed.
- 4 This is Ed's baby.
- 5 She's from Prague.
- 6 That's Pam's husband.

2C p20

6 a Put these times in order.

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------|
| twenty to ten ¹ | five to ten |
| quarter past ten | ten past ten |
| quarter to ten | ten to ten |
| twenty-five past ten | half past ten |

b Write the times in 6a in a different way.

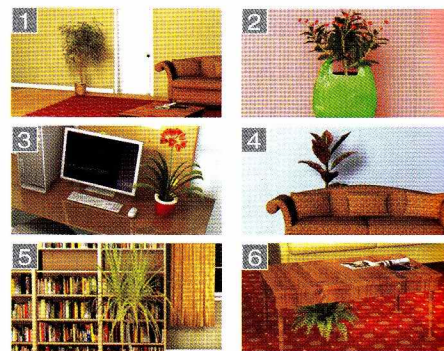
twenty to ten → nine forty

7 Read this conversation at a cinema. Fill in the gaps with these words.

Can	Here	course	Thanks
film	tickets	That's	starts
time	much		

- 1 Can I have two ² _____ for 24 Hours, please?
- 2 Yes, of ³ _____.
- 3 A How ⁴ _____ is that?
- 4 B ⁵ _____ £18, please.
- 5 A ⁶ _____ you are. What ⁷ _____ is the film?
- 6 B It ⁸ _____ at six fifty.
- 7 A Right. ⁹ _____ a lot.
- 8 B You're welcome. Enjoy the ¹⁰ _____.

2D p22



8 Look at pictures 1–6. Complete the words. Then fill in the gaps with these prepositions.

by	under	in	behind
in front of	on		

- 1 The plant's by the d oor.
- 2 The plant's _____ the b _____.
- 3 The plant's _____ the d _____.
- 4 The plant's _____ the s _____.
- 5 The plant's _____ the b _____.
- 6 The plant's _____ the c _____ t _____.

Progress Portfolio 2

Tick the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can use adjectives with *very* to describe things.
- ☐ I can talk about personal possessions.
- ☐ I can talk about families.
- ☐ I can talk about times and prices.
- ☐ I can find information in adverts for cinemas, etc.
- ☐ I can buy a ticket at the cinema.
- ☐ I can say where things are in a room.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 2.



Extra Practice 3

Language Summary 3 p132

3A p24

- 1** Read about Vince's day. Fill in the gaps with these verbs.

live work finish start
go leave get
get up have (x2)

- 1 I live in Brighton.
- 2 I _____ at 7.00.
- 3 I _____ home at 8.30.
- 4 I _____ work at 9.00.
- 5 I _____ in a school.
- 6 I _____ lunch in a café.
- 7 I _____ work at 5.30.
- 8 I _____ home at 6.00.
- 9 I _____ dinner at home.
- 10 I _____ to bed at 11.30.

- 2** Complete these questions with you for the words/phrases in bold in 1.

- 1 Where do you live ?
- 2 What time _____ ?
- 3 When _____ ?
- 4 What time _____ ?
- 5 Where _____ ?
- 6 Where _____ ?
- 7 When _____ ?
- 8 What time _____ ?
- 9 Where _____ ?
- 10 When _____ ?

3B p26

- 3** Match a word/phrase in A to a word/phrase in B.

A	B
go	your family
visit	in
do	out
stay	sport
have	the cinema
go to	coffee with friends
go	concerts
watch	shopping
eat	friends
go to	a drink
phone	TV
go for	out

- 4 a** Fill in the gaps with *in*, *on* or *at*.

- 1 I get up early in the week.
- 2 They work _____ the weekend.
- 3 Gavin and Ruby eat out _____ Friday evenings.
- 4 My brother and I go to the cinema _____ Sundays.
- 5 Tom and Bob work _____ night.
- 6 I phone my mum and dad _____ the mornings.
- 7 My parents have lunch _____ one o'clock.
- 8 We do sport _____ the afternoon.
- 9 I phone my son _____ Saturdays.
- 10 I get up _____ half past six.

- b** Make the sentences in 4a negative.

1 *I don't get up early in the week.*

3C p28

- 5** What do you say on these special days?

- 1 your sister's birthday
Happy birthday!
- 2 a friend's wedding
- 3 1st January
- 4 the birth of a baby
- 5 a wedding anniversary

- 6** Complete the words in this conversation.

- A What ¹shall we ²g_____ Maya for her birthday?
B What ³a_____ a new watch?
A No, I don't ⁴t_____ so. She's got a nice watch.
B Why ⁵d_____ we get her a radio?
A ⁶M_____. But she's got an MP3 player.
B I know! ⁷L_____ get her a camera.
A Yes, ⁸t_____ a good ⁹i_____. Where's your credit card?
B My credit card?!

3D p30

- 7** Make sentences with these words.

- 1 Sundays / work / I / usually / on .
I usually work on Sundays.
- 2 I / in / never / the afternoon / sleep .
- 3 on / I / Saturday / at home / sometimes / 'm / evenings .
- 4 often / go out / friends / the week / in / I / with .
- 5 always / My / birthday / remember / friends / my .
- 6 New Year's Eve / on / hardly ever / are / at home / My parents .
- 7 tired / evenings / usually / 'm / on / very / Friday / I .

- 8** Choose the correct words.

- 1 Do you know he/him ?
- 2 Is she/her a doctor?
- 3 They email we/us a lot.
- 4 How do you know she/her?
- 5 I don't understand they/them.
- 6 Why don't they/them phone I/me?

Progress Portfolio 3

Tick the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can describe my daily routine.
- ☐ I can talk about my free time activities and say when I do them.
- ☐ I can ask people about their routines and free time.
- ☐ I can use phrases for special days.
- ☐ I can ask for, make and respond to suggestions.
- ☐ I can say how often I do things.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 3.



Extra Practice 4

Language Summary 4 p135

4A p32

- 1 Match the verbs to the words/phrases.

go	to music
go	running
listen	photos
take	swimming
go	tennis
play	to the radio
read	clubbing
listen	books or magazines
go	video games
play	sport on TV
go to	cycling
watch	the gym

- 2 a Add -s, -es or - to the verbs in these sentences.

- My son watch es TV a lot.
- Barry take s good photos.
- Paula go s out on Saturdays.
- Ian and Liz work s at home.
- My sister live s in the USA.
- Our class finish s at 8.30.
- Luke's parents like s jazz.
- Rob watch s sport on TV.
- We go s out on Fridays.
- She do s a lot of sport.

- b Make the sentences negative.

- My son doesn't watch TV a lot.

4B p34

- 3 Look at the pictures. Fill in the gaps with the correct form of these words/phrases.

love hate really like
don't like is/are OK
quite like like

- He loves cats.
- We are cooking.
- She likes dogs.
- I like jazz.
- I think tennis is OK.
- They like football.
- He likes shopping for clothes.

- 4 a Make questions with these words.

- What / do / does / he ?
What does he do?
- work / does / Where / he ?
- like / rock music / he / Does ?
- What / she / on Friday nights / does / do ?
- What / like / she / does / food ?
- she / watch / Does / on TV / sport ?

- b Fill in the gaps with the correct form of the verb in brackets and complete the short answers. Then match answers a-f to questions 1-6.

- He teaches English. (teach) 1
- She goes clubbing. (go)
- She likes Italian food. (like)
- He works in Spain. (work)
- Yes, she loves. She likes football and tennis. (love)
- No, he doesn't watch. He likes dance music and jazz. (like)

4C p36

- 5 Betty is in a restaurant. Fill in the gaps with these phrases.

to order can I have
I'd like Would you like (x3)
the bill to drink
a glass of that's all

- WAITER Would you like
1 to order now?
BETTY Yes, 2 I'd like the
burger and chips, please.
W What would you like
3 a glass of ?
B I'd like 4 the bill red
wine, please.
W 5 to drink anything else?
B No, 6 that's all, thanks.
W 7 can I have a dessert?
B Yes, 8 a glass of the apple
pie, please?
W 9 I'd like tea or coffee?
B No, thanks. Can I have
10 a glass of, please?
W Certainly, madam.

4D p38

- 6 a Find fifteen words for food and drink. (→4).

C	H	E	E	S	E	F	O	T
B	Y	T	O	A	S	T	F	O
A	E	F	R	U	I	T	I	M
N	E	G	G	S	L	K	S	A
A	B	R	E	A	D	E	H	T
N	T	E	A	G	M	X	A	O
A	P	P	L	E	R	I	C	E
M	E	A	T	S	L	L	W	S
M	I	L	K	O	K	J	A	M

- b Which words are countable (C)? Which are uncountable (U)?
cheese U banana C

- 7 Fill in the gaps with a, an or -.

- Do you have - sugar?
- Can I have a croissant?
- I don't like - olives.
- Would you like a biscuit?
- I love - chicken soup.
- I always have a egg sandwich for lunch.

Progress Portfolio 4

Tick the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can talk about other people's routines and free time activities.
- ☐ I can say what I like and don't like.
- ☐ I can ask and answer questions about people I don't know.
- ☐ I can say and understand words for food and drink.
- ☐ I can order something to eat and drink in a restaurant.
- ☐ I can offer things to people.
- ☐ I can ask people for things.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 4.



Extra Practice 5

Language Summary 5 p138

5A p40

1 Write the opposites of these adjectives.

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------|
| 1 ill <i>well</i> | 6 tall |
| 2 happy | 7 friendly |
| 3 hot | 8 boring |
| 4 lucky | 9 fantastic |
| 5 different | 10 quiet |

2 Choose the correct words.

- I was / were at home yesterday.
- Jack and I *was* / were in Rome last week.
- The film *was* / were amazing!
- My uncle *was* / were a doctor.
- I *wasn't* / weren't here last year.
- He *wasn't* / weren't very well.
- You *wasn't* / weren't here on Monday.
- They *wasn't* / weren't born in the UK.

3 Make questions with these words.

- were / night / you / Where / last ?
Where were you last night?
- they / at home / yesterday / Were / afternoon ?
- the party / Was / son / your / at ?
- at / were / 5 p.m. / you / Where ?
- born / were / Where / you ?
- they / When / born / were ?
- in / he / Was / born / London ?

5B p42

4 a Choose the correct verbs.

- have / write children
- win / make a film
- meet / study English
- leave / meet school
- make / become famous
- become / write a book
- win / meet a lot of money
- move / leave house

b Write the Past Simple of the correct verbs in 4a.

have → had

5 a Read about Beryl, Jason's grandmother. Fill in gaps 1–8 with the Past Simple of these verbs.

be	meet (x2)	have
go	live	move
	get	

I ¹ was born ^a in 1954 and my family ² lived in Liverpool. In 1973 I ³ met my husband, Albert, at ^c a party and we ⁴ got married ^d on May 1st 1975.

We ⁵ had our first child, Matt, ^e in 1977. Matt ⁶ came to ^f Spain on holiday in 1997 and ⁷ met ^g his wife there. They ⁸ lived to Bristol ^h in 1999 and they have four children now.

b Make questions for the words/phrases a–h in bold.

- When was Beryl born?*
- Where did her family live?*

5C p44

6 Match the verbs to the phrases.

go	for the weekend
write	to a party
clean	an email
go away	the car
do	for a walk
have	with friends
stay	a great time
go	the washing

7 Choose the correct response in these conversations.

- A I won £50,000 yesterday.
B Oh, nice. / Wow!
- A Tim and I went to Venice last week.
B What a shame. / Really?
- A I was ill last weekend.
B Oh, dear. / Oh, nice.
- A I met the President of the USA last month.
B You're joking! / Oh, dear.
- A I stayed in all weekend.
B Oh, right. / What a shame.
- A I went clubbing last night.
B Oh, dear. / Oh, nice.

5D p46

8 a Write the missing letters in these adjectives.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 c <u>r</u> ow <u>d</u> ed | 6 cl <u>o</u> n |
| 2 d <u>o</u> rt <u>e</u> | 7 e <u>e</u> pt <u>e</u> |
| 3 ex <u>h</u> t <u>a</u> d | 8 r <u>o</u> c <u>k</u> |
| 4 p <u>o</u> r <u>o</u> | 9 b <u>o</u> r <u>d</u> |
| 5 dan <u>o</u> er <u>o</u> us | 10 s <u>h</u> f <u>o</u> |

b Match the opposite adjectives in 8a.

crowded, empty

9 Choose the correct words.

- Sorry, I can't come today. I'm too / quite busy.
- Let's go to that restaurant. It's *too* / really nice.
- He's a *very* / too important man.
- Mike is always *quite* / too lucky.
- Kim's husband is *too* / quite rich.
- That film was *too* / quite long. I went to sleep after 5 hours!
- This book is *really* / too interesting.

Progress Portfolio 5

Tick the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can describe people and places.
- ☐ I can talk about things that happened in my life.
- ☐ I can ask questions about things other people did in the past.
- ☐ I can say and understand years.
- ☐ I can talk about what I did last weekend.
- ☐ I can respond to people's news and ask follow-up questions.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 5.



6A p48

1 Fill in the gaps with these words.

website get blog emails
online download chat
WiFi use search engine

- I don't have a favourite website.
- Paul sends lots of _____ every day.
- Did you _____ my email?
- This café has _____.
- I _____ the internet for my food shopping.
- Do you always use the same _____?
- My kids _____ a lot of videos and music.
- I _____ to my sister online every day.
- I often go _____ and read my friend's _____.

2 Fill in the gaps with *didn't*, *wasn't* or *weren't*.

- I didn't go to bed late last night.
- I _____ watch TV yesterday.
- My parents _____ go to university.
- I _____ at home last week.
- My parents _____ born in the UK.
- I _____ like my first school.
- I _____ have a holiday last year.
- I _____ late for work last week.

3 Fill in the gaps with the Past Simple of the verbs in brackets, *did* or *didn't*.

- A ¹ Did you go out yesterday evening? (go out)
- B Yes, I ² _____. I ³ _____ to see my sister. (go)
- A What ⁴ _____ you _____? (do)
- B We ⁵ _____ a DVD. (watch)
- A ⁶ _____ you _____ it? (enjoy)
- B No, I ⁷ _____. It ⁸ _____ terrible! (be)
- A ⁹ _____ you _____ at your sister's? (stay)
- B No I ¹⁰ _____. I ¹¹ _____ home. (come)

6B p50

4 Choose the correct words.

- I didn't send/get your text. Can you send/get it again?
- Remember to turn on/turn off your phone before the film starts.
- What was the last app/GPS you downloaded?
- Which programme/channel is the football on?
- I need a new charge/battery for my mobile.
- Do you charge/record your phone every night?
- Can you turn on/turn off the TV? My favourite programme/channel is on now.

5 Make sentences with these words.

- ago / I / two / him / days / met .
I met him two days ago.
- born / He / eighteenth / the / in / century / was .
- night / out / I / last / went .
- days / arrived / She / ago / ten .
- 2011 / to Paris / My parents / in / went .
- in / famous / was / the eighties / His father .

6 Choose the correct words.

- Excuse me. Can/Could you make video calls on this mobile?
- You can't/couldn't go online in 1970.
- You can/could buy mobiles in the 1990s.
- Sorry, we can't/couldn't come to your party next week.
- Look! You can/could see my house from here.
- He can't/couldn't go to work last week.
- Can/Could you watch TV on your new mobile?
- Two years ago you can't/couldn't buy these phones.
- You can/could use Google in 1998.
- Help! I can't/couldn't swim!

6C p52

7 Fill in the gaps with these words.

hear read where joking
died what Really terrible

- A Did you ¹ hear about that plane crash?
- B No, ² _____ was it?
- A In the USA. 310 people ³ _____.
- B Oh no, that's ⁴ _____.
- A Did you ⁵ _____ about the woman who won the lottery?
- B No, ⁶ _____ happened?
- A Her baby chose the numbers.
- B ⁷ _____? You're ⁸ _____!

6D p54

8 Fill in the gaps with *a*, *an* or *the*.

- I've got a old car.
- I went to _____ cinema at _____ weekend.
- What happens at _____ end of _____ game?
- I'd like to buy _____ new hat.
- This book is about _____ young doctor and _____ old woman. _____ doctor is rich, but _____ woman is very poor.

Progress Portfolio 6

Tick the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can talk about the internet, my mobile phone and TV.
- ☐ I can say when things happened in the past.
- ☐ I can talk about things I can do in the present and could do in the past.
- ☐ I can understand simple news stories.
- ☐ I can talk about the news and respond to news stories.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 6.



Extra Practice 7

Language Summary 7 p142

7A p56

- 1 Find 12 places in a town or city. (→↓).



- 2 Read about Catford, in London. Fill in the gaps with *There's*, *There are*, *There isn't* or *There aren't*.

- (✓) *There's* a theatre in Catford.
- (X) _____ a cinema.
- (✓) _____ two stations.
- (X) _____ a square.
- (✓) _____ a nice park.
- (X) _____ any museums.
- (✓) _____ a lot of shops.
- (X) _____ any big hotels.

- 3 a Choose the correct words.

- (S)/Are there a theatre in Catford?
- Is/Are there any big hotels?
- Is/Are there a cinema?
- Is/Are there any museums?
- Is/Are there any shops?
- Is/Are there a park?
- Is/Are there a square?

- b Look again at 2. Write short answers for the questions in 3a.

- 1 Yes, *there is*.

7B p58

- 4 Which word is the odd one out?

- table chair balcony
- cooker bed fridge
- bathroom kitchen shower
- sink desk washbasin
- bath toilet living room
- cupboard sofa armchair

- 5 Fill in the gaps with *some*, *any*, *a* or *an*.

- A I'm hungry. Have you got ¹ any food?
- B Yes, there's ² _____ bread and cheese. I can make you ³ _____ sandwich.
- A Have you got ⁴ _____ tomatoes?
- B No, I haven't, but I've got ⁵ _____ eggs. Would you like ⁶ _____ egg sandwich?
- A Yes, that sounds nice.
- B Would you like ⁷ _____ drink?
- A Yes, ⁸ _____ milk, please. And have you got ⁹ _____ fruit?
- ¹⁰ _____ banana, maybe?
- B There are ¹¹ _____ oranges, but there aren't ¹² _____ bananas.
- A OK. I'll have ¹³ _____ orange.

7C p60

- 6 Write the vowels (a, e, i, o, u) in these shops.

- a b o o ksh o p
- a ch m st's
- a sh sh p
- a b k r's
- a b nk
- a k sk
- a p st ff c
- a n ws g nt's
- a b tch r's
- a d p rtm nt st r
- a s p rm rk t
- a cl th s sh p

- 7 Write the words for these things.



- a map
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

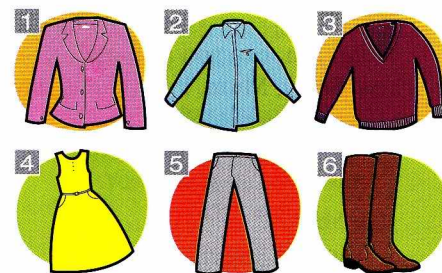
- 8 Fill in the gaps with these words.

Can over I'll else
help Have that's
one receipt any

- A Hello. ¹ Can I help you?
- B Yes. ² _____ you got ³ _____ maps of London?
- A Yes, they're ⁴ _____ there.
- B Oh, yes. ⁵ _____ have this ⁶ _____, please.
- A Anything ⁷ _____?
- B No, ⁸ _____ all, thanks.
Thanks for your ⁹ _____.
- A OK. Here's your ¹⁰ _____.

7D p62

- 9 Write the colours and clothes.



- a pink jacket
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

Progress Portfolio 7

Tick the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can describe my town and other places I know.
- ☐ I can describe my home and the things in it.
- ☐ I can ask about other people's towns and homes.
- ☐ I can buy things in a shop.
- ☐ I can talk about clothes.
- ☐ I can say colours.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 7.



Extra Practice 8

Language Summary 8 p145

8A p64

1 Fill in the gaps with these words.

phone report notes
company contract
meeting customers

- Can you answer the phone, please?
- I work for a _____ in Rome.
- They signed the _____ yesterday.
- I'm going to a _____ now.
- Lisa, can you take _____ at the meeting, please?
- I write to a lot of _____ every day.
- Did you write this _____?

2 Put the verbs in the Present Continuous.

MUM Jim, can you help me?

JIM Sorry, Mum. I'm doing my homework. (do)

MUM What² _____ your sister _____? (do)

JIM She³ _____ a shower. (have)

MUM And what⁴ _____ your brothers _____? (do)

JIM They⁵ _____ football. (play). But Dad⁶ _____ anything. (not do)

DAD Yes, I am. I⁷ _____ the paper. (read)

MUM Not any more!

8B p66

3 a Write these travelling verbs/phrases.

- ylf fly
- leccy _____
- vired _____
- kawl _____
- og yb ratin _____
- og yb occah _____
- og yb buet _____

b What is another way to say the verbs/phrases in 3a?

fly → go by plane

4 a Put the verbs in the Present Simple or Present Continuous.

- Where does Ben work? (work)
- What _____ Sue _____ at the moment? (do)
- Which TV programmes _____ you _____ every week? (watch)
- What _____ you _____ today? (wear)
- Where _____ you usually _____ on Friday evenings? (go)
- What _____ Dave and Rita _____ now? (do)
- What time _____ your lesson usually _____? (finish)
- What _____ Ben _____ at the moment? (do)

b Write the answers for questions 1–8 in 4a.

- work / in a bank
He works in a bank.
- take / the children to school
- watch / sport on TV
- wear / jeans and a T-shirt
- usually / go / clubbing
- have / lunch
- usually / finish / at 4.30
- walk / to work

8C p68

5 Read this phone conversation. Fill in the gaps with these words.

help you Can I Speaking
It's I got I'll call Hold on
Is that call you back Call me

KEVIN Hello. Can I ¹ help you?

BILL Hello. ² _____ Kevin Doyle?

K ³ _____.

B Hi, Kevin. ⁴ _____ Bill. ⁵ _____ speak to Jo, please?

K ⁶ _____ a moment, I'll get her.

JO Hello?

B Hi, Jo. ⁷ _____ your message.

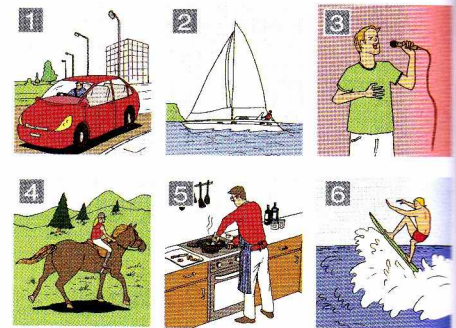
J Oh, hi, Bill. I've got a meeting now. Can I ⁸ _____?

B Sure. ⁹ _____ on my mobile.

J OK. ¹⁰ _____ you later. Bye.

8D p70

6 Write words/phrases for these indoor and outdoor activities.



- | | |
|----------------|---------|
| 1 <u>drive</u> | 4 _____ |
| 2 _____ | 5 _____ |
| 3 _____ | 6 _____ |

7 Choose the correct words.

- A Tina's husband is a ¹ good well cook.
- B And he can play tennis really ² good/well.
- A He also speaks three languages ³ fluent/fluently.
- B But he isn't a very ⁴ careful/carefully driver. I don't feel ⁵ safe/safely when he's driving.
- A So there's one thing he does ⁶ bad/badly!

Progress Portfolio 8

Tick the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can talk about things people do at work.
- ☐ I can describe things that are happening now.
- ☐ I can talk about transport.
- ☐ I can understand simple phone messages.
- ☐ I can have a conversation on the phone.
- ☐ I can understand a simple letter.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 8.



Extra Practice 9

Language Summary 9 p147

9A p72

1 Choose the correct verbs.

- 1 have/stay with friends
- 2 travel/hire a car
- 3 go to/go the beach
- 4 stay/hire in a hotel
- 5 have/travel around
- 6 go on/go camping
- 7 hire/go skiing
- 8 go on/go a boat trip
- 9 hire/travel a bike
- 10 go/have a picnic
- 11 go on/go to holiday
- 12 have/go a good time

2 Complete these sentences with the infinitive of purpose. Use these verbs.

get watch buy tell
visit study chat

- 1 I went to the baker's to get some bread.
- 2 We stayed at home _____ the football.
- 3 I'm going to Valencia _____ Spanish.
- 4 I went to L.A. _____ a friend.
- 5 She often goes online _____ to her friends.
- 6 He's going to the supermarket _____ some biscuits.
- 7 Jack phoned his wife _____ her the good news.

9B p74

3 Write the letters in these natural places.

- 1 the s e a
- 2 a w _ _ d
- 3 an i _ l _ _ d
- 4 a f _ r _ _ t
- 5 a m _ _ nt _ _ n
- 6 a h _ _ l
- 7 a l _ k _
- 8 a r _ v _ _
- 9 the c o _ _ t _ y s _ _ e
- 10 the d _ s _ _ t

4 Write sentences with comparatives.

- 1 Russia / cold / Egypt
Russia is colder than Egypt.
- 2 Stockholm / safe / New York
- 3 Mumbai / big / Paris
- 4 India / cheap / Australia
- 5 Tokyo / expensive / Bangkok
- 6 São Paulo / hot / Montreal
- 7 Beijing / crowded / Berlin
- 8 Spain / small / Argentina
- 9 Mexico City / busy / Quito
- 10 Public transport in London / good / public transport in Los Angeles

9C p76

5 Write the animals.

- 1 dirb bird
- 2 olni l _ _ _ _
- 3 aesnk s _ _ _ _
- 4 semou m _ _ _ _
- 5 nceckih c _ _ _ _
- 6 bratbi r _ _ _ _
- 7 woc c _ _ _ _
- 8 largoil g _ _ _ _
- 9 komyen m _ _ _ _
- 10 grite t _ _ _ _
- 11 ephse s _ _ _ _
- 12 lwfo w _ _ _ _

6 Read the conversation and choose the correct verb form.

- A What do you want ¹do/to do tomorrow?
- B I'd like ²go/to go shopping in town.
- A We did that last weekend. I'd rather ³go/to go to the beach.
- B OK, let's ⁴do/to do that. Where would you like ⁵go/to go?
- A Can we ⁶go/to go to Angel Beach? It's really nice.
- B Yes, good idea. Let's ⁷go to/go there. Do you want ⁸drive/to drive?
- A No, I don't think so. I'd rather ⁹take/to take the train.
- B OK. See you tomorrow.

9D p78

7 Fill in the gaps with the correct form of the verbs in brackets, verb+ing or the infinitive with to.

- A Would you like ¹to go out (go out) this evening?
- B I'm sorry, I can't. I need ²_____ (finish) this report.
- A I really enjoy ³_____ (watch) *The Simpsons*.
- B Oh, I stopped ⁴_____ (watch) it years ago.
- A I'd really love ⁵_____ (go) to San Francisco.
- B Yes, me too. But I really hate ⁶_____ (fly)!
- A Do you like ⁷_____ (go) to the cinema?
- B No, I don't, but I love ⁸_____ (watch) DVDs.
- A Last night I decided ⁹_____ (leave) my job.
- B Wow! What do you want ¹⁰_____ (do) now?

Progress Portfolio 9

Tick the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can talk about things I do on holiday.
- ☐ I can give reasons why I do things.
- ☐ I can describe and compare places I know.
- ☐ I can find important facts in tourist brochures.
- ☐ I can discuss and plan a day out.
- ☐ I can understand a simple magazine article.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 9.



Extra Practice 10

Language Summary 10 p149

10A p80

- 1 Choose the correct words.
- I want to get / have fit.
 - Can you carry / spend the shopping, please?
 - How often do you do / have the housework?
 - I'd like to have / spend a bath.
 - I need to do / spend some exercise.
 - I don't like taking / doing lifts.
 - Joe's washing / doing the car.
 - Did you spend / do lots of money?
 - I take / get stressed at work.
 - He got on / got off the bus and walked home.

- 2 Fill in the gaps with these imperatives.

Don't eat Turn off Call
Don't forget Don't work Tell

- Don't eat biscuits every day.
- _____ him on his mobile.
- _____ too hard.
- _____ her to go away.
- _____ the TV and go to bed.
- _____ to send him a present.

- 3 Fill in the gaps in these frequency expressions.

- once a week = every 7 days
- every 6 hours = _____ a day
- twice a year = _____ 6 months
- 12 times a year = _____ a month
- every 12 hours = _____ a day

- 4 Look at these tips for a healthy life. Fill in the gaps with *should* or *shouldn't* and these verbs.

de work drink
sleep eat walk

- You should do some exercise.
- You _____ chips every day.
- You _____ 7 days a week.
- You _____ to the shops.
- You _____ so much coffee.
- You _____ for 7 or 8 hours every night.

10B p82

- 5 Write the vowels (a, e, i, o, u) in these words. Do they describe appearance (A) or character (C)?

- a t r a c t i v e A
- i a z y C
- b _____ t _____ f _____ l _____
- f _____ n _____ n _____ y _____
- _____ v _____ r _____ w _____ g _____ h _____ t _____
- s _____ l _____ f _____ sh _____
- g _____ n _____ r _____ s _____
- sl _____ m _____
- k _____ n _____ d _____
- th _____ n _____
- g _____ d _____ l _____ k _____ n _____ g _____
- h _____ r _____ d _____ w _____ r _____ k _____ n _____ g _____

- 6 a Make questions with these words.

- Who / Joe / is ? Who is Joe?
- like / What / look / he / does ?
- doing / he / like / does / What ?
- he / 's / like / What ?

- b Match questions 1-4 with answers a-d.

- He likes travelling.
- He's very kind and quite shy.
- He's my brother.
- He's tall and he's got fair hair.

10C p84

- 7 a Find 10 words for health problems and parts of the body (→↓).

C	O	L	D	T	G	A	Q
F	B	B	J	O	I	L	L
O	E	A	C	O	U	G	H
O	A	C	W	T	P	E	F
T	X	K	O	H	K	G	L
H	E	A	D	A	C	H	E
W	L	R	M	C	D	W	G
Q	S	M	I	H	A	L	P
S	I	C	K	E	M	W	E

- b Match the words in 7a to these phrases.

- I've got (a) ... cold
- I feel ...
- my hurts

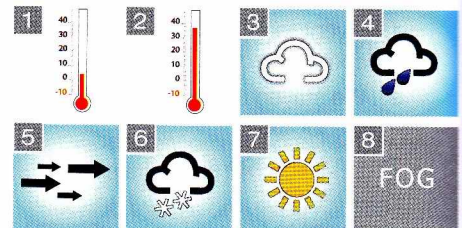
- 8 Fill in the gaps with these words.

wrong ache better take
sore don't terrible matter
shouldn't dear painkillers

- What's ¹ wrong ?
- I feel ² _____ .
- Oh, ³ _____ . What's the ⁴ _____ ?
- I've got a stomach ⁵ _____ and a ⁶ _____ throat. Have you got any ⁷ _____ ?
- Sorry, no, but you ⁸ _____ be at work. Why ⁹ _____ you ¹⁰ _____ the day off?
- Yes, good idea.
- I hope you get ¹¹ _____ soon.

10D p86

- 9 What's the weather like? Write sentences with *It's* ...



- It's cold.
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

Progress Portfolio 10

Tick the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can ask for and give advice.
- ☐ I can talk about people's appearance and character.
- ☐ I can talk about health.
- ☐ I can be sympathetic.
- ☐ I can talk about the weather.
- ☐ I can understand a simple magazine article.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 10.



Extra Practice 11

Language Summary 11 p151

11A p88

1 Fill in the gaps with these verbs.

have move work get
do lose eat stop

- 1 have a holiday/fun
- 2 _____ a computer course/
more exercise
- 3 _____ chocolate cake/
sweet things
- 4 _____ a new job/fit
- 5 _____ hard/less
- 6 _____ working at weekends/
smoking
- 7 _____ house/to another
country
- 8 _____ three kilos/weight

2 Fill in the gaps with the correct form of *be going to* and these verbs.

leave watch get
stay buy have

- 1 Ian (+) 's going to leave his job.
- 2 I (+) _____
a new car.
- 3 Tina (-) _____
married in May.
- 4 We (-) _____
a holiday this year.
- 5 They (+) _____
in a hotel.
- 6 I (-) _____
TV tonight.

3 Make questions with these words.

- 1 going to / you / tomorrow
evening / are / do / What ?
What are you going to do
tomorrow evening?
- 2 next year / a holiday / have /
you / Are / going to ?
- 3 you / tomorrow afternoon / be /
are / going to / Where ?
- 4 do / after class / going to /
What / you / are ?
- 5 Are / study / going to / you /
next year / English ?
- 6 your family / go / Where /
going to / on holiday / 's ?

11B p90

4 Choose the correct verbs.

- 1 do/get an exam
- 2 pass/get a degree
- 3 fail/start college
- 4 revise/take for an exam
- 5 go/pass to university
- 6 get/leave school
- 7 go/pass an exam
- 8 start/get some qualifications
- 9 fail/revise an exam
- 10 pass/get a job
- 11 go/take an exam
- 12 go to/pass school

5 Read the email. Fill in the gaps with *might* or the correct form of *be going to*.

To: Alice Fisher

Hi Alice

I finished my exams today!

I ¹ 'm going to celebrate this evening,
but I'm not sure what I want to do.

I ² _____ have dinner with friends,
or I ³ _____ go to a party. This
weekend Trevor and I ⁴ _____
drive to Brighton – it's his sister's
wedding on Saturday. On Sunday we
⁵ _____ go for a long walk or we
⁶ _____ go shopping in town.

And of course we ⁷ _____ see
Hamlet on Tuesday – I've got the tickets!

Love Henrietta

11C p92

6 Choose the correct words in these conversations.

- A Excuse me. ¹*Where*/(How) do I
get to the station?
- B Go along this road and ²*turn*/
take left. Then go ³*over*/*in* the
bridge and turn right. ⁴*That's*/
It's New Road. The station is on
⁵*my*/*your* left, ⁶*next*/*opposite*
the hotel.
- A Great, thank you very much.

- A Excuse me. ⁷*Is*/Are there a
supermarket near ⁸*there*/*here*?
- B Yes, there's one ⁹*at*/*in* New
Road. Go ¹⁰*along*/*over* this
street and turn right. Go ¹¹*past*/
along the chemist's and the
supermarket is ¹²*in*/*on* the right.
You ¹³*can't*/*don't* miss it.
- A Excuse me. ¹⁴*Where's*/*What's*
the post office?
- B It's ¹⁵*under*/*over* there, ¹⁶*next*/
opposite to the bank.
- A Oh, yes. I ¹⁷*am*/*can* see it.
Thanks a lot.

11D p94

7 Fill in the gaps with the correct form of *book*, *stay*, *rent* or *get*.

- 1 I need to book a hotel room.
- 2 My brother _____ with us at
the moment.
- 3 How do I _____ to your place?
- 4 He always _____ flights online.
- 5 Last year we _____ a house
in Spain.
- 6 I love _____ in hotels.
- 7 We _____ home last night.
- 8 Are you going to _____ a car?

Progress Portfolio 11

Tick the things you can do
in English.

- ☐ I can ask other people about
their plans.
- ☐ I can talk about exams and
studying.
- ☐ I can find information in
holiday adverts.
- ☐ I can ask for, give and
understand directions.
- ☐ I can understand a
simple email.

What do you need to
study again? See
Self-study DVD-ROM 11.



Extra Practice 12

Language Summary 12 p153

12A p96

1 Write the numbers.

- nought point four **0.4**
- a hundred and thirty-two
- seven million
- six thousand seven hundred
- three point seven six
- five hundred thousand
- forty-one thousand, three hundred and seventeen

2 Write the superlatives.

- slim slimmer
- easy _____
- boring _____
- big _____
- short _____
- beautiful _____
- crowded _____
- difficult _____
- funny _____
- safe _____

3 Fill in the gaps with the comparative or superlative of the adjective in brackets. Use *the* with the superlative if necessary.

- This is the most expensive hotel in the city. (expensive)
- My sister is younger than me. (young)
- I know a _____ restaurant than this one. (good)
- What's _____ country in the world? (hot)
- I'm _____ person in my family. (tall)
- That's my son's _____ shirt. (expensive)
- She's _____ person I know. (happy)
- Where's _____ place to have lunch near here? (good)
- Kath's _____ than her sister. (attractive)
- That was _____ day of the holiday. (bad)
- You look _____ than you were last year. (thin)
- Which of these three bags is _____ ? (heavy)

12B p98

4 Write the past participles.

- be been
- study _____
- have _____
- meet _____
- stay _____
- lose _____
- see _____
- write _____
- visit _____
- work _____
- cook _____
- go _____

5 Put the verbs in brackets in the Present Perfect or Past Simple and complete the short answers.

- A ¹ Have you ever been to Ecuador? (go)
 B No, I ² _____, but I ³ _____ to Chile. (go)
 A When ⁴ _____ you there? (go)
 B I ⁵ _____ in 2009. (go)
 A ⁶ _____ you _____ a good time? (have)
 B Yes. It ⁷ _____ fantastic! (be)
 A ⁸ _____ you ever _____ as a waiter? (work)
 B Yes, I ⁹ _____. In the Station Hotel.
 A ¹⁰ _____ you _____ it? (enjoy)
 B No, it ¹¹ _____ hard work. (be)
 A When ¹² _____ you there? (work)
 B In 2010, after I ¹³ _____ university. (leave)

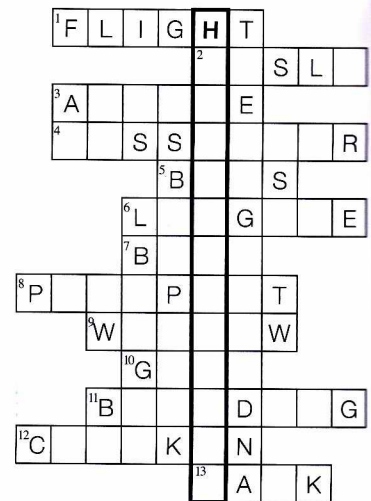
12C p100

6 Read this conversation at an airport. Fill in the gaps with these words.

everything will in have
 See boarding pass time
 forget text

- MUM Have you got ¹ everything ?
 AMY Yes, I ² _____, thanks.
 DAD Have you got your ³ _____ ?
 A Yes, Dad. Here it is.
 M Well, have a good ⁴ _____.
 A Thanks, I ⁵ _____.
 D And don't ⁶ _____ to send us a ⁷ _____ when you get there.
 A Yes, of course. ⁸ _____ you ⁹ _____ three weeks. Bye!

7 Do the puzzle. Find the message.



- Did you have a good ... ?
- 14C is an ... seat.
- The opposite of *depart*.
- On a plane you're a ...
- Pack your ...
- Have you got any hand ... ?
- You can ... tickets online.
- Can I have your ... , please?
- 14A is a ... seat.
- My plane leaves from ... 7.
- Here's your ... pass.
- Go to the ... desk.
- You do this before you travel.

Progress Portfolio 12

Tick the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can say big and small numbers.
- ☐ I can compare three or more things.
- ☐ I can talk about my experiences.
- ☐ I can ask other people about their experiences.
- ☐ I can ask and answer questions at the airport.
- ☐ I can say goodbye.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 12.



Language Summary Welcome

VOCABULARY

0.1 Numbers 0–20

3 p6

0 = zero	7 = seven	14 = fourteen
1 = one	8 = eight	15 = fifteen
2 = two	9 = nine	16 = sixteen
3 = three	10 = ten	17 = seventeen
4 = four	11 = eleven	18 = eighteen
5 = five	12 = twelve	19 = nineteen
6 = six	13 = thirteen	20 = twenty

0.2 The alphabet

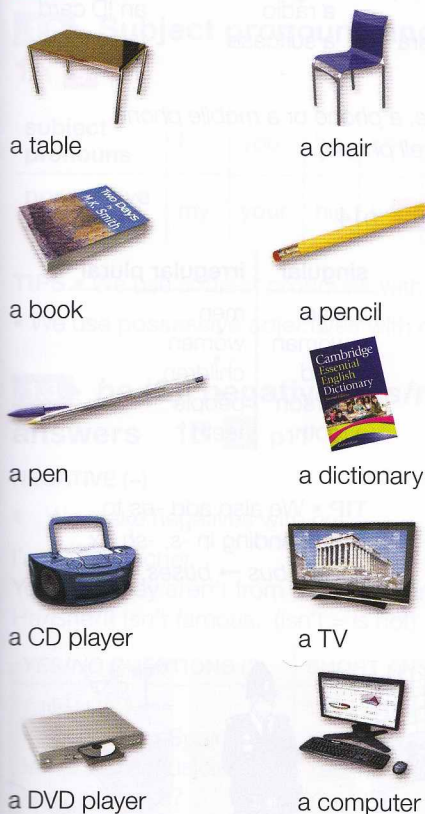
5 p6

Aa Bb Cc Dd Ee Ff Gg Hh Ii
Jj Kk Ll Mm Nn Oo Pp Qq Rr
Ss Tt Uu Vv Ww Xx Yy Zz

TIP • ss = double s, A = capital A, a = small a

0.3 Things in the classroom

8 p7



0.4 Days of the week

9 p7

Monday	Friday
Tuesday	Saturday
Wednesday	Sunday
Thursday	

REAL WORLD

0.1 Introducing yourself

2 p6

Hello, my name's Hassan.

Hi, I'm Olga.

Nice to meet you.

You too.

0.2 Classroom instructions

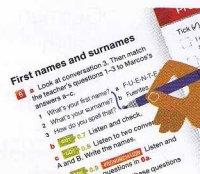
4 p6



Open your book.



Look at the photo on page 11.



Do exercise 6 on your own.



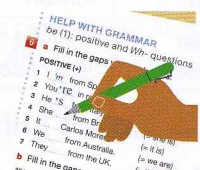
Look at the board.



Work in pairs.



Work in groups.



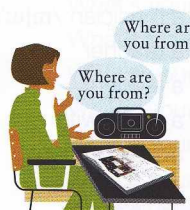
Fill in the gaps.



Compare answers.



Listen and check.



Listen and practise.



Match the words to the pictures.



Ask and answer the questions.

0.3 Names

6 p7

What's your name?

(My name's/It's) Deniz.

What's your first name?

It's Marcos.

What's your surname?

Fuentes.

How do you spell that?

F-U-E-N-T-E-S.

0.4 Saying goodbye

10 p7

Goodbye/Bye, Olga.

Goodbye/Bye. See you on Tuesday.

Yes, see you.

VOCABULARY

1.1 Countries, nationalities and languages

1A 3 p8

countries <i>I'm from ...</i>	nationalities <i>I'm ...</i>	languages <i>I speak ...</i>
Brazil	Brazilian	Portuguese
Australia	Australian	English
Argentina	Argentinian	Spanish
the USA	American	English
Germany	German	German
Italy	Italian	Italian
Mexico	Mexican	Spanish
Russia	Russian	Russian
Egypt	Egyptian	Arabic
the UK	British	English
Spain	Spanish	Spanish
Poland	Polish	Polish
Turkey	Turkish	Turkish
China	Chinese	Chinese
Japan	Japanese	Japanese
France	French	French

1.2 Jobs 1B 3 p10

Match the jobs to pictures a-p.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> a manager /'mænɪdʒə/ | 9 <input type="checkbox"/> a musician /mju:'zɪʃən/ |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> a doctor | 10 <input type="checkbox"/> a teacher |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> an engineer | 11 <input type="checkbox"/> a student |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> a sales assistant | 12 <input type="checkbox"/> a housewife |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> a waiter/a waitress | 13 <input type="checkbox"/> an accountant |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> a cleaner | 14 <input type="checkbox"/> a lawyer /'lɔːə/ |
| 7 <input type="checkbox"/> a police officer | 15 <input type="checkbox"/> a builder |
| 8 <input type="checkbox"/> an actor/an actress | 16 <input type="checkbox"/> a mechanic |

- In the Language Summaries we only show the main stress in words and phrases.
- You can check the phonemic symbols (/æ/, /dʒ/, etc.) on p167.

TIPS • We use *a* or *an* with jobs: *I'm a doctor*. not *I'm doctor*.

• We can also say *I'm unemployed*. not *I'm an unemployed*. and *I'm retired*. not *I'm a retired*.

• *What do you do?* = *What's your job?*



1.3 a and an 1B 4 p10

- We use **a** with nouns that begin with a **consonant** sound. (The consonants are *b, c, d, f*, etc.): *I'm a student*.

We use **an** with nouns that begin with a **vowel** sound. (The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*): *He's an actor*.

TIP • We use *a* with nouns that begin with a /j/ sound: *a university* /ju:'nɪvɜ:sɪti/.

1.4 Numbers 20-100 1C 1 p12

20 = twenty	26 = twenty-six	50 = fifty
21 = twenty-one	27 = twenty-seven	60 = sixty
22 = twenty-two	28 = twenty-eight	70 = seventy
23 = twenty-three	29 = twenty-nine	80 = eighty /'eɪti/
24 = twenty-four	30 = thirty /'θɜ:ti/	90 = ninety
25 = twenty-five	40 = forty	100 = a hundred

1.5 Personal possessions 1D 1 p14

Do you remember these things? Check on p14.

a diary	an umbrella	a coat	a laptop
a wallet	a bag	a bike/bicycle	a dress
an MP3 player	shoes	a radio	an ID card
a mobile	a camera	a suitcase	false teeth
a watch			

TIP • We can say *a mobile*, *a phone* or *a mobile phone* (US: *a cell*, *a phone* or *a cell phone*).

1.6 Plurals 1D 2 p14

singular	plural	singular	irregular plural
	+ -s		
a bag	bags	a man	men
a wallet	wallets	a woman	women
a suitcase	suitcases	a child	children
	+ -es	a person	people
a watch	watches	a tooth	teeth
a dress	dresses		
	-y → -ies		
a diary	diaries		

TIP • We also add *-es* to words ending in *-s*, *-sh*, *-x* and *-z*: *bus* → *buses*, etc.

1.7 this, that, these, those 1D 7 p15

	here ↓	there ↗
singular	this (umbrella)	that (camera)
plural	these (watches)	those (false teeth)

- This, that, these, those go **before** *be* in sentences:
***Those** are my shoes.*
- This, that, these, those go **after** *be* in questions:
*Is **that** your bag?*

GRAMMAR

1.1 be (1): positive and Wh- questions 1A 6 p9

POSITIVE (+)

I'm from Spain.	(= I am)
You're in room 6.	(= you are)
He's from Italy.	(= he is)
She's from Brazil.	(= she is)
It's Carlos Moreno.	(= it is)
We're from Australia.	(= we are)
They're from the UK.	(= they are)

WH- QUESTIONS (?)

Where are you from?
Where's he from?
Where's she from?
What's your name?
What are your names?
Where are they from?

TIPS • *you* and *your* are singular and plural.

- We can write *Where's*, *What's*, etc. but not *Where're*, *What're*, etc.

1.2 Subject pronouns and possessive adjectives

1A 9 p9

subject pronouns	I	you	he	she	it	we	they
possessive adjectives	my	your	his	her	its	our	their

TIPS • We use **subject pronouns** with verbs: ***He's** a doctor. **We** live in Paris.*

- We use **possessive adjectives** with nouns: ***My** name's Hanif. It's **her** bag.*

1.3 be (2): negative, yes/no questions and short answers 1B 8 p11

NEGATIVE (-)

- We make negatives with *not*.

I'm not a teacher.

You/We/They **aren't** from the USA. (aren't = are not)

He/She/It **isn't** famous. (isn't = is not)

YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)

SHORT ANSWERS

Am I late?	Yes, you are .	No, you aren't .
Are you from Spain?	Yes, I am .	No, I'm not .
Is he/she a musician?	Yes, he/she is .	No, he/she isn't .
Is it Japanese?	Yes, it is .	No, it isn't .
Are we in room 5?	Yes, we/you are .	No, we/you aren't .
Are you from New York?	Yes, we are .	No, we aren't .
Are they French?	Yes, they are .	No, they aren't .

TIPS • We can also make negatives and negative short answers with *'s* or *'re* + **not**: *She's not famous. You're not from the USA.*

No, you're not. No, she's not, etc.

- We can't say *Yes, you're*. *Yes, I'm*, etc.

REAL WORLD

1.1 Introducing people 1A 2 p8

Bianca, this is Toshi.

Hello, Toshi. Nice to meet you.

You too.

TIP • When a person says *Nice to meet you*, we can say *You too*, *And you*, or *Nice to meet you too*.

1.2 Asking for personal details

1C 5 p13

What's your surname, please?

What's your first name?

What's your nationality?

What's your address?

What's your postcode?

What's your mobile number?

What's your home number?

What's your email address?

TIPS • We can say *surname* or *last name*.

- In phone numbers 0 = *oh* or *zero* and 11 = *double one*.

- We can say *What's your home number?* or *What's your landline (number)?*

- In email addresses we say: . = *dot*, @ = *at*, A = *capital A*.

- *postcode* (UK) = *zip code* (US)

- We say *How old are you?* to ask about age: **A** *How old are you?* **B** *I'm fifty. not I have fifty. or I'm fifty years.*

- If you're not married, you can say you're **single**:
A *Are you married?* **B** *No, I'm single.*

- We say *years old* for things: *My bike's ten years old.* not *My bike's ten.*

1.3 Asking people to repeat things

1C 7 p13

I'm sorry?

Could you say that again, please?

Could you repeat that, please?

VOCABULARY

2.1 Adjectives (1)

2A 1 p16

Match the adjectives to pictures a–n.

- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|--------------------------|
| 1 new | <input type="checkbox"/> | old | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 good | <input type="checkbox"/> | bad | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 cheap | <input type="checkbox"/> | expensive | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 beautiful | <input type="checkbox"/> | ugly | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 easy | <input type="checkbox"/> | difficult | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 big | <input type="checkbox"/> | small | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7 early | <input type="checkbox"/> | late | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8 fast | <input type="checkbox"/> | slow | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 9 young | <input type="checkbox"/> | old | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 10 right | <input type="checkbox"/> | wrong | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 11 nice | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 12 great | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 13 important | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 14 favourite | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |



2.2 Adjective word order and very

2A 2 p16

- We put adjectives **after** the verb *be*: *She's late.*
- We put adjectives **before** a noun: *It's a small bag.*
- We put **very** **before** adjectives: *It's a very difficult question.*
- Adjectives **aren't** plural with plural nouns: *Those are my new shoes.*

2.3 Family 2B 2 p18

♂ male	♀ female	♂♀ male and female
father (dad)	mother (mum)	parents
son /sʌn/	daughter /'dɔ:tə/	children (kids)
brother /'brʌðə/	sister	–
husband	wife (plural: wives)	–
grandfather	grandmother	grandparents
grandson	granddaughter	grandchildren
uncle	aunt /ɑ:nt/	–
cousin /'kʌzən/	cousin	cousins

TIPS • *parents* = mother and father only; *relatives* = all the people in your family.

• *brothers* = men/boys only. We ask: *How many brothers and sisters have you got?*

• **a boyfriend/girlfriend** = a man/woman you have a romantic relationship with.

• We use **How many** (+ noun) to ask about a number: *How many children have you got?*

• *Dad, mum* and *kids* are informal words.

2.4 Time words 2C 1 p20

60 seconds = 1 minute /'mɪnɪt/ 7 days = 1 week
60 minutes = 1 hour 12 months = 1 year
24 hours = 1 day

TIP • We say *two and a half hours* not *two hours and a half*.

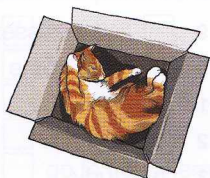
2.5 Things in a house 2D 1 p22

Match the words to a–l in the picture.

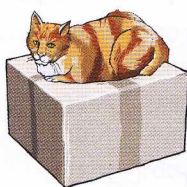
- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> a mirror | 5 <input type="checkbox"/> a door | 9 <input type="checkbox"/> a plant |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> a desk | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> a bookcase | 10 <input type="checkbox"/> a coffee table |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> a sofa | 7 <input type="checkbox"/> a window | 11 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> a lamp |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> a carpet | 8 <input type="checkbox"/> the floor | 12 <input type="checkbox"/> curtains |



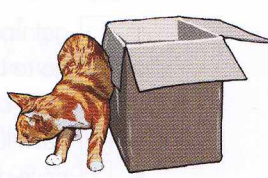
2.6 Prepositions of place 2D 2 p22



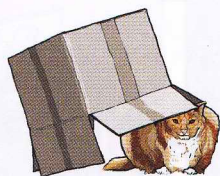
in



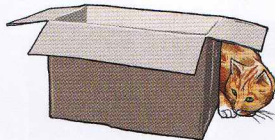
on



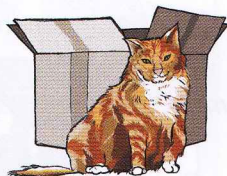
by



under



behind



in front of

GRAMMAR

2.1 have got: positive and negative 2A 5 p16

POSITIVE (+)	NEGATIVE (-)
I've got (= I have got)	I haven't got (= I have not got)
you've got	you haven't got
he's got (= he has got)	he hasn't got (= he has not got)
she's got	she hasn't got
it's got	it hasn't got
we've got	we haven't got
they've got	they haven't got

TIP • We use **any** with plural nouns in negatives: *He hasn't got any DVDs.*

2.2 have got: questions and short answers 2A 10 p17

YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS	
Have I got any letters today?	Yes, you have.	No, you haven't.
Have you got a camera?	Yes, I have.	No, I haven't.
Has he got a DVD player?	Yes, he has.	No, he hasn't.
Has she got a DVD player?	Yes, she has.	No, she hasn't.
Has it got a DVD player?	Yes, it has.	No, it hasn't.
Have we got any CDs?	Yes, we/you have.	No, we/you haven't.
Have they got any cheap TVs?	Yes, they have.	No, they haven't.

TIPS • We use **any** with plural nouns in yes/no questions:
Have you got any DVDs?

• We don't use **got** in short answers:
Yes, I have. not *Yes, I have got.*

WH- QUESTIONS

What have you got in your bag?
What has he/she got in his/her bag?

2.3 Possessive 's 2B 5 p19

- We use a name + **'s** (*Pam's*, etc.) or a noun + **'s** (husband's, etc.) for the possessive:
Jill is Pam's sister. My husband's name is Nick.

TIPS • For plural nouns, we write **s'**:
My parents' names are Mary and Ben.

- **'s** can mean the possessive, **is** or **has**:
Ben is Pam's father. ('s = possessive)
Jill's her sister. ('s = is)
She's got one brother. ('s = has)
- We use **Whose** to ask which person/people a thing belongs to: **A** *Whose mobile phone is it?* **B** *It's Nick's.*

REAL WORLD

2.1 Telling the time 2C 2 3 p20



one o'clock /
one



five past two /
two oh five



ten past three /
three ten



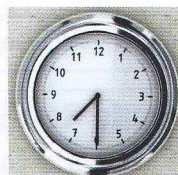
quarter past
four / four fifteen



twenty past
five / five twenty



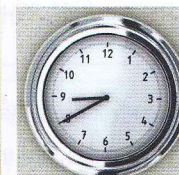
twenty-five past
six / six twenty-five



half past seven /
seven thirty



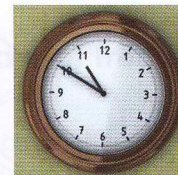
twenty-five to
eight / seven
thirty-five



twenty to nine /
eight forty



quarter to ten /
nine forty-five



ten to eleven /
ten fifty



five to twelve /
eleven fifty-five

TIPS • We can say *quarter past/to six* or *a quarter past/to six*. We don't say *fifteen past six*.

- For other times, we say *minutes*: *nineteen minutes past six* not *nineteen past six*.

Language Summary 3

2.2 Talking about the time 2C 5 p20

QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TIME

What time is it?

It's one o'clock.

What's the time, please?

It's about half past seven.

Excuse me. Have you got the time, please?

Yes, it's four fifteen.

PREPOSITIONS OF TIME

- We use **at** for times: *My English class is at ten.*
- We use **from ... to** for length of time: *My son's class is from seven to nine thirty.*

TIP • a.m. = 0.00–12.00 midday/noon = 12.00
p.m. = 12.00–24.00 midnight = 24.00

2.3 Saying prices 2C 8 p21

£20 = twenty pounds €9 = nine euros /'juərəʊz/
£7.50 = seven pounds fifty €6.50 = six euros fifty
40p = forty p /pi:/ \$35 = thirty-five dollars
£29.99 = twenty-nine ninety-nine 50c = fifty cents /sents/

2.4 Buying tickets at the cinema 2C 11 p21

CUSTOMER

TICKET SELLER

Can I have (two) tickets for (*The Brothers*), please?
(Two) tickets for (*A New Day*), please. One adult and one child.

Yes, of course.

How much is that?
How much are the tickets?

That's (£23), please.
(£11.50) for adults and (£8.45) for children. So that's (£19.95), please.

Here you are. What time is the film?

It starts at (seven fifteen).
It starts in (two minutes).

Right. Thanks a lot.
Thank you very much.

You're welcome. Enjoy the film.

TIPS • We say *How much is* + *this, that* or a singular noun:
How much is that? How much is the exhibition?

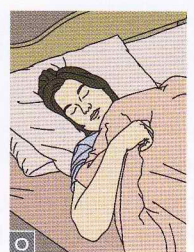
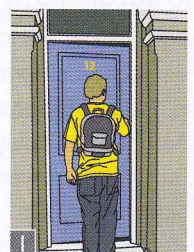
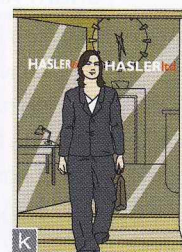
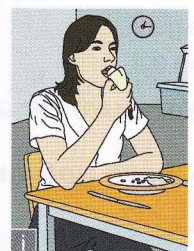
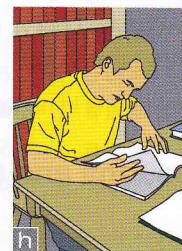
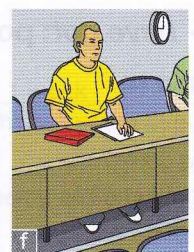
• We say *How much are* + *these, those* or a plural noun:
How much are these? How much are the tickets?

VOCABULARY

3.1 Daily routines 3A 1 p24

Match the words/phrases to pictures a–o.

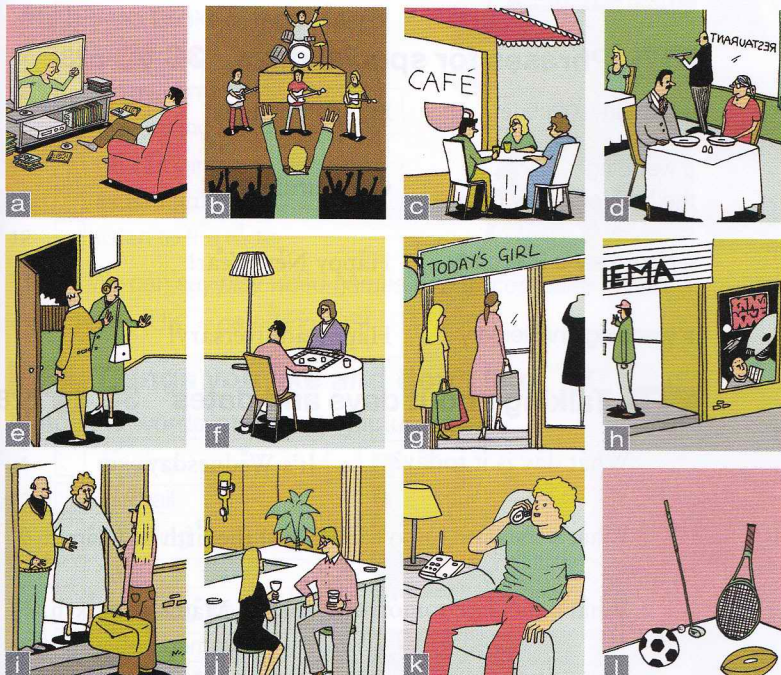
- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> get up | 9 <input type="checkbox"/> finish classes |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> go to bed | 10 <input type="checkbox"/> leave home |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> have breakfast /'brekfəst/ | 11 <input type="checkbox"/> get home |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> have lunch | 12 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> g work |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> have dinner | 13 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> h study |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> start work /wɜ:k/ | 14 <input type="checkbox"/> sleep |
| 7 <input type="checkbox"/> start classes | 15 <input type="checkbox"/> live |
| 8 <input type="checkbox"/> finish work | |



3.2 Free time activities (1) 3B 1 p26

Match the phrases to pictures a–l.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> f stay in | 7 <input type="checkbox"/> go shopping |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> go out (a lot) | 8 <input type="checkbox"/> phone friends/my family |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> eat out | 9 <input type="checkbox"/> visit friends/my family |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> go for a drink | 10 <input type="checkbox"/> have coffee with friends |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> go to the cinema | 11 <input type="checkbox"/> do (a lot of) sport |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> go to concerts | 12 <input type="checkbox"/> watch (a lot of) TV/DVDs |



TIPS • We say: *Do you want to go for a drink?* not *Do you want to drink something?*

- We can say **do sport** or **play sport**: *I play sport at the weekend.*
- We can say **a lot of** + noun or **lots of** + noun: *I do a lot of sport. I watch lots of DVDs.*
- *go to the cinema* (UK) = *go to the movies* (US)

3.3 Time phrases with **on, in, at, every** 3B 9 p27

on	in	at	every
+ day	+ part of the day	+ time	week
Saturday	the morning	nine o'clock	day
Mondays	the afternoon	half past three	month
Monday mornings	the evening	night	night
Sunday afternoon		the weekend	morning
	the week		Sunday afternoon

TIPS • We can use the singular or plural of days, parts of the day and *the weekend* to talk about routines: *I stay in on Monday/Mondays. I go out in the evening/evenings. I work at the weekend/weekends.*

- We don't use a plural with **every**: *every week* not *every weeks*.
- We say **in** the morning/afternoon/evening but **at** night.

3.4 Months 3C 3 p28

January July
February August
March September
April October
May November
June December

TIP • We use *in* with months: *My birthday's in December.*

3.5 Dates 3C 4 p28

1 st	first	17 th	seventeenth
2 nd	second	18 th	eighteenth
3 rd	third	19 th	nineteenth
4 th	fourth	20 th	twentieth
5 th	fifth	21 st	twenty-first
6 th	sixth	22 nd	twenty-second
7 th	seventh	23 rd	twenty-third
8 th	eighth	24 th	twenty-fourth
9 th	ninth	25 th	twenty-fifth
10 th	tenth	26 th	twenty-sixth
11 th	eleventh	27 th	twenty-seventh
12 th	twelfth	28 th	twenty-eighth
13 th	thirteenth	29 th	twenty-ninth
14 th	fourteenth	30 th	thirtieth
15 th	fifteenth	31 st	thirty-first
16 th	sixteenth		

3.6 Frequency adverbs 3D 1 p30



3.7 Word order of frequency adverbs 3D 4 p30

- Frequency adverbs go **after** the verb *be*:
*I'm **always** happy and I have a lot of energy.*
- Frequency adverbs go **before** other verbs:
*I **sometimes** get up before 9 a.m.*

TIPS • We can use *always, usually* and *often* with negative verb forms: *I **don't** often eat out.*

- We can't use *sometimes, hardly ever* or *never* with negative verb forms: *We **don't** sometimes watch TV.*

3.1 Present Simple (1): positive

(I/you/we/they) **3A 4** p24

- We use the Present Simple to talk about daily routines.
- The Present Simple positive is the same for *I*, *you*, *we* and *they*.

I **get up** at 4.30 in the morning.

You **get up** very early.

We **start** work at about 7.00.

They **have** an hour for lunch.

3.2 Present Simple (1): Wh- questions

(I/you/we/they) **3A 9** p25

question word	auxiliary	subject	infinitive	
What time	do	you	get up?	
When	do	you	have	lunch?
When	do	you	finish	work?
What time	do	you	get	home?
Where	do	you	have	dinner?

TIP • Present Simple questions are the same for *I*, *you*, *we* and *they*: *Who do I ask?* *When do we start classes?* *What time do they have lunch?*

3.3 Present Simple (2): negative

(I/you/we/they) **3B 4** p26

- In Present Simple negative sentences with *I*, *you*, *we* and *they* we use:

subject + don't (= do not) + infinitive

subject	auxiliary	infinitive	
I	don't	go out	on Saturday evening.
You	don't	work	in this office.
We	don't	stay in	at the weekend.
They	don't	watch	TV in the day.

3.4 Present Simple (2): yes/no questions and short answers (I/you/we/they)

3B 6 p27

YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)				SHORT ANSWERS
auxiliary	subject	infinitive		
Do	you	eat out	a lot?	Yes, I do . No, I don't .
Do	you	go	to concerts?	Yes, we do . No, we don't .
Do	they	watch	TV a lot?	Yes, they do . No, they don't .

3.5 Subject and object pronouns **3D 6** p31

subject pronouns	I	you	he	she	it	we	they
object pronouns	me	you	him	her	it	us	them

TIP • In positive and negative sentences, **subject pronouns** go **before** the verb and **object pronouns** go **after** the verb: *I often see him on Saturday.* *They don't usually call her in the morning.*

REAL WORLD

3.1 Phrases for special days **3C 2** p28

a birthday /'bɜːθdeɪ/	Happy birthday!
a wedding the birth of a new baby	Congratulations!
a New Year's Eve party	Happy New Year!
a wedding anniversary	Happy anniversary!

3.2 Talking about days and dates **3C 5** p28

What day is it today?	It's Wednesday.
What's the date today?	(It's) the fifth of March.
What's the date tomorrow?	(It's) March the sixth.
When's your birthday?	(It's on) June the third.

TIPS • We say: **the fifth of** March or March **the fifth**. We write: *5th March* or *March 5th*.

• We use **on** with dates: *My birthday's on December 30th.*

• In the UK, 3.7.17 = 3rd July 2017 (day/month/year).
In the USA, 3.7.17 = 7th March 2017 (month/day/year).

3.3 Suggestions **3C 9** p29

What shall we get her?	What about (an MP3 player)?
X No, I don't think so.	Why don't we get her (a book)?
X✓ Maybe.	Let's get her (a DVD).
✓ Yes, that's a good idea.	

TIPS • We can say **get** or **buy**: *What shall we get/buy her?*

• We use the infinitive after *What shall we ... ?* and *Let's ...*:
What shall we do tonight? *Let's go to the cinema.*

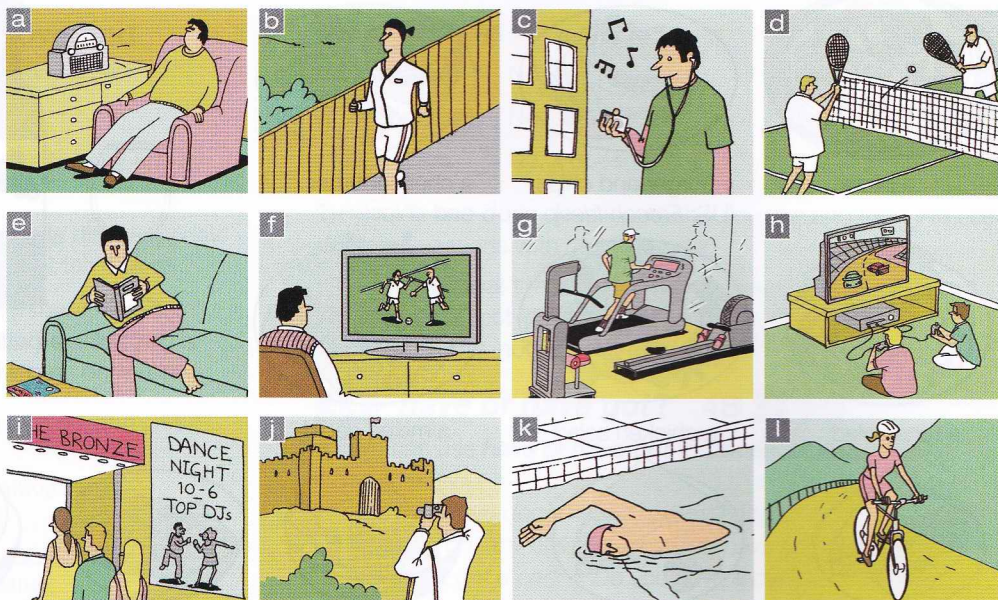
VOCABULARY

4.1 Free time activities (2)

4A 1 p32

Match the phrases to pictures a–l.

- 1 ☐ take photos
- 2 ☐ go to the gym
- 3 ☐ watch sport on TV
- 4 ☐ play video games
- 5 ☐ play tennis
- 6 ☐ read books or magazines
- 7 ☐ go cycling
- 8 ☐ go swimming
- 9 ☐ go running
- 10 ☐ go clubbing
- 11 ☐ listen to music
- 12 ☐ listen to the radio



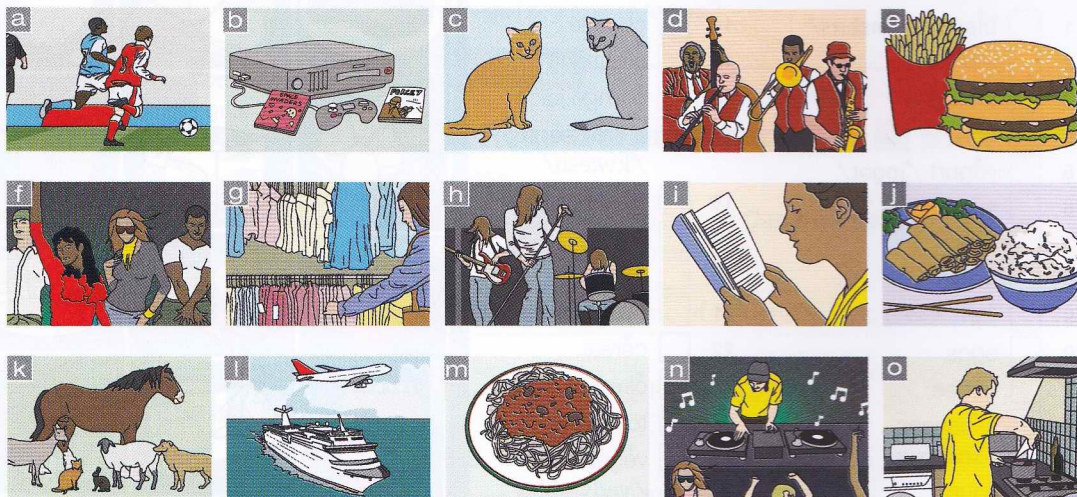
TIPS • We can say *play video games* or *play computer games*.

• *go cycling* (UK) = *go biking* (US)

4.2 Things you like and don't like 4B 1 p34

Match the words/phrases to pictures a–o.

- 1 ☐ reading
- 2 ☐ football
- 3 ☐ travelling
- 4 ☐ cats
- 5 ☐ shopping for clothes
- 6 ☐ video games
- 7 ☐ animals
- 8 ☐ dancing
- 9 ☐ cooking
- 10 ☐ dance music
- 11 ☐ rock music
- 12 ☐ jazz
- 13 ☐ Italian food
- 14 ☐ Chinese food
- 15 ☐ fast food



4.3 like/love/hate 4B 2 p34

😊 I love ...

😊 I really like ...

😊 I like ...

😊 I quite like ...

😊 ... is/are OK.

😞 I don't like ...

😞 I hate ...

4.4 Verb+ing 4B 3 p34

verb + verb+ing

I love **reading**.
I really like **travelling**.
I don't like **shopping** for clothes.
I hate **cooking**.

verb + noun

I love **rock music**.
I like **books**.
I quite like **Italian food**.
I don't like **video games**.

TIPS • We use **enjoy** + verb+ing to say we like doing something:
I enjoy travelling.

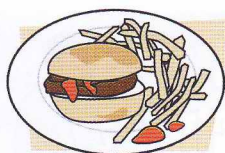
• We don't use *the* to talk about things we like/don't like in general:
I love books. (= books in general). *He doesn't like cats.* (= cats in general).

• We often use **very much** with *like*. We put it after the noun or verb+ing:
I like reading very much. not *I like very much reading.*

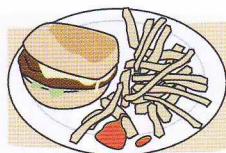
4.5 Food and drink (1) 4C 2 p36



a pizza



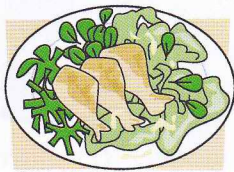
a burger and chips
(US: French fries)



a cheeseburger
and chips



a tuna salad



a chicken salad



a mixed salad



a glass of
white wine



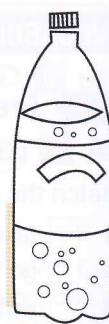
a bottle of
red wine



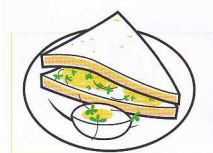
a bottle
of beer



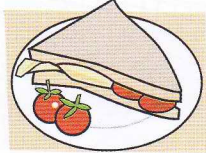
a bottle of
still mineral
water



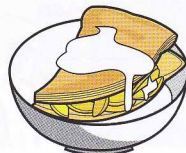
a bottle of
sparkling
mineral
water



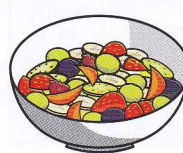
an egg mayonnaise
sandwich



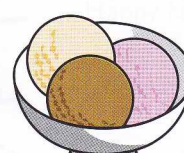
a cheese and tomato
sandwich



apple pie with cream



fruit salad



vanilla, strawberry,
chocolate ice cream



tea and coffee

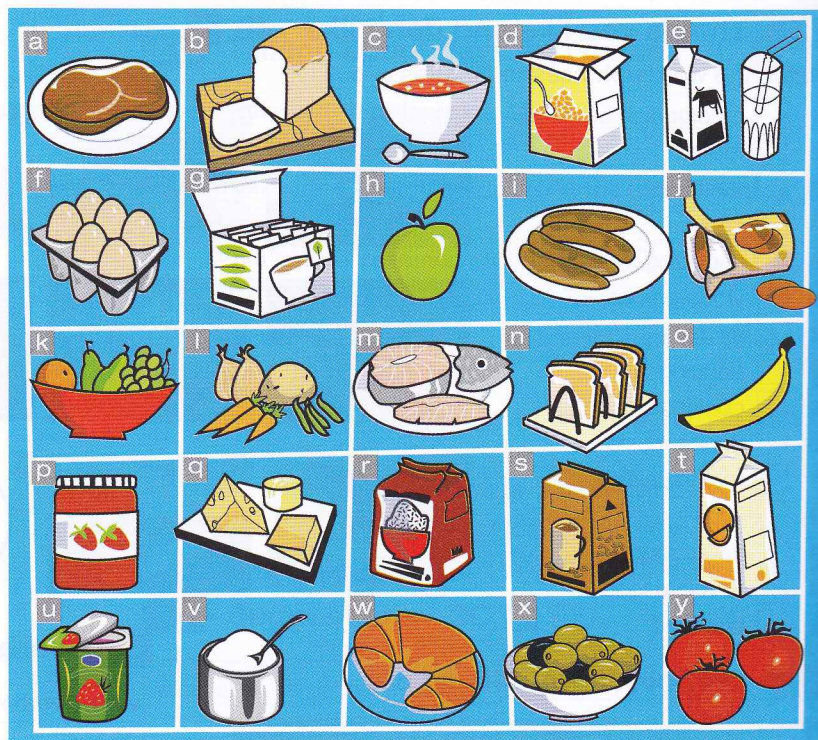
4.6 Food and drink (2) 4D 1 p38

Match the words to pictures a–y.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> biscuits /'bɪskɪts/ | 14 <input type="checkbox"/> cheese |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> milk | 15 <input type="checkbox"/> a banana |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> an apple | 16 <input type="checkbox"/> orange juice |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> rice | 17 <input type="checkbox"/> a croissant
/'kwæsn/ |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> yogurt /'jɒɡət/ | 18 <input type="checkbox"/> tea |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> sugar | 19 <input type="checkbox"/> jam |
| 7 <input type="checkbox"/> toast | 20 <input type="checkbox"/> meat |
| 8 <input type="checkbox"/> bread | 21 <input type="checkbox"/> fruit |
| 9 <input type="checkbox"/> fish | 22 <input type="checkbox"/> cereal |
| 10 <input type="checkbox"/> eggs | 23 <input type="checkbox"/> olives |
| 11 <input type="checkbox"/> coffee | 24 <input type="checkbox"/> tomatoes |
| 12 <input type="checkbox"/> sausages
/'sɒsɪdʒɪz/ | 25 <input type="checkbox"/> vegetables
/'vedʒtəblz/ |
| 13 <input type="checkbox"/> soup | |

TIPS • biscuits (UK) = cookies (US)

• jam (UK) = jelly (US)



4.7 Countable and uncountable nouns 4D 5 p38

COUNTABLE NOUNS

- Countable nouns have a plural form: *biscuits*, *apples*.
- We use *a* or *an* with singular countable nouns: *a biscuit*, *an apple*.
- We don't use *a* or *an* with plural countable nouns: *biscuits* not *a-biscuits*, *apples* not *an-apples*.

TIP • Some nouns can be countable and uncountable: *I like coffee*. (uncountable = coffee in general) *Can I have a coffee, please?* (countable = a cup of coffee)

UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

- Uncountable nouns aren't usually plural: *milk* not *milks*, *rice* not *rices*.
- We don't use *a* or *an* with uncountable nouns: *milk* not *a-milk*, *rice* not *a-rice*.

4.1 Present Simple (3): positive and negative (he/she/it) 4A 5 p32

POSITIVE (+)

- In Present Simple positive sentences with *he, she* and *it* we add **-s** or **-es** to the infinitive.

He **plays** video games. She **emails** him every day.
He **watches** lots of DVDs. It **starts** at ten o'clock..

TIP • The verb *have* is irregular. We say *he/she/it has*, not *he/she/it haves*: *He has tennis lessons every week.*

NEGATIVE (-)

- In Present Simple negative sentences with *he, she* and *it* we use:

subject + doesn't (= does not) + infinitive

subject	auxiliary	infinitive	
He	doesn't	like	the weather.
She	doesn't	talk	to him very often.
It	doesn't	start	at ten thirty.

4.2 Present Simple (3) positive: spelling rules (he/she/it) 4A 6 p33

spelling rule	examples
most verbs: add -s	plays writes phones gets starts lives
verbs ending in -ch, -sh, -s, -ss, -x or -z: add -es	watches /'wɒtʃɪz/ finishes /'fɪnɪʃɪz/
verbs ending in consonant + y: -y → -ies	studies
the verbs <i>go</i> and <i>do</i> : add -es	goes does /dʌz/
the verb <i>have</i> is irregular	has

4.3 Present Simple (4): questions and short answers (he/she/it) 4B 7 p35

QUESTIONS (?)

question word	auxiliary	subject	infinitive	
What	does	she	do	in her free time?
	Does	she	watch	TV a lot?
	Does	she	like	films?
What (music)	does	she	like?	

- Present Simple questions are the same for *he, she* and *it*:
Where does he live? What time does it start?
Does she like football? Does it start at nine o'clock?

TIP • We sometimes use a noun with some question words (What, How many, etc.): *What music do you like? How many children have you got?*

SHORT ANSWERS

Yes, he does .	No, he doesn't .
Yes, she does .	No, she doesn't .
Yes, it does .	No, it doesn't .

TIPS • We use **do** in questions with *I, you, we* and *they*. We use **does** in questions with *he, she* and *it*.

- We don't repeat the verb in short answers:
Yes, she does. not *Yes, she likes.*
No, she doesn't. not *No, she doesn't like.*

4.4 have or have got? 4B 7 p35

- We can use **have** or **have got** to talk about possessions and family:

She's got two dogs. = *She has two dogs.*
I haven't got any children. = *I don't have any children.*
Have you got a car? = *Do you have a car?*

- We can only use **have** to talk about meals and other activities:

I don't have breakfast. not *I haven't got breakfast.*
We often have coffee with friends. not *We often have got coffee with friends.*
Do you want to have a game of tennis? not *Do you want to have got a game of tennis?*

REAL WORLD

4.1 Requests and offers 4C 7 p37

REQUESTS

- We use **I'd/We'd like ...** and **Can I/we have ... ?** for requests (we want something).

I'd/We'd like a bottle of mineral water, please.

Can I/we have the bill, please?

OFFERS

- We use **Would you like ... ?** for offers (we want to give something or help someone).

Would you like to order now?

What would you like to drink?

TIPS • *I'd like* = *I would like*; *We'd like* = *We would like*.

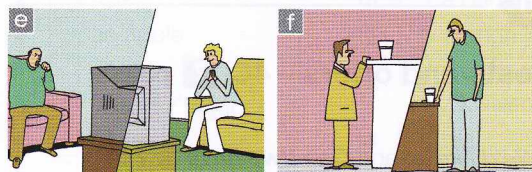
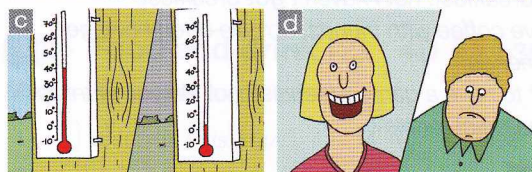
- We use a noun after **Can I/we have ... ?**: *Can I have the bill, please?*
- We use a noun or the infinitive with **to** after **Would you like ... ?** and **I'd/We'd like ...**: *Would you like a dessert?* *I'd like to order now, please.*
- the bill* (UK) = *the check* (US)

VOCABULARY

5.1 Adjectives (2) 5A 1 p40

Match these pairs of words to pictures a-j.

- | | | | |
|----|----------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 | hot | <input type="checkbox"/> | cold |
| 2 | noisy | <input type="checkbox"/> | quiet |
| 3 | well | <input type="checkbox"/> | ill |
| 4 | short | <input type="checkbox"/> | tall |
| 5 | lucky | <input type="checkbox"/> | unlucky |
| 6 | different | <input type="checkbox"/> | the same |
| 7 | happy | <input type="checkbox"/> | unhappy |
| 8 | boring | <input type="checkbox"/> | interesting |
| 9 | friendly | <input type="checkbox"/> | unfriendly |
| 10 | terrible/awful | <input type="checkbox"/> | fantastic/amazing/wonderful |



5.2 Years 5A 9 p41

- 1835 = eighteen thirty-five
 1900 = nineteen hundred
 1990 = nineteen ninety
 2000 = two thousand
 2005 = two thousand and five
 2018 = twenty eighteen

TIPS • We use *in* with years: *I was born in 1990.*

• 2000–2009 = *two thousand, two thousand and one, two thousand and two*, etc.

• 2010–2099 = *twenty ten, twenty eleven*, etc.

5.3 Life events 5B 1 p42

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| leave school/university | have children/a dream |
| meet my husband/my wife | move house/to a different country |
| get married/divorced | study English/physics |
| make a film/a lot of money | write a book/a letter |
| become a film director/famous | win an Oscar/the lottery |

TIP • a *film* (UK) = a *movie* (US)

5.4 Weekend activities 5C 1 p44

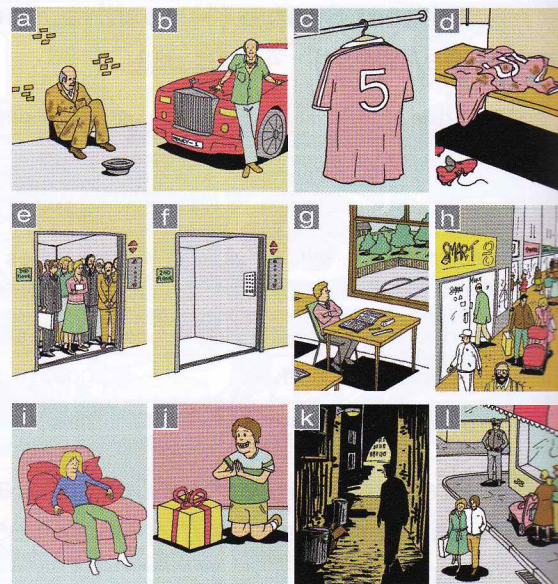
- | | |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| go for a walk | go away for the weekend |
| go for a run | go away for a couple of days |
| clean the car | have a great time |
| clean the house | have a bad cold |
| do the washing | go to a party |
| do your homework | go to your parents' house for lunch |
| write an email | stay with friends |
| write a report | stay at home all weekend |

TIP • *do the washing* (UK) = *do the laundry* (US)

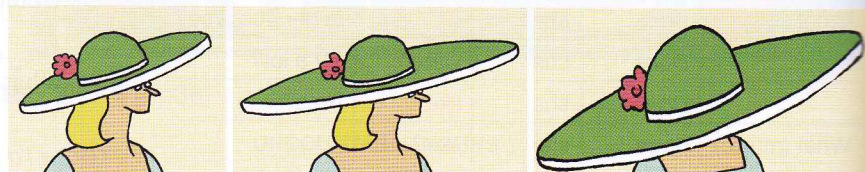
5.5 Adjectives (3) 5D 1 p46

Match these adjectives to pictures a–l.

- | | | |
|----|-------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | bored /bɔ:d/ |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | crowded |
| 3 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | busy /'bɪzi/ |
| 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | comfortable |
| 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | dirty |
| 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | rich |
| 7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | dangerous |
| 8 | <input type="checkbox"/> | clean |
| 9 | <input type="checkbox"/> | poor |
| 10 | <input type="checkbox"/> | excited |
| 11 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | safe |
| 12 | <input type="checkbox"/> | empty |



5.6 Adjectives with *very*, *really*, *quite*, *too* 5D 4 p47



It's **quite** big.

It's **very/really** big.

It's **too** big.

- *Too* has a negative meaning. It means *more than you want*.
- *Very*, *really*, *quite* and *too* come **after** the verb *be* and **before** adjectives:
I was really excited. The restaurant was quite dirty.

TIP • We don't use *too* to mean *very very*: *She's really happy.* not *She's too happy.*

5.1 Past Simple (1): be (positive and negative) 5A 3 p40

POSITIVE (+)	NEGATIVE (-)
I was	I wasn't (= was not)
you/we/they were	you/we/they weren't (= were not)
he/she/it was	he/she/it wasn't

It **was** a fantastic party!
 About thirty people **were** here.
 Robert **wasn't** here because he was ill.
 My two brothers **weren't** here.

5.2 Past Simple (1): be (questions and short answers) 5A 7 p41

QUESTIONS (?)

question word	was/were	subject	
When	was	Albert's 13 th birthday?	
Where	was	the party?	
	Were	his friends	there?
	Was	the food	good?
Where	were	his grandparents?	

SHORT ANSWERS

Yes, I/he/she/it was .	No, I/he/she/it wasn't .
Yes, you/we/they were .	No, you/we/they weren't .

WAS BORN/WERE BORN

When were you born?	I was born in 1940.
Where was Matt born?	He was born in Liverpool.

TIP • We say *I was born in 1940*. not ~~*I born in 1940*~~.

5.3 Past Simple (2): regular and irregular verbs (positive) 5B 4 p42

- We use the Past Simple to talk about the past. We know when these things happened.
- The Past Simple positive is the same for all subjects (*I, you, he, she, it, we, they*).

regular verbs: spelling rule	examples
most regular verbs: add -ed	wanted worked started visited
regular verbs ending in -e: add -d	moved loved
regular verbs ending in consonant + y: -y → -i and add -ed	studied married
regular verbs ending in consonant + vowel + consonant: double the last consonant	stopped

TIP • There are no rules for **irregular verbs**. There is an Irregular Verb List on p167.

5.4 Past Simple (2): Wh- questions 5B 9 p43

- Past Simple questions are the same for all subjects (*I, you, he, she, it, we, they*).

question word	auxiliary	subject	infinitive	
What	did	James	study	at university?
When	did	he	make	<i>Terminator 2</i> ?
Which (film)	did	he	make	in 3D in 2009?
Who	did	he	marry	in 1997?

TIP • Notice the difference between these questions:
*Where **do** you live?* (Present Simple)
*Where **did** you live?* (Past Simple).

REAL WORLD

5.1 Showing interest 5C 4 p45

I'm happy for you.	I'm sorry for you.	I'm surprised.	I'm not surprised.
Oh, nice. Oh, great!	Oh, dear. What a shame.	Wow! Really? You're joking!	Oh, right.

5.2 Asking follow-up questions 5C 6 p45

QUESTIONS YOU CAN ASK SOMEONE WHO ...

... WAS ILL AT THE WEEKEND

What was wrong?
 Are you OK now?

... STAYED AT HOME

What did you do?

... WENT TO THE CINEMA

What did you see?
 What was it like?
 Who did you go with?

... WENT AWAY FOR THE WEEKEND

What was it like?
 Where did you go?
 Who did you go with?
 Where did you stay?

VOCABULARY

6.1 The internet 6A 1 p48

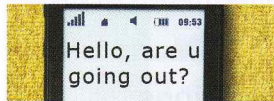
use the internet
send emails
get emails
read a blog
download videos or music

go online
have a favourite website
chat to your friends online
have WiFi
use a search engine

TIPS • We can say *get emails* or *receive emails*.

- We *download music* or *videos onto* a computer/laptop. The opposite of *download* is *upload*.
- We can say *chat to* someone or *chat with* someone.
- Google is a popular *search engine*. We can also use *google* as a verb: *Why don't you google it?*
- *Email, download, video, chat* and *blog* can be nouns or verbs: *I email my brother a lot. She blogs every day.*

6.2 Mobile phones and TVs 6B 1 p50



send/get a text



charge your phone



GPS



a channel



a TV programme



a battery



an app



turn on



turn off



record

TIPS • You can *get* or *receive a text*. *Text* is also a regular verb: *He texted me yesterday.*

- You use *a charger* to charge your mobile phone.
- *TV programme* (UK) = *TV show* (US)

6.3 Past time phrases 6B 2 p50

AGO

- We use **ago** to talk about a time in the past. We use it with the Past Simple: *I met him two years ago.* (= two years before now).

LAST

- We use **last** to say the day, week, etc. in the past nearest to now: *I met him last Friday.* (= the Friday before now).

- We use **last** with **days** (*last Monday*), **months** (*last March*) and in these phrases: *last night, last week, last weekend, last month, last year, last century.*

TIPS • We say *last night*, but *yesterday morning/afternoon/evening* not *last morning*, etc.

- We don't use a preposition with *last*: *last year* not *in last year*.

IN

- We use **in** with **years** (*in 1986*) and **months** (*in May*).
- We use **in the** with **decades** (*in the nineties*) and **centuries** (*in the eighteenth century*).

TIPS • We can use **on** with **days** (*on Monday*) to mean *last*: *I met him on Monday.* = *I met him last Monday.*

- *the day before yesterday* = two days ago

6.4 Verbs from news stories 6C 2 p52

REGULAR VERBS



damage /'dæmɪdʒ/



sail



die



receive



crash



save

IRREGULAR VERBS



buy (bought /bɔ:t/)



lose /lu:z/ (lost)



find (found)



put (put)



say (said /sed/)



tell (told)

6.5 Articles: a, an and the 6D 4 p55

- We use **the** when we know which thing, person, place, etc. because there is only one: *People call him **the** father of video games.*
- We use **a** or **an** to talk about things or people for the first time: *The story always has **a** hero, **a** princess and **a** villain.*
- We use **the** to talk about a person or a thing for the second, third, etc. time: ***The** villain wants to marry **the** princess.*

TIPS • We use **the** in some fixed phrases: *at **the** weekend, in **the** evening, go to **the** cinema*, etc.

- We also use **the** with *first, second, third*, etc.: *Shigeru designed **the** first Mario Brothers game in 1983.*

6.1 Past Simple (3): negative 6A 3 p48

- To make the Past Simple negative of *be*, we use *wasn't* or *weren't* (see GRAMMAR 5.1):

In the early days of the internet, search engines weren't very good and it wasn't easy for people to find the information they wanted.

To make the Past Simple negative of all other verbs, we use:
subject + didn't (= did not) + infinitive

subject	auxiliary	infinitive	
They	didn't	like	each other at first.
They	didn't	finish	their course.
They	didn't	have	any money.

TIP • We use *didn't* for all subjects (*I, you, he, she, it, we, they*):

I didn't go out last night.

He didn't call me yesterday.

6.2 Past Simple (3): yes/no questions and short answers 6A 8 p49

YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)

auxiliary	subject	infinitive	
Did	you	go	to the cinema last week?
Did	Sergey	leave	Russia in 1978?
Did	he	go	to Maryland University?
Did	his parents	teach	computer science?

SHORT ANSWERS

Yes, I did .	No, I didn't .
Yes, you did .	No, you didn't .
Yes, he/she/it did .	No, he/she/it didn't .
Yes, we did .	No, we didn't .
Yes, they did .	No, they didn't .

TIP • Past Simple yes/no questions and short answers are the same for all subjects (*I, you, he, she, it, we, they*):

A *Did you go shopping last weekend?*

B *Yes, I did./No, I didn't.*

6.3 can/can't; could/couldn't 6B 4 p51

POSITIVE (+)

- We use **can + infinitive** to say that something is possible in the present.
You **can choose** from hundreds of TV channels.
You **can watch** TV programmes online.
- We use **could + infinitive** to say that something was possible in the past.
In the seventies you **could** only **get** three channels.
I **could watch** all my favourite programmes in colour!

NEGATIVE (-)

- The negative of *can* is **can't** (= *cannot*).
My son and daughter **can't understand** how people lived without them.
I **can't explain** this to my kids.
- The negative of *could* is **couldn't** (= *could not*).
You **couldn't record** TV programmes.
You **couldn't watch** TV all night.

TIPS • *Can/can't* and *could/couldn't* are the same for all subjects (*I, you, he, she, it, we, they*).

• We sometimes use *you* to mean 'people in general': *You could only get three channels.* = *People could only get three channels.*

YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS
Can you watch TV online?	Yes, you can . No, you can't .
Could you record programmes in 1974?	Yes, you could . No, you couldn't .

- Yes/No questions and short answers with *can/could* are the same for all subjects (*I, you, he, she, it, we, they*):
A *Can he/she download videos?* **B** *Yes, he/she can.*
A *Could they record programmes?* **B** *No, they couldn't.*

- We can also use question words (*What, How many, etc.*) with *can/could*: *How many channels can/could you get?*

TIPS • We don't use *do, does* or *did* in questions with *can/could*:
Can you watch TV online? not ~~*Do you can watch TV online?*~~

• We can also use *can/could* for ability in the present and the past: *My sister can speak Russian. How many languages could your grandfather speak?*

• We also use *can* for requests (*Can you help me?*) and offers (*Can I help you?*).

REAL WORLD

6.1 Talking about the news 6C 9 p53

- To start a conversation about the news, we can say:

Did you hear about that train crash?

No, where was it?

Did you read about the eighty-year-old couple and their boat?

No, what happened?

- To respond to good, bad and surprising news, we can say:

good news	bad news	surprising news
Oh, that's good.	Oh no, that's terrible. Yes, isn't it awful? Oh, dear. Are they OK?	Really? You're joking!

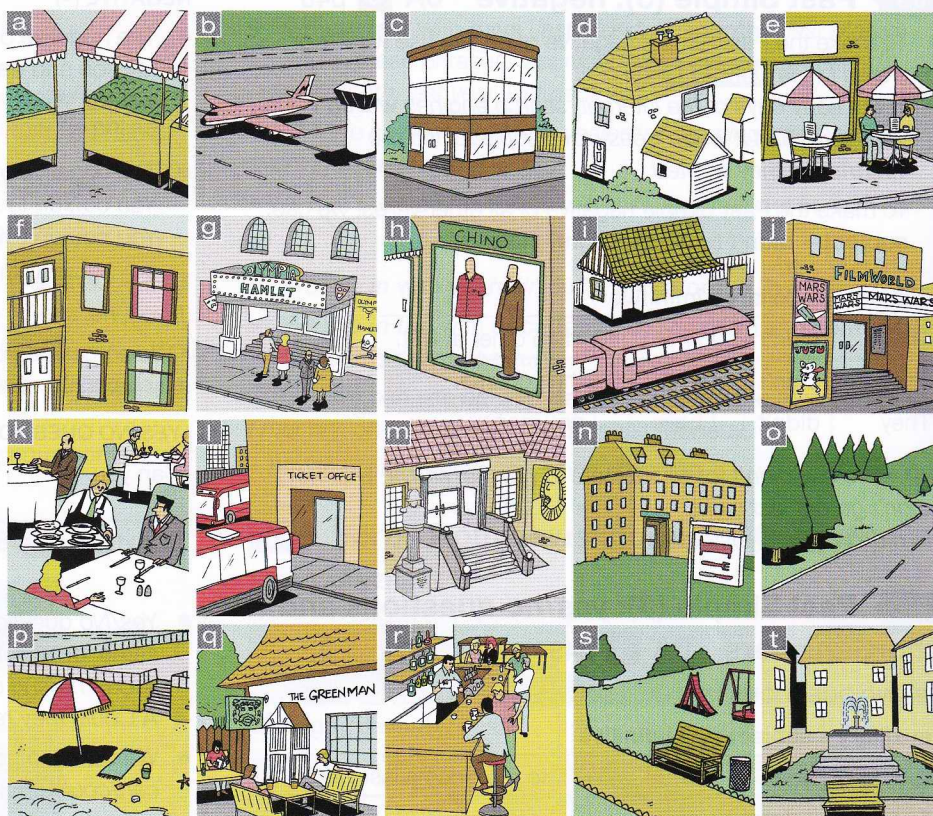
TIP • *News* is a singular noun. We say: *The news is terrible.* not *The news are terrible.*

VOCABULARY

7.1 Places in a town 7A 1 p56

Match the words to pictures a–t.

- 1 ☒ c a building
- 2 ☐ a house
- 3 ☐ a flat
- 4 ☐ a square /skweə/
- 5 ☐ a market
- 6 ☐ a station
- 7 ☐ a bus station
- 8 ☐ a park
- 9 ☐ a museum
- 10 ☐ a theatre
- 11 ☐ a cinema
- 12 ☐ a hotel
- 13 ☐ a café
- 14 ☐ a shop
- 15 ☐ a restaurant
- 16 ☐ a bar
- 17 ☐ a pub
- 18 ☐ an airport
- 19 ☐ a beach
- 20 ☐ a road



TIPS • We can say a station or a train station.

• a flat (UK) = an apartment (US); a cinema (UK) = a movie theatre (US)

7.2 Rooms and things in a house 7B 2 p58

Do you remember the things in the flat in Park Road? Check on p58.

rooms	furniture /'fɜːnɪʃə/ and other things in a house
in the kitchen	a fridge /'frɪdʒ/, a cooker, a sink, a washing machine, a table, four chairs, cupboards /'kʌbədʒ/
in the living room	a coffee table, two plants, a sofa, two armchairs
in the bathroom	a bath, a shower, a toilet, a washbasin
in the bedrooms	a double bed, a single bed, a desk, a plant, a chair, a shelf
on the balcony	three plants, a table, two chairs

TIP • The plural of shelf is shelves.

7.3 Shops 7C 1 p60



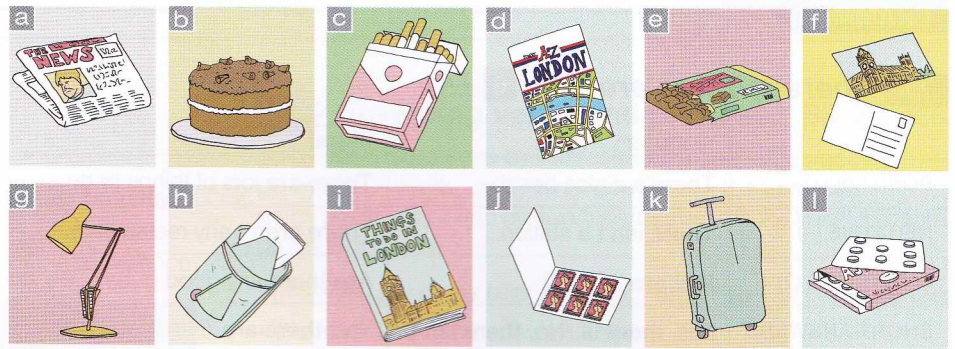
TIPS • We use **in** or **at** with shops: You can buy magazines **in/at** a newsagent's. But we say: **at** a kiosk not **in** a kiosk.

• a shop (UK) = a store (US); a chemist's (UK) = a pharmacy (US)

7.4 Things to buy 7C 3 p60

Match the words to pictures a–l.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> stamps | 7 <input type="checkbox"/> postcards |
| 2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> a map | 8 <input type="checkbox"/> a cake |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> a suitcase | 9 <input type="checkbox"/> a guide book |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> tissues | 10 <input type="checkbox"/> a newspaper |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> aspirin | 11 <input type="checkbox"/> cigarettes |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> a lamp | 12 <input type="checkbox"/> chocolate
/ˈtʃɒklət/ |



7.5 Clothes 7D 1 p62

Match the words to pictures a–s.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> trousers | 11 <input type="checkbox"/> a hat |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> shorts | 12 <input type="checkbox"/> a tie |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> jeans | 13 <input type="checkbox"/> boots |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> a dress | 14 <input type="checkbox"/> socks |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> shoes | 15 <input type="checkbox"/> a T-shirt |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> a suit /su:t/ | 16 <input type="checkbox"/> a top |
| 7 <input type="checkbox"/> a skirt /skɜ:t/ | 17 <input type="checkbox"/> a coat |
| 8 <input type="checkbox"/> a jumper | 18 <input type="checkbox"/> a cap |
| 9 <input type="checkbox"/> trainers | 19 <input type="checkbox"/> a shirt /ʃɜ:t/ |
| 10 <input type="checkbox"/> a jacket | |

TIPS • We can say a *jumper* or a *sweater*.

• *trousers* (UK) = *pants* (US)

• *trainers* (UK) = *sneakers* (US)

7.6 Colours 7D 2 p62



7.7 Plural nouns 7D 4 p62

nouns that look plural
but can mean 'one thing'

jeans
shorts
trousers

nouns that can be
singular or plural

a shoe/shoes
a sock/socks
a boot/boots
a trainer/trainers

• We use **are** with plural nouns that mean 'one thing': *Those jeans are nice. These trousers are very big.*

• We use **some** or **any** with nouns that mean 'one thing': *I want some new shorts. Have you got any black jeans?*

TIPS • We can use **a pair of** ... with both types of plural noun: *I've got a pair of red jeans/shoes.*

• The word *clothes* /ˈkloʊðz/ is always plural: *These clothes are quite expensive. If we want to use the singular, we can say an item of clothing.*

GRAMMAR

7.1 → **there is/there are** 7A 6 p57

	singular	plural
POSITIVE (+)	There's a nice beach.	There are lots of things to do.
NEGATIVE (-)	There isn't a station.	There aren't any restaurants.
QUESTIONS (?)	Is there a hotel?	Are there any good pubs?
SHORT ANSWERS	Yes, there is./No, there isn't.	Yes, there are./No, there aren't.

TIPS • We use **any** in negatives and questions with *there are*: *There aren't any restaurants.*

- We can say **lots of** or **a lot of**: *There are lots of/a lot of beautiful old buildings.*
- We can also make negative sentences with **no**: *There are no shops.* = *There aren't any shops.*
- The Past Simple of *there is* and *there are* is **there was** and **there were**: *There was a party last weekend. There were a lot of people at the party.*

7.2 → **How much ... ? and How many ... ?** 7B 4 p58

- We use **How many ... ?** with **plural countable** nouns (*tables, bedrooms, people, chairs, plants, etc.*):
How many bedrooms are there? How many people are in this room?
- We use **How much ... ?** with **uncountable** nouns (*furniture, money, space, time, etc.*):
How much space is there in the flat? How much furniture have you got?

TIP • When we ask about prices we say: *How much is that?* not ~~*How much money is that?*~~: **A** *How much is that?* **B** *It's £25.*

7.3 → **some, any, a** 7B 7 p59

- We use **a** (or **an**) in **positive** sentences, **negatives** and **questions** with singular countable nouns.
- We usually use **some** in **positive** sentences with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns.
- We usually use **any** in **negatives** and **questions** with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns.

	singular countable nouns	plural countable nouns	uncountable nouns
POSITIVE (+)	There's a cooker.	There are some chairs.	We'd like some information.
NEGATIVE (-)	There isn't a TV.	We haven't got any children.	I haven't got any money.
QUESTIONS (?)	Has it got a shower?	Are there any shops?	Is there any furniture?

REAL WORLD

7.1 → **What sales assistants say** 7C 5 p60

Can I help you?
Do you need any help?
Yes, they're over there.
They're on the (second) floor.
Anything else?
Would you like anything else?
That's (£17.50), please.
Your pin number, please.
Would you like a bag?
Here's your change and your receipt. /rɪ'si:t/

TIPS • *the ground floor* (UK) = *the first floor* (US)

- We say *the ground floor, the first floor, the second floor, etc.*

7.2 → **What customers say** 7C 6 p61

SAYING WHAT YOU WANT

Have you got any (guide books for London)?
Can I have (four stamps for Europe), please?
Do you sell (suitcases)?
I'll have this one, please.

ASKING ABOUT PRICES

How much is this (map)?
How much are these (lamps)?

OTHER USEFUL PHRASES

No, that's all, thanks.
Here you are.
Thanks for your help.

TIPS • We use **one** in place of a singular noun:

A *Would you like a bag?* **B** *No, thanks. I've got one.*

- We use **ones** in place of a plural noun:

A *How much are these lamps?* **B** *The big ones are £25.*

VOCABULARY

8.1 Work 8A 1 p64

Match the words to pictures a-i.

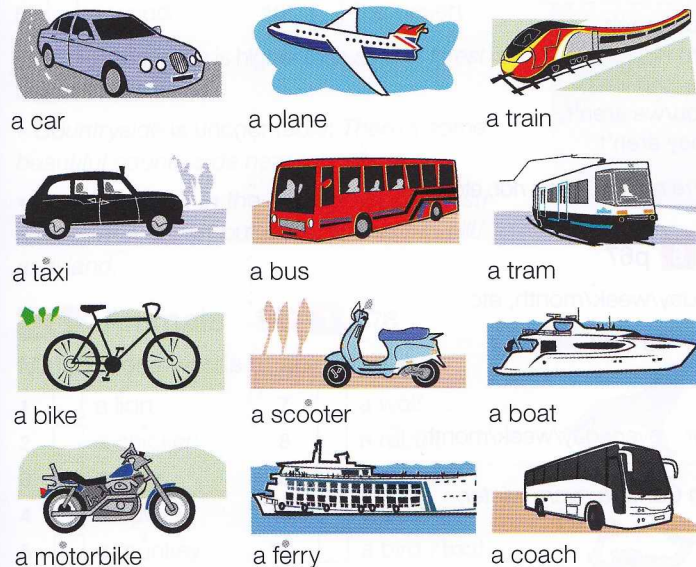
- | | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> a customer | 4 <input type="checkbox"/> a letter | 7 <input type="checkbox"/> a company |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> a report | 5 <input type="checkbox"/> a message | 8 <input type="checkbox"/> a meeting |
| 3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> notes | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> a contract | 9 <input type="checkbox"/> a conference |



TIPS • We can **take** notes and **take** a message.

- We can **sign** a letter and **sign** a contract.
- We **work for** a company and **work in** an office.
- We **write to** a customer and **write to** a company.

8.2 Types of transport 8B 1 p66



TIPS • We can say a *taxi* or a *cab*.

- a *motorbike* (UK) = a *motorcycle* (US)

8.3 Travelling verbs and phrases 8B 2 p66

go by car = drive go by bus/coach = take the bus/coach
go by bike = cycle go by ferry/boat = take the ferry/boat
go by plane = fly go by train/tube/tram = take the train/tube/tram
go on foot = walk

TIPS • We say go **by** bike, train, etc., but go **on** foot not go **by** foot.

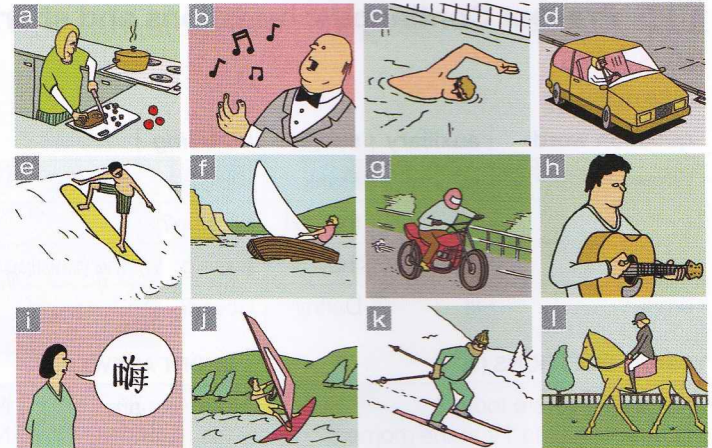
• the tube (UK) = the subway (US)

• public transport = trains, buses, trams, etc.: I usually travel by public transport.

8.4 Indoor and outdoor activities 8D 1 p70

Match the verbs/phrases to pictures a-l.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> swim | 7 <input type="checkbox"/> cook |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> ski | 8 <input type="checkbox"/> drive |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> surf | 9 <input type="checkbox"/> speak another language |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> windsurf | 10 <input type="checkbox"/> ride a horse |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> sail | 11 <input type="checkbox"/> ride a motorbike |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> sing | 12 <input type="checkbox"/> play a musical instrument |



TIP • We use **can/can't** to talk about ability:
I can speak Japanese. I can't ride a horse.

8.5 Adjectives and adverbs 8D 4 p70

- We use **adjectives** to describe nouns. They usually come **before** the noun. *He's an excellent driver.*
- We use **adverbs** like *well*, *carefully*, etc. to describe verbs. They usually come **after** the verb. *He speaks Spanish fluently.*

spelling rule	adjective	adverb
most adverbs: add -ly to the adjective	careful fluent bad	carefully fluently badly
adjectives ending in -y : -y → -i and add -ly	easy happy	easily happily
irregular adverbs	good fast hard	well fast hard

8.1 Present Continuous: positive and negative 8A 4 p64

- We use the Present Continuous to talk about things happening **now**:
I'm waiting for a taxi. They're sitting in your office.
- We make the Present Continuous with:
subject + be + verb+ing

POSITIVE (+)		NEGATIVE (-)	
I'm		I'm not	
you/we/they're	verb+ing	you/we/they aren't	verb+ing
he/she/it's		he/she/it isn't	

verb+ing: spelling rules

most verbs: add **-ing**

verbs ending in -e: take off **-e** and add **-ing**

verbs ending in consonant + vowel + consonant:
double the last consonant and add **-ing**

examples

play → playing	study → studying
look → looking	go → going
make → making	write → writing
live → living	
sit → sitting	run → running
stop → stopping	

TIP • We can also make negatives with **'re** or **'s + not**: *Danny's not doing anything. They're not looking very happy.* etc.

8.2 Present Continuous: questions and short answers

8A 9 p65

QUESTIONS (?)

question word	auxiliary	subject	verb+ing	
Where	is	Frank	calling	from?
	Is	the taxi	moving?	
	Are	they	having	the meeting now?
What	is	Danny	doing?	

YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)

Am I **working** here today?
Are you **watching** TV at the moment?
Is he/she/Janet **answering** his/her phone?
Are we **going** now?
Are they **having** the meeting now?

SHORT ANSWERS

Yes, you are .	No, you aren't .
Yes, I am .	No, I'm not .
Yes, he/she is .	No, he/she isn't .
Yes, you/we are .	No, you/we aren't .
Yes, they are .	No, they aren't .

TIP • We can also make negative short answers with **'re** or **'s + not**: *No, you're not. No, she's not*, etc.

8.3 Present Simple or Present Continuous 8B 6 p67

- We use the **Present Simple** to talk about things that happen every day/week/month, etc.
- We use the **Present Continuous** to talk about things that are happening now.
- We usually use these words/phrases with the **Present Simple**:

usually sometimes always often normally never hardly ever every day/week/month

I normally go to work by train. I usually take the tube. It snows a lot in Canada every winter.

- We usually use these words/phrases with the **Present Continuous**:

now today at the moment

He's watching TV now. I'm driving to work today. What are you doing at the moment?

8.1 Talking on the phone 8C 7 p69

asking to speak to people

Hello, can I speak to (Emily), please?
Hello, is that (Chris Morris)?

saying who you are

This is (Emily Wise) from (3DUK).
Speaking.
It's (Clare).

calling people back

Can I call you back (in an hour)?
I'll call you later. (I'll = I will)
Can you call me back?

other useful phrases

I got your message.
Call me on my mobile.
Hold on a moment.

TIP • When we answer the phone we say **It's** (Clare), not **I'm** (Clare).

VOCABULARY

9.1 Holiday activities 9A 1 p72

have a picnic
have a good/great/fantastic time

stay in a hotel
stay with friends or family

rent a car
rent a bike
rent a boat

go sightseeing /'saɪtsi:ɪŋ/
go diving
go skiing /'ski:ɪŋ/
go camping

go to museums
go to the beach

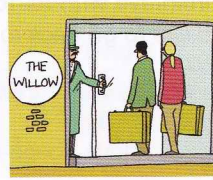
go on holiday
go on a boat trip
go on a guided tour

travel by public transport
travel around

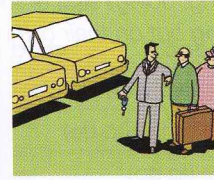
TIPS • We can **rent** or **hire** a car, bike, etc.
• go on holiday (UK) = go on vacation (US)



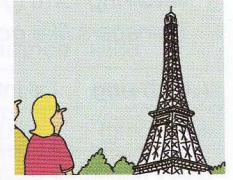
have a picnic



stay in a hotel



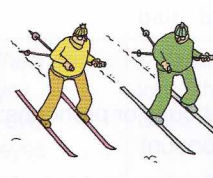
rent a car



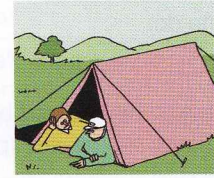
go sightseeing



go diving



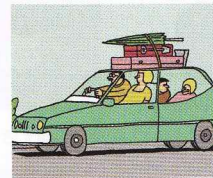
go skiing



go camping



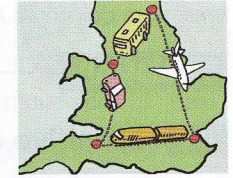
go to the beach



go on holiday



go on a boat trip


go on a guided
tour


travel around

9.2 Natural places 9B 1 p74

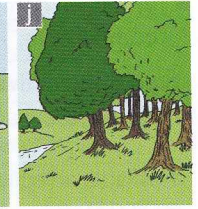
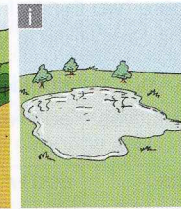
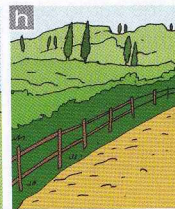
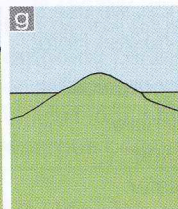
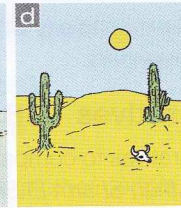
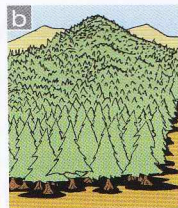
Match these words to pictures a-j.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> h the countryside | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> a river |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> a mountain | 7 <input type="checkbox"/> an island |
| | /maʊntɪn/ |
| | /aɪlənd/ |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> a hill | 8 <input type="checkbox"/> a lake |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> a forest | 9 <input type="checkbox"/> the sea |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> a wood | 10 <input type="checkbox"/> the desert |

TIPS • A mountain is higher than a hill. A forest is bigger than a wood.

• Countryside is uncountable: There's some beautiful countryside near the village.

• We usually say **in** the countryside/a forest/a wood/the desert but **on** a mountain/a hill/an island.

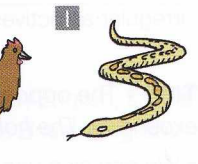
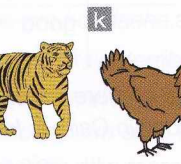
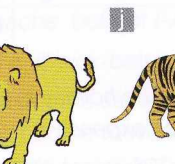
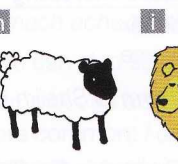
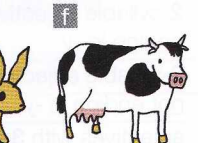
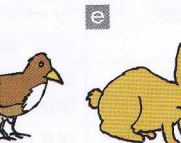
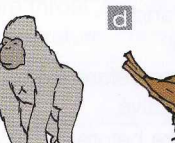
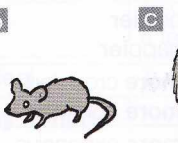
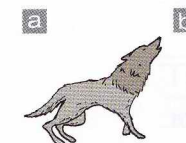


9.3 Animals 9C 1 p76

Match these words to animals a-l.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> a lion | 7 <input type="checkbox"/> a wolf |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> a chicken | 8 <input type="checkbox"/> a rabbit |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> a tiger | 9 <input type="checkbox"/> a mouse |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> a cow | 10 <input type="checkbox"/> a snake |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> a monkey | 11 <input type="checkbox"/> a bird /bɜ:d/ |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> a sheep | 12 <input type="checkbox"/> a gorilla |

TIP • The plural of *sheep* is *sheep*. The plural of *wolf* is *wolves*. The plural of *mouse* is *mice*.



9.4 Verb patterns (like doing, would like to do, etc.)

9D 5 p79

- After some verbs we often use a second verb. The second verb is often in the **verb+ing** form (*going, doing, etc.*) or the **infinitive with to** (*to go, to do, etc.*):
Teenagers **like going** out on their own. **I'd like to go** back to the country one day.

+ verb+ing	+ infinitive with to
like (doing)	would/'d like (to do)
enjoy (doing)	decide (to do)
love (doing)	want (to do)
stop (doing)	need (to do)
hate (doing)	would/'d love (to do)

TIPS • These verbs can also be followed by nouns or pronouns:

You don't need a car. (noun) *He hates it.* (pronoun)

- We can also use the infinitive with *to* after *like, love* and *hate*. In British English, *verb+ing* is more common: *I like watching TV*. In American English, the infinitive with *to* is more common: *I like to watch TV*.

GRAMMAR

9.1 Infinitive of purpose 9A 5 p73

- To say why we do something, we often use the infinitive with *to*: *We drove to a wildlife park to see some elephants.* *We went to Robben Island to visit the prison.*

TIPS • We often answer *Why ... ?* questions with the infinitive with *to*: **A** *Why did you go there?* **B** *To see some elephants.*

- Sometimes we can also use **for** + noun: *We went to Table Mountain for a picnic.*
- We don't use *for to see* to say why we do something: ~~*We drove to a wildlife park for to see some elephants.*~~

9.2 Comparatives 9B 4 p74

- We use comparatives to compare two places, people or things:
Cairo is hotter than Sharm El Sheikh. *Cairo is probably noisier.*
- When we compare two things in the same sentence, we use *than* after the comparative: *The Sels Hotel is smaller than the Shokran Hotel.*

type of adjective	spelling rule	comparative
most 1-syllable adjectives	add -er	smaller older
1-syllable adjectives ending in -e	add -r	safer nicer
1-syllable adjectives ending in consonant + vowel + consonant	double the last consonant and add -er	hotter bigger but! new → newer
2-syllable adjectives ending in -y	-y → -i and add -er	noisier happier
2-syllable adjectives not ending in -y	put more before the adjective	more crowded more common
adjectives with 3 syllables or more	put more before the adjective	more expensive more interesting
irregular adjectives	good bad	better worse

TIPS • The opposite of *more* is *less*: *The holiday in Sharm El Sheikh is more expensive.* *The holiday in Cairo is less expensive.*

- We can also use *more* with nouns: *There are more rooms in the Shokran Hotel.*

REAL WORLD

9.1 Deciding what to do

9C 4 p77

asking people what they want to do

What **would you like** to do?

Where **do you want** to go?

Would you like (to go to London)?

Do you want (to go to Regent's Park)?

saying what you want to do

I'd like (to go to the beach).

I want (to go to Longleat).

Yes, that's a good idea.

Not really. **I'd rather** (stay at home).

TIPS • *I'd like* = *I would like*; *I'd rather* = *I would rather*.

- Would like* is more polite than *want*.
- We use *I'd rather* to say *I want to do this more than something else*.
- After *would rather* we use the infinitive (*go, do, etc.*): *I'd rather rent a bike.*
- After *would like* and *want* we use the infinitive with *to* (*to go, to do, etc.*): *I'd like to go swimming.* *I want to rent a car.*

VOCABULARY

10.1 Verb phrases 10A 1 p80

get fit
get stressed

spend time
spend money

carry the shopping
carry the bags

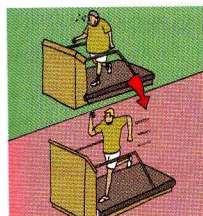
wash the windows
wash the car

take the lift
take the escalator

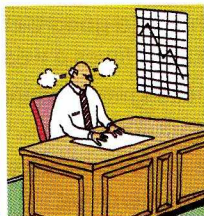
have a bath
have a shower

do the housework
do some exercise

get on/off a bus
get on/off a train



get fit



get stressed



carry the shopping



wash the car



take the lift



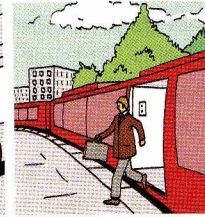
take the escalator



do the housework



get on a bus



get off a train

TIPS • carry the shopping (UK) = carry the groceries (US)

• take the lift (UK) = take the elevator (US)

10.2 Frequency expressions

10A 6 p81

once /wʌns/	a day	minute
twice	a week	day
three times	a month	week
four times	a year	month
ten times	an hour	year
etc.	etc.	etc.

every

TIP • We use **How often ... ?** to ask about frequency:

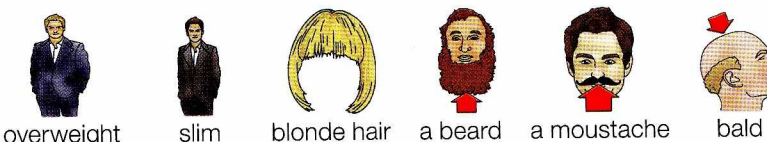
A How often do you go to the gym? **B** Twice a week.

10.3 Appearance 10B 2 p82

age	height	body	appearance	race
He's/She's ... young middle-aged old	He's/She's ... tall short	He's/She's ... thin slim fat overweight	He's/She's ... beautiful good-looking attractive	He's/She's ... white black Asian /'eɪʒən/

eyes	hair /heə/
He's/She's got ... blue eyes brown eyes green eyes	He's/She's got ... long/short hair dark/fair/blonde/grey hair

He's got ...
a beard /bɪəd/
a moustache /mus'tɑːʃ/
He's ...
bald /bɔːld/



TIPS • Middle-aged = the time in your life between young and old.

• Slim is more attractive than thin. Overweight is more polite than fat.

• Beautiful, attractive and good-looking all mean the same.

Beautiful is usually for women. Good-looking is usually for men. Attractive can be for both men and women.

• Asian = from a country in Asia (India, Thailand, Japan, etc.)

• We say long hair not long hairs and long dark hair not dark long hair.

10.4 Character 10B 6 p83

A hard-working person works very hard.

A lazy person doesn't like working.

A kind person likes doing things to help other people.

A funny person makes people laugh a lot.

Selfish people usually think about themselves, not other people.

An outgoing person is friendly and likes meeting new people.

When reliable people promise to do something, they always do it.

It's difficult for a shy person to talk to new people.

A generous person likes giving people money and presents.

10.5 Health problems 10C 2 p84

I've got ...	a stomach ache /'stʌmək eɪk/ a headache /'hedɪk/ toothache /'tuːθeɪk/ a sore throat /sɔː 'θrəʊt/ a cold a cough /kɒf/ a temperature /'temprətʃə/
--------------	---

I feel ...	ill terrible sick better
------------	--------------------------

my ... hurts	back arm foot leg
--------------	-------------------

TIPS • We can say I've got a stomach ache/toothache or I've got stomach ache/toothache, but not I've got headache.

• We can also say: I'm ill/sick/better but not I'm terrible.

• I'm sick can also mean the same as I'm ill. In American English, sick is more common: I can't come to work today. I'm sick. In British English I feel sick. usually means I want to be sick.

10.6 Treatment 10C 3 p84

go to bēd
go hōme
go to the dōctor
go to the dēntist
stay at hōme
stay in bēd
take the day off
take some pāinkillers
take some cōugh medicine
take some antibiōtics

10.7 Seasons 10D 1 p86



spring summer autumn /'ɔ:təm/ winter

TIPS • We use **in** with seasons: *in (the) winter*.

• *autumn* (UK) = *fall* (US)

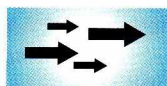
10.8 Weather 10D 4 p87

What's the weather like today?

It's hot and sunny.



sunny



windy



foggy



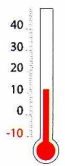
snowing



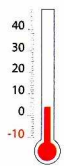
raining



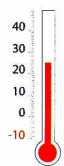
cloudy



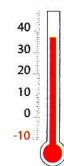
12° (degrees)



cold



warm



hot

10.9 Word building 10D 6 p87

noun	adjective	adjective	noun
sun	sunny	ill	illness
wind	windy	happy	happiness
cloud	cloudy	sad	sadness
fog	foggy	fit	fitness

Noun: *There isn't much **sun** today. His **illness** lasted a year.*

Adjective: *I love **sunny** days. He was **ill** on holiday.*

TIP • For *snow* and *rain* we usually use the verb, not the adjective: *It's **snowing/raining***. not *It's snowy/rainy*.

GRAMMAR

10.1 Imperatives 10A 4 p81

- We often use imperatives to give strong advice.
- The positive imperative is the same as the infinitive (*go, do, etc.*):
Walk up and down stairs. **Get off** the bus one stop earlier.
- The negative imperative is *Don't* + infinitive (*Don't go, Don't do, etc.*):
Don't take lifts. **Don't drive** to the supermarket once a week.

TIP • We also use imperatives to give orders and instructions:
Go home! Don't write anything.

10.2 should/shouldn't 10A 9 p81

- We use **should** and **shouldn't** to give advice.
- We use **should** to say something is a **good** thing to do:
You should do some exercise three times a week.
- We use **shouldn't** to say something is a **bad** thing to do:
You shouldn't eat so many pizzas and biscuits.
- After *should* and *shouldn't* we use the **infinitive**: *You should **eat** more fruit.* not *You should ~~to eat~~ more fruit.*

TIPS • To ask for advice, we can say: *What should I do?*

• In spoken English, *should/shouldn't* is more common than the imperative for advice.

10.3 Questions with like 10B 8 p83

- We use **What's** ('s = is) **he/she like?** to ask for a general description. We often ask this when we don't know the person. The answer can include character and physical appearance:
She's friendly and outgoing. And she's very beautiful.
- We use **What does he/she look like?** to ask about physical appearance only: *She's tall and slim, and she's got long dark hair.*
- We use **What does he/she like doing?** to ask what people enjoy doing in their free time: *She likes clubbing and going to restaurants.*

TIPS • *How is he/she?* asks about health, not personality:

A *How's your mum?* **B** *She's fine, thanks.*

• We don't use *like* in answers to questions with *What's he like?* and *What does she look like?*

A *What's he like?* **B** *He's kind.* not *He's ~~like~~ kind.*

A *What does she look like?* **B** *She's very tall.* not *She's ~~like~~ very tall.*

REAL WORLD

10.1 Talking about health 10C 5 p85

asking about someone's health	expressing sympathy	giving advice
Are you OK?	Oh, dear.	Why don't you (go home)?
Are you alright?	I hope you get better soon.	You shouldn't (go to work today).
What's wrong?	Get well soon.	You should (go to the doctor).
What's the matter?		Take the day off.

TIP • After *Why don't you ... ?* we use the infinitive:
*Why don't you **go** home?*

Language Summary 11



DVD-ROM 11

VOCABULARY

11.1 New Year's resolutions

11A 2 p88

get a new job
get fit

work hard
work less

lose three kilos
lose weight /wert/

have a holiday
have fun

do a computer course
do more exercise

stop working at weekends
stop smoking

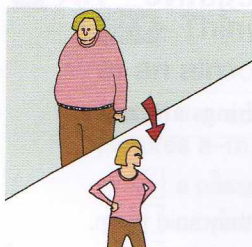
move to another country
move house

not eat sweet things
not eat chocolate cake

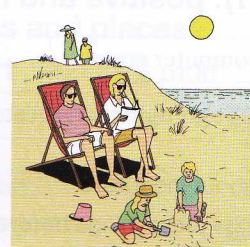
TIPS • We can *do* a course or *take* a course, but not *make* a course.

• We can also *do/take* a course *in* something: *I'm going to do a course in engineering.*

• Exercise is also a verb: *I exercise every day.*



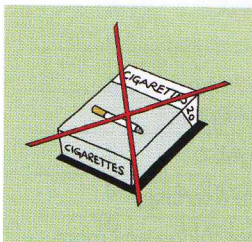
lose weight



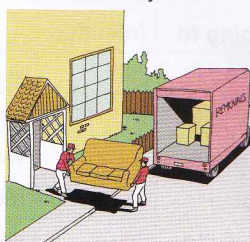
have a holiday



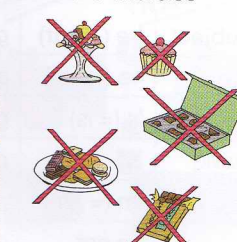
do more exercise



stop smoking

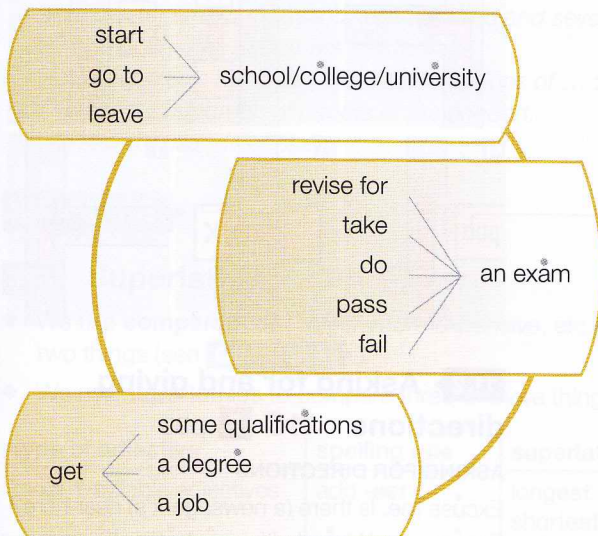


move house

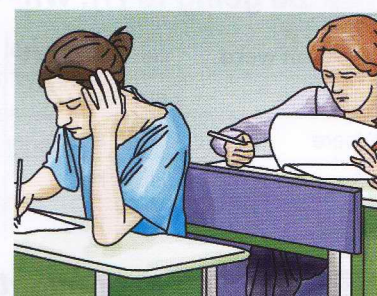


not eat sweet things

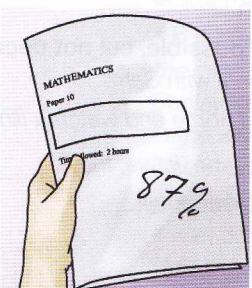
11.2 Studying 11B 1 p90



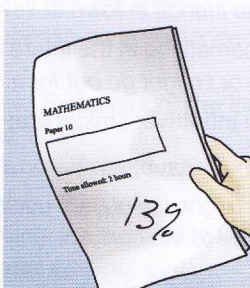
revise for an exam



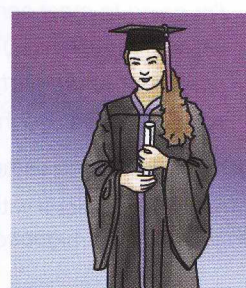
take an exam



pass an exam



fail an exam



get a degree

TIPS • We *get* a degree when we finish university. We *get* some qualifications when we pass any official exams, for example when you leave school, do a course, etc.

• We can say *revise for an exam* or *study for an exam*.

11.3 Collocations 11D 5 p95

• **Collocations** are words/phrases that are often used together. They can be:

verb + **noun** (*book a flight*, *take photos*, etc.)

verb + **preposition** (*stay in a hotel*, *go for a run*, etc.)

verb + **adjective** (*get married*, *become famous*, etc.)

verb + **adverb** (*work hard*, *speak fluently*, etc.)

book	stay	rent	get
a flight /flat/	with (you)	a motorbike	to your place
a hotel room	in (the USA)	a car	a taxi
a train ticket	in a hotel	a flat	married
a seat on a train	at home	a house	home
a table in a restaurant			divorced

TIP • A *flight* is a journey by plane: *My flight to Los Angeles leaves at 10.30.*

11.1 **be going to (1): positive and negative** 11A 5 p88

I'm going to do a computer course.

I'm not going to eat sweet things any more.

- These sentences talk about the **future**.
- The people decided to do these things **before** they said them.
- We use **be going to** + infinitive for **future plans**.

subject	be (+ not)	going to	infinitive	
We	're (= are)	going to	get	fit.
Val	's (= is)	going to	stop	smoking.
David	's	going to	lose	weight.
I	'm (= am)	going to	do	more exercise.
I	'm not	going to	eat	sweet things any more.

TIP • With the verb *go*, we usually say *I'm going to Spain*, not *I'm going to go to Spain*. But both forms are correct.

11.2 **be going to (1): Wh- questions** 11A 8 p89

question word	be	subject	going to	infinitive	
What	are	you	going to	do	next year?
Where	's	she	going to	live?	
Where	's	he	going to	study?	
When	are	they	going to	start	getting fit?

11.3 **be going to or might** 11B 4 p91

- We use **be going to** to say a future plan is **decided**:
I'm going to meet some friends in town at seven.
- We use **might** to say something in the future is **possible**, but **not decided**:
I might go to the party or I might go out for a meal with Sam.
- After **might** we use the **infinitive**: *I might stay at home and watch a film.*

TIPS • *Might* is the same for all subjects (*I, you, he, she, it, we, they*).

- To make questions with *might*, we usually use *Do you think ... ?*:
Do you think he might come to the party?

11.4 **be going to (2): yes/no questions and short answers**

11B 10 p91

YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS	
Am I going to be late?	Yes, you are .	No, you aren't .
Are you going to look for a job?	Yes, I am .	No, I'm not .
Is he/she going to sell his/her car?	Yes, he/she is .	No, he/she isn't .
Are we going to stop working?	Yes, we/you are .	No, we/you aren't .
Are you going to move house?	Yes, we are .	No, we aren't .
Are his parents going to help him?	Yes, they are .	No, they aren't .

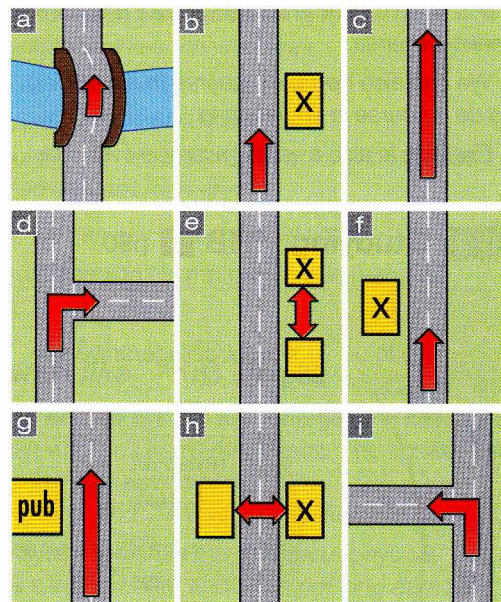
TIP • We can also answer *yes/no* questions with (*Yes, I might*:

A *Are you going to buy it?* **B** *I might.*

11.1 **Directions** 11C 3 p92

Match the phrases to pictures a-i.

- ☐ turn right
- ☐ turn left
- ☐ go over the bridge
- ☐ go past the pub
- ☒ go along this road/street
- ☐ it's on the/your left
- ☐ it's on the/your right
- ☐ it's opposite
- ☐ it's next to



11.2 **Asking for and giving directions** 11C 7 p93

ASKING FOR DIRECTIONS

Excuse me. Is there (a newsagent's) near here?
Excuse me. Where's (the post office)?
Excuse me. How do I/we get to (the market)?

GIVING DIRECTIONS

There's one in (Berry Street).
Go along this road/street and turn right/left.
Go past the pub.
Go over the bridge.
(The newsagent's) is on the/your right/left.
It's opposite (the supermarket).
It's next to (the café).
It's over there.
You can't miss it.

IF YOU CAN'T GIVE DIRECTIONS

Sorry, I don't know.
Sorry, I don't live around here.

VOCABULARY

12.1 Big and small numbers 12A 1 p96

- For numbers with a decimal point (.) we say *point*:
0.2 = *nought point two* or *zero point two*
2.45 = *two point four five*

TIPS • 0 = *nought* /nɔ:t/ or *zero* (or *oh* when we say phone numbers).

- In English we write 7.5 not 7,5. We use a decimal point (.) not a comma (,).

- We can use **one** or **a** with *hundred*, *thousand* and *million*:
100 = *a hundred* or *one hundred*

1,000 = *a thousand* or *one thousand*

1,000,000 = *a million* or *one million*

- For long numbers we use **and** after *hundred* (but not after *thousand* or *million*):

127 = *a hundred and twenty-seven*

850,000 = *eight hundred and fifty thousand*

But 2,300 = *two thousand, three hundred* not ~~*two thousand and three hundred*~~

- We don't add a plural -s to *hundred*, *thousand* and *million*:

32,470 = *thirty-two thousand, four hundred and seventy*

50,000,000 = *fifty million* not ~~*fifty millions*~~

But we can say: *hundreds/thousands/millions of ...* :

There were hundreds of people at the concert.

We saw thousands of birds.

12.2 Things and places

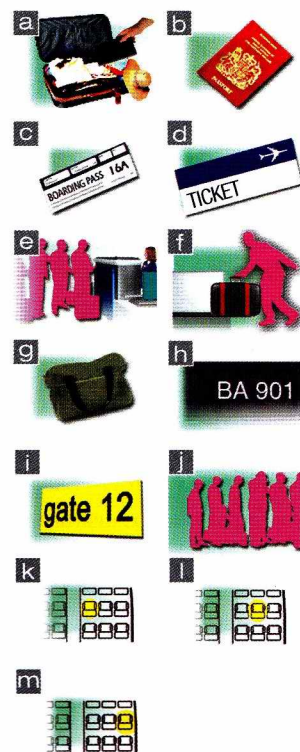
at an airport 12C 2 p100

Match the words/phrases to pictures a–m.

- ☐ a passport
- ☐ a boarding pass
- ☐ hand luggage /'læɡɪdʒ/
- ☒ a ticket
- ☐ pack your bags
- ☐ passengers
- ☐ a flight number
- ☐ a gate
- ☐ a check-in desk
- ☐ a bag drop
- ☐ a window seat
- ☐ a middle seat
- ☐ an aisle /aɪl/ seat

TIPS • We can say *a boarding pass* or *a boarding card*.

- When a flight is **on time**, it leaves or arrives at the correct time. When a flight is **delayed**, it leaves or arrives later than the correct time.



GRAMMAR

12.1 Superlatives 12A 5 p97

- We use **comparatives** (*bigger*, *more expensive*, etc.) to compare two things (see **GRAMMAR 9.2**).
- We use **superlatives** to compare three or more things.

type of adjective	spelling rule	superlative
most 1-syllable adjectives	add -est	longest shortest
1-syllable adjectives ending in -e	add -st	safest nicest
1-syllable adjectives ending in consonant + vowel + consonant	double the last consonant and add -est	biggest hottest but! new → newest
2-syllable adjectives ending in -y	-y → -i and add -est	heaviest happiest
2-syllable adjectives not ending in -y	put most before the adjective	most boring most crowded
adjectives with 3 syllables or more	put most before the adjective	most expensive most beautiful
irregular adjectives	good bad	best worst

TIPS • We say: *The best place in the world*. not ~~*of the world*~~ or ~~*for the world*~~.

- Before superlatives in sentences we use:

the

*Sanjay Kumar Sinha taught **the** longest lesson in the world.*

***The** shortest film in the world is 'Colin'.*

possessive 's

*It was probably **the world's** hottest soup.*

*He's my **sister's** oldest relative.*

possessive adjectives

*Matt's **my** best friend.*

*It was **his** most important book.*

- the* + superlative is the most common form.

12.2 Present Perfect: positive and negative 12B 3 p98

- We use the **Present Perfect** to talk about experiences in life until now. We don't say when they happened: *I've been to about forty countries.*
- We use the **Past Simple** if we say when something happened:
Two weeks ago I went to Mexico.

TIP • We can't use the Present Perfect if we say a time:
I went to England in 2011. not *I've been to England in 2011.*

POSITIVE (+)

I/you/we/they + 've (= have) + **past participle**
he/she/it + 's (= has) + **past participle**

I've stayed in some of the world's best hotels.
We've had lots of other jobs.
He's written travel articles about lots of amazing places.

NEGATIVE (-)

I/you/we/they + haven't (= have not) + **past participle**
he/she/it + hasn't (= has not) + **past participle**

I haven't been to Australia.
They haven't had a holiday together.
He hasn't been to South America before.

TIP • We can say *I haven't ...* or *I've never ...* :
I've never been to Australia. *They've never had* a holiday together.

PAST PARTICIPLES

- For **regular verbs**, add *-ed* or *-d* to the infinitive: *work* → *worked*, *live* → *lived*, etc. The Past Simple and past participles of regular verbs are the same (see **GRAMMAR 5.3**).
- For **irregular verbs**, there are no rules. Look at the past participles in the Irregular Verb List, p167.

TIP • *go* has two past participles, *been* and *gone*. When we use the Present Perfect to talk about our experiences we usually use *been*:
I've been to Italy. (I went to Italy in the past and I'm not in Italy now).

12.3 Have you ever ... ? questions and short answers 12B 7 p99

- We use the **Present Perfect** to ask about people's experiences. If the answer is yes, we use the **Past Simple** to ask for (or give) more information:
A Have you ever been to Peru? **B Yes, I have./No, I haven't.**
A Did you have a good time? **B Yes, I did./No, I didn't.**

YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)

Have I ever worked in a restaurant?
Have you ever been to Canada?
Has he ever lived in the USA?
Has she ever written a book?
Have we ever been there before?
Have they ever worked in an office?

SHORT ANSWERS

Yes, you have. No, you haven't.
Yes, I/we have. No, I/we haven't.
Yes, he has. No, he hasn't.
Yes, she has. No, she hasn't.
Yes, we have. No, we haven't.
Yes, they have. No, they haven't.

TIP • *ever* + Present Perfect = any time in your life until now. We often use *ever* in questions.

REAL WORLD

12.1 At the airport 12C 3 p100

THINGS YOU HEAR AT THE CHECK-IN DESK OR BAG DROP

Can I have your passport, please?
How many bags are you checking in?
Did you pack your bags yourself?
And have you got any hand luggage?
Here's your boarding pass. You're in seat (16F).
No, (it's) an aisle seat.
Gate (twelve).
Boarding is at (fifteen thirty).
Enjoy your flight.

THINGS YOU CAN SAY AT THE CHECK-IN DESK OR BAG DROP

Is that a window seat?
Which gate is it?
Is the flight on time?

12.2 Saying goodbye 12C 6 p101

Have you got	everything? your passport? your boarding pass?	Yes, I have, thanks.
Have a	nice holiday. good time. good trip.	Thanks, I will.
Don't forget to send me/us	a text. an email. a postcard.	Yes, of course.
See you	in a month. soon. on the next course.	Yes, see you.

TIP • When we aren't going to see someone between Friday and Monday, we often say: *Have a nice/good weekend.* We often reply: *You too.*

Audio and Video Scripts

CD1 → 4

Do exercise 6 on your own. | Listen and practise. | Look at the board. | Listen and check. | Work in pairs. | Match the words to the pictures. | Fill in the gaps. | Ask and answer the questions. | Work in groups. | Look at the photo on page 11. | Compare answers. | Open your book.

CD1 → 6

class | photo | please | listen | nineteen

CD1 → 7

MARCOS Hello. Sorry I'm late.
TEACHER No problem. What's your first name?
M It's Marcos.
T What's your surname?
M Fuentes.
T How do you spell that?
M F-U-E-N-T-E-S.
T Welcome to the class, Marcos.
M Thank you.

CD1 → 8

A CAMILLE Hello, is this the English class?
TEACHER Yes, it is.
C Oh, good. Sorry I'm late!
T No problem. What's your first name?
C Camille.
T How do you spell that?
C C-A-M-I-double L-E.
T And what's your surname?
C It's Laurent.
T And how do you spell that?
C L-A-U-R-E-N-T.
T Thanks, Camille. Welcome to the class.
B BARTEK Hello, sorry I'm late.
TEACHER No problem. What's your name?
B My name's Bartek.
T How do you spell that, please?
B B-A-R-T-E-K.
T And what's your surname?
B Kowalski.
T OK. And how do you spell that?
B K-O-W-A-L-S-K-I.
T Thanks. Welcome to the class, Bartek.
B Thank you.

CD1 → 11

ANSWER Tuesday

CD1 → 15

ANSWERS 3 Spain 4 Australia 5 Italy, Brazil, the UK

CD1 → 18

A A What's your phone number?
B Er ... wait a minute ... it's 01221 960744.
A 01221 960744?

B Yes, that's right.
B A What's Tina's mobile number?
B It's 07906 394896.
A 07906 ... er ...
B 394896.
C A What's the phone number of your hotel?
B It's 0119 498 0691. I'm in room 302.
A OK, thanks.
D A What's your number in Australia?
B It's 0061 02 9967 2315.
A So that's 0061 ... 02 ...
B ... 9967 2315.
A OK. Thanks.

CD1 → 20

ANSWERS 1 engineer 2 doctor 3 musician
4 police officer 5 accountant

CD1 → 21

I'm not a teacher. | We aren't from the USA. | She isn't famous. | Are you from Spain? | Yes, I am. | No, I'm not. | Is she a musician? | Yes, she is. | No, she isn't. | Are you from New York? | Yes, we are. | No, we aren't.

CD1 → 23

forty | seventeen | eighty | sixty | eighteen
fourteen | sixteen | seventy

VIDEO → 1 CD1 → 26

WOMAN Right, first I need some personal details. What's your surname, please?
P It's Whatling.
W And how do you spell that?
P W-H-A-T-L-I-N-G.
W OK, thanks. What's your first name?
P Paul.
W And what's your nationality?
P I'm British.
W OK. What's your address?
P It's 29 Elmore Road, Bristol.
W How do you spell Elmore?
P E-L-M-O-R-E.
W And what's your postcode?
P BS13 6QT.
W I'm sorry?
P BS13 6QT.
W Great, thanks a lot. What's your mobile number?
P 07969 831016.
W 07969 ...
P ... 831016.
W OK. And what's your home number?
P It's 0117 480 6544.
W Could you say that again, please?
P 0117 480 6544.
W Right. And the last question ... what's your email address?
P It's paul ninety-nine at webmail dot com.
W Could you repeat that, please?
P Yes, paul ninety-nine at webmail dot com.

W OK, thanks a lot. Now, what type of car would you like?

CD1 → 30

this → What's this? → What's this in English? | that → What's that? → What's that in English? | these → What are these? → What are these in English? | those → What are those?

CD1 → 32

British | teacher | thirty | mobile
Japan | address | thirteen | Brazil
bicycle | manager | Germany | Mexican
computer | musician | umbrella | mechanic
seventeen | engineer | Japanese | unemployed

CD1 → 34

I've got an old car. | You've got a new mobile. | He's got a big TV. | She's got a new bicycle. | We've got a beautiful cat. | They've got an old DVD player. | I haven't got a laptop. | We haven't got a car. | He hasn't got a diary.

CD1 → 35

INTERVIEWER Hello. Have you got time to answer some questions? It's a product survey about computers, cameras, TVs, that sort of thing.

MARY Yes, OK.

ALAN Sure.

I Oh, good. Thanks. Right, first question. Have you got a laptop?

A No, I haven't, but I've got an old computer.

I And you, madam? Have you got a laptop?

M Yes, I have, but it's not very good.

I Thanks. Right, next question. Have you got a camera?

M Yes, I have.

I And what about you, sir? Have you got a camera?

A No, I haven't. I take photos with my mobile.

I Right. And have you got an MP3 player?

M What's an MP3 player?

A They're for music. They're very small.

M Oh, those things. No, I haven't got one of those.

I And you, sir? Have you got an MP3 player?

A Yes, I have.

I Have you got a radio?

A No, I haven't. I listen to the radio on my mobile.

I And you, madam?

M Yes, I have.

I Thanks. Right, the last question. Have you got a DVD player?

A Yes, I have. I watch a lot of DVDs.

I And you, madam? Have you got a DVD player?

- M Yes, I have, but it's very old.
I Right. Well, madam, we've got some very good DVD players at the moment ...

CD1 → 37

ANSWERS 2 children 4 daughter
5 father 6 mother 7 brother 9 sisters
11 grandchildren 12 grandsons
13 granddaughter 15 uncle 16 cousins
18 grandfather 19 grandmother

CD1 → 38

Alan's → Pam is Alan's aunt. | Martina's → Greg is Martina's husband. | Florence's → Robbie is Florence's brother. | Ben's → Mary is Ben's wife. | Ben and Mary's → Florence is Ben and Mary's granddaughter.

CD1 → 39

- JILL Luke, come and look at these photos of my family.
LUKE OK.
J Right ... This is my sister, Pam, and her husband, Nick.
L Pam's an English teacher, isn't she?
J Yes, that's right.
L What about Nick?
J He's a doctor.
L Oh, right. How many children have they got?
J Two. A boy and a girl. Look, here's a photo of them.
L Hmm. How old are they?
J Er, Robbie is six and Florence is about ten months old.
L They're beautiful.
J Yes, they are. And this is my brother, Greg. He's an engineer.
L And who's that?
J That's Greg's wife, Martina. She's from Italy. Oh, and that's their son, Alan.
L How old is he?
J Alan - he's nineteen. He's a student at Cambridge University.
L Really?
J Yes, he loves it there. And these are my parents. They're retired now.
L How old are they?
J Mum's seventy and Dad's seventy-three. And that's Lily, my favourite member of the family.
L Sorry, where?
J There.
L Oh, the cat!
J Yes, she's beautiful!

CD1 → 40

- 1 A What time is it?
B It's one o'clock.
2 A What's the time, please?
B It's about half past seven.
3 A Excuse me, have you got the time, please?
B Yes, it's four fifteen.
A Thanks a lot.

CD1 → 42 CD1 → 44

A Thank you for calling Brent Gallery. We're open Mondays to Fridays from 10 a.m. to 6.30 p.m. and on Saturday and Sunday from 10 a.m. to 4.30 p.m. The exhibition now showing is Mexican Art.
[end of CD1 → 42] Ticket prices are £9.50 for adults and £6.50 for children. For more information about the exhibition go to our website at www.brentgallery.org.uk.

B Welcome to the FilmWorld information and booking line. Here are the films showing at this cinema from Friday June the 10th to Thursday June the 16th. *A New Day*, certificate 12, showing at 4.40, 7.00 and 9.20. *The Brothers*, certificate 15, showing at 5.00, 7.15 and 9.30. [end of CD1 → 42] Ticket prices are £11.50 for adults and £8.25 for children under 16. To book tickets please press 1 or go to our website at www.filmworld.co.uk.

VIDEO → 2 CD1 → 45

- JOSH Mum?
ALISON Yes, Josh?
J Can I have some popcorn?
A Yes, OK. Here's some money.
J And can I have a Coke?
A Yes, OK. But hurry up.
LOUISE Have you got any money, Chris? If not, I've got my credit card.
CHRIS No, it's OK. I've got some money.
... Hi. Can I have two tickets for *The Brothers*, please?
TICKET SELLER Yes, of course.
C How much is that?
TS That's £23, please.
C Here you are.
TS Thanks.
L What time is the film?
TS It starts at seven fifteen. Here are your tickets. You're in screen 2.
C Thanks a lot.
TS You're welcome. Enjoy the film.
L We've got 20 minutes before the film starts.
C OK, let's have a drink first.
L Good idea.
A Hello. Can I have two tickets for *A New Day*, please? One adult and one child.
TS Yes, of course.
A How much are the tickets?
TS £11.50 for adults and £8.25 for children. So that's £19.75, please.
A Here you are. What time's the film?
TS It starts in two minutes. Here are your tickets. You're in screen 1.
A Thank you very much.
TS You're welcome. Enjoy the film.
A Thanks. Bye. ... Hurry up, Josh. The film starts in two minutes.
J OK.

CD1 → 47

- NICK Pam, where's my suitcase?
PAM Here it is, behind the sofa.
N And have you got my keys?
P No, Nick, of course I haven't. They're on the desk. By the computer.
N OK, thanks. And where's my mobile?
P Oh, I don't know. Look, there it is, under my coat. There, on the sofa!
N Thanks.
ROBBIE Mum, where are my new shoes?
P They're under the chair by the window.
R And where's my bag?
P Oh, Robbie. It's by the door. Where it always is.
R Thanks, Mum.
N Right. Are you ready, Robbie?
R Yes.
P Have you got your school books?
R Yes, they're in my bag. Look.
N Oh no! Where's my passport?
P It's on the table by the window. In front of the plant.
N Oh yes, thanks.
P Bye, love. See you on Sunday.
N Bye.
P Right ... hmm ... where's the baby?

CD1 → 53

- FREDDIE Hello, Jeanette!
JEANETTE Oh, hello ... er ...
F Freddie. Freddie Roberts.
J You don't work in this office, do you?
F No, I work in the King Street office.
J Oh ... er ... yes, of course.
F Good party, isn't it?
J Yes, very nice.
F Er, Jeanette. Do you go out after work?
J On Fridays, maybe?
J No, I don't, sorry. I'm always very tired so I just go home.
F Right. What do you do in the evenings?
J I have dinner and watch TV.
F Do you go to the cinema?
J No, I don't. But I watch a lot of DVDs.
F Yes, me too. What do you do at the weekends?
J Well, on Saturday morning I go shopping. And I don't go out on Saturday evening. I stay in and watch TV.
F Right.
J And on Sunday afternoon I visit my parents.
F Oh, OK. Do you go to concerts?
J Yes, I do. You know, when I have time.
F Well, um ... I've got two tickets for a concert on Sunday evening. Do you want to come with me?
J Er ... thanks, Freddie, but there's a problem - well, 3 problems, actually.
F Oh?
J I'm married! And I've got two children!
F Oh ... well, no problem. Oh look, there's Catherine. Er, I've got something I want to ask her. Excuse me.
J Really!

CD1 55

- 1 What do you do in the evenings? (x2)
- 2 Do you go to the cinema? (x2)
- 3 What do you do at the weekends? (x2)
- 4 Do you go to concerts? (x2)

CD1 56

- 1 A Do you go out a lot in the week?
B Yes, we do.
- 2 A Do you visit your parents at the weekend?
B Yes, I do.
- 3 A Do you go to concerts at the weekend?
B No, we don't.
- 4 A Do you go shopping on Saturdays?
B Yes, I do.
- 5 A Do your parents go out on Saturday evenings?
B No, they don't. They stay in and watch TV.

CD1 58

- 1 I'm 30 today.
- 2 We've got a new baby daughter.
- 3 Today is our 40th wedding anniversary.
- 4 Guess what! We're getting married!
- 5 ... 5, 4, 3, 2, 1 ...

CD1 61

- 1 A What day is it today?
B It's Wednesday.
- 2 A What's the date today?
B It's the fifth of March.
- 3 A What's the date tomorrow?
B It's March the sixth.
- 4 A When's your birthday?
B It's on June the third.

CD1 62

- 1 A When do you start your English course?
B On September the fifth.
- 2 A When's your birthday, Sam?
B It's on the thirteenth of December.
A Oh, that's on Tuesday!
- 3 A When's Mother's Day?
B It's on the fourteenth of March.
A Oh, that's next week.
- 4 A When do you start your new job?
B On the second of July.
- 5 A Excuse me. What's the date today?
B It's October the thirtieth.
A Thanks a lot.
- 6 A When's Matt and Sarah's wedding anniversary?
B I think it's the first of February.
A Oh, no! That's today!

VIDEO 3 CD1 63

LOUISE Here's your tea.

CHRIS Thanks a lot.

- L Chris?
C Yes?
L What's the date today?
C It's the twenty-ninth. Why do you ask?
L It's Sophie's birthday on Thursday.
C Is it?
L Yes, and I haven't got a present for her.
C Oh. Have you got a card?
L Yes, I have.
C Oh, well. That's OK, then.
L But I want to get her a present too. She's one of our best friends.
C OK then. Let's get her a present.
L Right. What shall we get her?
C Oh, I don't know. What about an MP3 player?
L No, I don't think so. I think she's got one.
C OK then. Why don't we get her a book?
L Maybe. But she's got lots of books.
C Hmm. This is difficult, isn't it?
L Yes, it is.
C I know! Let's get her a DVD.
L Yes, that's a good idea. Sophie and Marcus watch a lot of DVDs.
C And I think they've got a new TV.
L OK. Which DVD shall we get?
C Let's get her a film. Then we can watch it first!
L Chris!

CD1 65

- JEANETTE Dominic, do you think I'm a happy person in the morning?
DOMINIC Yes, sometimes. Why do you ask?
J It's this questionnaire. 'Are you an early bird or a night owl?'. I'm sometimes happy in the morning, but I don't have a lot of energy ... so that's b.
D What are the other questions?
J Here, come and have a look. Question two, well, that's easy. I hardly ever get up before nine at the weekend.
D Yes, that's true.
J The next question is about parties.
D Oh, that's easy. When we go to a party, you never stay to the end.
J Yes, that's true, I always leave early, don't I? OK, question four. Yes, I often watch films late at night.
D But you never see the end!
J Yes, you're right. So that's c.
D What about question five? When do you see friends at the weekend?
J Well, I usually see friends in the afternoon. Right, the last question.
D Ah, this is a good one.
J Yes, I'm always happy to talk to friends when they phone before eight in the morning.
D What? That's not true! I always answer the phone.
J Yes, you answer the phone, then I talk to my friends. So, it's a. Right, what's my score?
D OK, your score is ... um ...

CD1 68

- POLLY Hi, Lorna. How are you?
LORNA I'm fine. But how are *you*? You're here and your husband's in Chile!
P Oh, I'm fine. And Trevor's back next month. He's got four weeks' holiday.
L So how is he?
P Well, he's very happy there. The job's great and the hotel's very good. And all of the people are nice. But he doesn't like the weather. It's hot and it hardly ever rains.

CD1 69

- POLLY Well, he's very happy there. The job's great and the hotel's very good. And all of the people are nice. But he doesn't like the weather. It's hot and it hardly ever rains.
LORNA What does he do in his free time?
P Well, you know Trevor. He doesn't read a lot, but he plays video games, of course!
L Oh right.
P And he loves sport, so he watches a lot of sport on TV. They've also got a cinema there, so he sees a lot of new films.
L Oh, that's good.
P Yes, and he's got a very good camera, so he takes a lot of photos.
L But he's usually very active – does he do any sport?
P Oh, yes. He plays a lot of tennis. In fact, he has tennis lessons every week. And he goes to the gym every day. He says the gym at the hotel's great. And he goes swimming a lot. But he doesn't go running because it's hot in the day!
L What about running in the evening? It isn't hot then.
P No, he can't. He starts work in the evening! He studies the stars, remember?
L Of course! Do you talk to him very often?
P No, the time difference is a problem. But we email every day and he sends me lots of photos. Here's one I got this morning ...

CD1 74

- 1 What does she do?
- 2 Does she like rock music?
- 3 What food does she like?
- 4 Does she like sport?
- 5 Does she have any animals?
- 6 What does she do on Saturday evenings?

VIDEO 4 CD1 77

- CLARE This is a nice place.
PAUL Yes, it is, isn't it? I hear the burgers are very good here.
C Hmm. The salads look good too. Oh, it's difficult to decide ... Yes, the chicken salad, I think.

[See exercise 6a p37]

- 1 What would you like to drink?
 2 Would you like anything else?
 3 Would you like a dessert?
 4 Would you like tea or coffee?
 P No, don't worry, Clare. Let me pay for this.
 C Are you sure?
 P Yes, of course.
 C OK. Here's a tip.

CD1 → 79

Would you like to order now? | Yes, I'd like the chicken salad, please. | Can I have the cheeseburger and chips, please? | What would you like to drink? | We'd like a bottle of mineral water, please. | Would you like anything else? | Would you like a dessert? | Yes, I'd like the fruit salad, please. | And can I have the apple pie with cream? | Would you like tea or coffee?

CD1 → 80

- CHEF Morning, Dylan. Good weekend?
 DYLAN Yes, thank you. And you?
 C Yes, thanks. So, what new nationalities have we got in school this week?
 D New nationalities? Er, we've got Japanese, er French and Turkish.
 C OK. Let's write the new breakfast menus.
 D Yes, chef. So what do the Japanese have?
 C Well, they usually have rice and fish and soup, and they drink green tea.
 D Rice ... fish ... soup and ... green tea. OK. And the French?
 C They have a croissant or toast and jam. Oh and they usually have coffee with milk.
 D Croissant ... toast ... jam ... coffee. Well, that's easy. And what about the Turkish students? What do they have for breakfast?
 C Well, they usually have big breakfasts. They have bread, cheese, eggs, olives and tomatoes.
 D Wow! That's a lot! And to drink?
 C They usually drink tea.
 D OK. So that's bread, cheese, eggs, olives, tomatoes and tea.
 C That's right. OK, Dylan, it's time to start cooking.
 D Actually, it's time for my coffee break!

CD1 → 82

- 1 English | musician | Russia | nationality
 2 cheese | chicken | sandwich | teacher
 3 jam | vegetables | engineer | jazz

CD2 → 2

- JASON Granddad, when were you born?
 ALBERT I was born in 1953.
 J So you were thirteen in ... 1966.
 A Yes, that's right.
 J And where were you on your thirteenth birthday?
 A I was in Liverpool with my parents.

Oh, I remember that birthday party very well. It was 30th July 1966, the day England won the World Cup.

- J Really? Wow!
 A Yes, the match was in the afternoon and my party was in the evening.
 J That's amazing! Where was the party?
 A It was at my parents' house – and in the street!
 J Was it a big party?
 A Yes, it was. All my friends were there and lots of my parents' friends were there too. There was music and food and dancing in the street – it was a very happy evening!
 J It sounds like a great party. Was the food good?
 A Yes, there were lots of sandwiches and chicken and ice cream, and a birthday cake with a big football on it.
 J Were your grandparents there?
 A No, they weren't. They were in London at the World Cup Final!

CD2 → 4

I was /wəz/ in Liverpool with my parents. | All my friends were /wə/ at the party. | Our house wasn't very big. | My brothers weren't there. | Where was /wəz/ the party? | Where were /wə/ his grandparents? | Were /wə/ his friends there? | Yes, they were. | No, they weren't. | Was /wəz/ the food good? | Yes, it was. | No, it wasn't. | When were /wə/ you born? | I was /wəz/ born in nineteen fifty-three. | Where was /wəz/ Matt born? He was /wəz/ born in Liverpool.

CD2 → 6

a August 16th b 1971 c two d 1986
 e twelve f \$2 billion g 1999

CD2 → 10

- 1 My parents study Italian. My parents studied Italian.
 2 They finished work at six. They finish work at six.
 3 They stayed in on Saturday. They stay in on Saturday.
 4 I live in London. I lived in London.
 5 My parents work in Germany. My parents worked in Germany.
 6 I visit him every week. I visited him every week.

VIDEO → 5 CD2 → 12

- 1 EMILY How was your weekend?
 TIM Terrible. I was ill all weekend.
 E Oh, dear. What was wrong?
 T I had a really bad cold.
 E What a shame. Are you OK now?
 T Yes, much better, thanks. And how was your weekend?
 E It was OK. I stayed at home on Saturday.
 T Oh, right. What did you do?
 E I did the washing, checked my emails, watched TV – you know, the usual.

And then on Sunday I went to the cinema.

- T Oh, nice. What did you see?
 E It was called *A Day in the Life*.
 T Oh, yes. What was it like?
 E It was great. I really enjoyed it.
 T Yeah, I'd like to see that. Oh, we're late for the meeting. Let's go!
 2 SIMON Hi. How are you?
 RACHEL I'm very well, thanks. I went away for the weekend – to Spain!
 S Wow! Where did you go?
 R We went to Madrid. It was wonderful!
 S Oh, great! Who did you go with?
 R My friend, Ingrid.
 S And where did you stay?
 R We stayed with some friends from university.
 S Oh, nice.
 R What about you? How was your weekend?
 S Oh, not very interesting. I worked all Sunday.
 R Really? What did you do?
 S I wrote that report you wanted. It took me 10 hours.
 R You're joking! When did you finish it?
 S At 11 o'clock last night. Here it is.
 R That's great! Thanks, Simon.
 S No problem.
 R OK, let's start this meeting. Where are Emily and Tim?
 S Here they are.
 T Hi there. Sorry we're late. Emily wanted to get a coffee.
 E Tim!

CD2 → 13

- 1 TIM I was ill all weekend.
 EMILY Oh, dear.
 2 TIM I had a really bad cold.
 EMILY What a shame.
 3 EMILY I stayed at home on Saturday.
 TIM Oh, right.
 4 EMILY I went to the cinema.
 TIM Oh, nice.
 5 RACHEL I went away for the weekend – to Spain!
 SIMON Wow!
 6 RACHEL We went to Madrid. It was wonderful!
 SIMON Oh, great!
 7 SIMON I worked all Sunday.
 RACHEL Really?
 8 SIMON It took me 10 hours.
 RACHEL You're joking!

CD2 → 16

/ɒ/ hot | coffee | shopping | bottle
 /əʊ/ old | sofa | mobile | open
 /ʌ/ son | wonderful | sometimes | comfortable
 /ə/ actor | tomato | computer | director

CD2 17

They didn't like each other at first.
 They didn't finish their course.
 They didn't have any money.
 They didn't get the money for a month.
 They didn't have a bank account.

CD2 18

PRESENTER Welcome to Book of the Day. Today we have the writer Wes Clark, talking about his new book, *Planet Google*. First of all, Wes, is it true? Did you really write this book in twelve weeks?

WES Yes, I did. And I enjoyed writing it because Larry Page and Sergey Brin are really interesting people.

P OK – so, let's start at the beginning. Where are they from?

W Well, Larry Page is American but Sergey Brin was born in Russia. His family went to live in the USA in 1979, when Sergey was six. But his mother wasn't very happy about going to the USA.

P Did she want to stay in Russia?

W Yes, she did.

P So did Sergey's parents find work in the USA?

W Yes, they did. Sergey's father got a job at Maryland University. He was a mathematics teacher there.

P And what about Sergey? Did he study mathematics?

W Yes, he did. He studied mathematics and computer science at the same university.

P At the same university as his father?

W Yes, that's right.

P Did Larry go to Maryland University?

W No, he didn't. He went to Michigan State University. His mother and father were computer science teachers there.

P Really? So Larry was at the same university as his parents!

W Yes, that's correct. And Larry's family always had computers in their home. He was the first student in his school to do his homework on a computer.

P Right. And then Page and Brin went to Stanford University, and now, of course, they're both very rich ...

CD2 19

Did Sergey and Larry meet in nineteen ninety-four? | Did they like each other at first? | Did Sergey go to Maryland University? | Did Larry's parents teach mathematics? | Did Sergey study computer science? | Yes, he did. | No, he didn't. | Did Sergey and Larry launch Google in nineteen ninety-nine? | Yes, they did. | No, they didn't.

CD2 21

1 I can't find my mobile.
 2 You can use my phone if you want.
 3 A lot of people can't understand it.

4 You can buy 3D TVs online.
 5 I can't turn off the TV!
 6 Can you download TV programmes?

CD2 22

You can watch TV programmes online. | You can use my phone if you want. | I can't find my mobile. | A lot of people can't understand it. | You could only get three channels. | You couldn't record TV programmes. | Can you watch TV online? | Yes, you can. | No, you can't. | Could you record programmes in nineteen seventy-four? | Yes, you could. | No, you couldn't.

CD2 23

ANSWERS 2 could 3 could 4 could
 5 couldn't 6 could 7 couldn't 8 can't
 9 can 10 can 11 can't

CD2 24

damage, damaged | sail, sailed | die, died |
 receive, received | crash, crashed |
 save, saved | buy, bought | lose, lost |
 find, found | put, put | say, said | tell, told

CD2 25

ANNOUNCER It's one o'clock and here's George Lucan with the news.

NEWSREADER Over sixty people are in hospital after a train crash in Scotland this morning. The train was on its way to London but crashed only ten minutes after it left Edinburgh.

Fifty-three people died in storms in Florida last night. The storms damaged hundreds of homes and many people are without water and electricity.

Bill and Nancy Potter, who want to be the first eighty-year-old couple to sail round the world, are missing off the coast of Australia. Their family and friends became worried when the couple didn't arrive in Sydney last weekend as planned. Helicopters are now looking for the couple and their boat.

And finally, supermarket manager Joe Hall won over thirteen million pounds in last night's lottery – thanks to his dog! Joe told reporters today that his dog, Max, chose the numbers!

A That's the news this Thursday lunchtime. And now over to Jan Adams for the travel news.

VIDEO 6 CD2 26

1 **PAUL** I really enjoyed that burger.
CLARE Yeah, the salad was good too.
P By the way, did you read about the winner of this week's lottery?
C No. How much did he win?
P Over 13 million pounds.
C Really?
P Yeah, and guess what? His dog chose the numbers for him!

C You're joking! How?
P He wrote 50 numbers on envelopes, put biscuits in them and put them around the house.
C Right.
P And then he used the numbers of the first six envelopes that the dog found. And now he's a millionaire!
C That's amazing!

2 **WAYNE** Did you hear about that train crash?

ALISON No, where was it?

W Somewhere near Edinburgh.

A Oh, dear.

W Yes. Over sixty people are in hospital.

A Oh no, that's terrible.

W Yes, I know.

JOSH Mum, Dad, can we talk about the holiday now?

W Yes, OK. Let's have a look ...

3 **TIM** Here's your coffee.

EMILY Thanks a lot.

T You have family in the USA, don't you?

E Yes, why?

T Did you hear about the storms in Florida?

E Yes, isn't it awful? I saw it on the news this morning.

T Is your family OK?

E Yes, they're fine. They don't live in Florida. They live near Washington.

T Oh, right. Oh, we're late for a meeting *again*!

E Come on, let's go.

4 **CHRIS** Did you read about the eighty-year-old couple and their boat?

LOUISE No, what happened?

C Their boat was damaged in a storm and they were missing for two days.

L Oh, dear. Are they OK?

C Yes. A helicopter found them yesterday off the coast of Australia.

L Oh, that's good.

C Maybe we can sail around the world when we're eighty.

L You're joking, I hope.

C Yes, of course.

CD2 27

Did you hear about that train crash? | No, where was it? | Did you read about the eighty-year-old couple and their boat? | No, what happened? | Oh, that's good. | Oh no, that's terrible. | Yes, isn't it awful? | Oh, dear. Are they OK? | Really? | You're joking!

CD2 28

Tonight's programme looks at the work of Shigeru Miyamoto, the world-famous video game designer. Shigeru was born in Kyoto, Japan, on November 16th 1952. He studied art at Kanazawa College of Art from 1970 to 1975. Between 1998 and 2010 he won awards for his work in the USA, the UK, France and Spain. But Shigeru lives a very

ordinary life. He's married with two children and he usually goes to work by bike. In his free time he plays the guitar and he writes music. He once said, "They say video games are bad for you. But that's what they said about rock 'n' roll." Shigeru designed the first Mario Brothers game in 1983 and he says Mario is his favourite video game character. Shigeru was the first video game designer to tell a story in his video games. All Mario Brothers video games have a hero, a princess and a villain ...

CD2 31

Listening Test (See Teacher's Book)

CD2 32

TIP • Words in **pink** are weak forms.

- A JOSIE** Where **were** you born, Clive?
CLIVE I **was** born in a small town called Burford, near Oxford.
J How long did you live there?
C We lived there **for** 12 years and then we moved **to** London. But my grandparents still live in Burford.
J What's it like?
C Oh, it's really nice. There **are** lots of beautiful old buildings and interesting shops. There isn't a station, but there's one at Charlbury, about five miles away.
J **Are** there any good pubs in Burford?
C Yes, there are. In the town centre there **are** four or five really nice pubs and all **of** them have fantastic food.
J So when did **you** last go there?
C About six months ago. I **was** at my grandparents' house **for** New Year.
J Oh, nice.
B VANESSA Hi, James. Did **you** have a good weekend?
JAMES Yes, it **was** OK, thanks. I stayed **at** home all weekend. What about you?
V I went **to** visit my brother in Ireland.
J Really? Where **does** he live?
V In a small village called Eyeries. It's about two hours **from** Cork airport.
J Oh, right. What's it like?
V Well, there's only one road, and all **of** the houses **are** different colours!
J Really? It sounds lovely.
V Yes, it is. There **are** lots of beautiful beaches nearby and it's a good place **to** go **for** walks.
J Is there a hotel?
V No, there isn't. And there aren't any restaurants. But there **are** two bars and a couple **of** shops.
J Oh, OK.
V If **you** want **to** go there one day, I'm sure **you can** stay with my brother.
J Oh, thanks a lot.
C BRIAN Hi, Aunt Alice. Happy birthday!
ALICE Hello, Brian. You remembered!
B Of course. I couldn't forget my favourite

aunt's birthday!

- A** Oh, thank you. And how are things with you? Do you like living in Brisbane?
B Yes, I love it here. There are lots of things to do and the people are very friendly.
A And how's your new flat?
B It's great. There's a nice beach about five minutes away and there are lots of bars and restaurants. It's a great place to go out at night.
A Oh, that's nice, dear. I'm pleased that you're happy there.
B Yes, I am. And how's Uncle Thomas?
A Oh, he's very well, thanks ...

CD2 37

- ESTATE AGENT** Hello. Can I help you?
JOHN Hi, I'm John, and this is my wife, Becky.
BECKY Hello.
EA Nice to meet you.
J You too. We'd like some information about the flat in Park Road, please. We saw it on your website.
EA Of course. What would you like to know?
J Er, firstly, is there any furniture?
EA Yes, there are some chairs, a sofa, beds – it's fully furnished. But, er, there isn't a TV.
J Oh, that's OK. And the bedrooms – are they big?
EA Er, well, one bedroom's very big, but the other is, er, quite small. It's fine for a child.
B That's OK. But we haven't got any children.
EA Right. Well, there's a lot of space for two people.
J Hmm. And the bathroom. Has it got a shower?
EA Yes, there's a shower and a bath. It's very nice.
J OK. Is there anything else, Becky?
B Yes, what's in the kitchen?
EA There's a cooker, a fridge and a washing machine. And I think there are some chairs and a table.
B Right. And are there any shops near the flat?
EA Yes, there are some shops only 5 minutes away. And it's near the station.
J That's not bad for £800 a month.
B Yes, maybe.
EA It *is* a beautiful flat. Would you like to see it?
J Er, yes I think so, don't you?
B Yes, definitely.
EA Great! What about, er, today at 3 o'clock?
J Yes, 3 o'clock is fine. Can we meet at the flat?

CD2 39

- ANSWERS** 2 some 3 any 4 some 5 any
 6 some 7 some 8 any 9 a 10 any 11 some
 12 some 13 a

VIDEO 7 CD2 40

- 1 SALES ASSISTANT 1** Hi. Can I help you?
PAUL Yes, please. Have you got any guide books for London?
SA1 Yes, they're over there.
P Oh yes, I see. Thanks. ... I'll have this one, please. How much is this map?
SA1 This one is ... £5.95.
P OK, I'll have the map too.
SA1 Sure. ...
P And can I have four stamps for Europe, please?
SA1 I'm sorry, we don't sell stamps for Europe.
P No problem.
SA1 Anything else?
P No, that's all, thanks.
SA1 Right, that's £19.45, please.
P Here you are.
SA1 Would you like a bag?
P No, thanks. I've got one.
SA1 OK. Here's your change and your receipt.
P Thank you.
SA1 Have a nice day.
P You too. Bye.
SA1 Bye.
2 SALES ASSISTANT 2 Do you need any help?
CLARE Oh, yes, please. How much are these lamps?
SA2 The big ones are £25 and the small ones are £17.50.
C Um, OK. I'll have this one, please.
SA2 Of course. Would you like anything else?
C Yes, do you sell suitcases?
SA2 Yes, we do. They're on the second floor.
C OK. I'll buy this first.
SA2 Right. ... Right, that's £17.50, please.
C Thanks.
SA2 ... Your pin number, please. ... OK. Here you are. Your receipt's in the bag.
C Great. Thanks for your help. Bye.
SA2 Goodbye.

CD2 43

/ɔ:/ shorts | strawberry | tall | August |
 bought | divorced
 /ɜ:/ shirt | Thursday | word | birthday |
 person | skirt

CD2 45

- FRANK** Janet? It's Frank.
JANET Frank! Where *are* you?
F I'm at the station. The train was late. I'm waiting for a taxi.
J But we've got that meeting with the Tamada brothers at 10 o'clock!
F Yes, I know. Are they there yet?
J Yes, they're sitting in your office.
F Oh no!
J And they aren't looking very happy.
F Hold on ... here's a taxi. Start the meeting without me, but take notes.

Oh, and Janet?

- J Yes?
F Remember – this isn't your contract. It's my contract!
J Of course it is, Frank ... bye! Liz?
L Yes?
J Where's Adriana?
L Oh, she's working at home today.
J Oh, dear. I need someone to take notes at the Tamada meeting.
L I'm not doing anything important at the moment. Do you want me to do it?
J Actually, I want you to finish those reports.
L Well, Danny isn't doing anything. I can ask him.
J OK, thanks.

CD2 → 46

I'm waiting for a taxi. | They're sitting in your office. | They aren't looking very happy. | She's working at home today. | I'm not doing anything important at the moment. | Danny isn't doing anything.

CD2 → 47

ANSWERS 2 's reading 3 isn't reading ('s not reading) 4 's studying 5 'm waiting 6 aren't working ('re not working) 7 'm going

CD2 → 48

- FRANK Hello, Liz, it's Frank.
LIZ Hi, Frank. Where are you calling from?
F I'm in a taxi. There was an accident or something. We're not moving.
L Oh, dear.
F Look, Janet isn't answering her phone. What's she doing?
L She's talking to the Tamada brothers. And Danny's taking notes.
F Oh, right. Where are they having the meeting?
L Er ... in Janet's office.
F In Janet's office? Oh no! Liz, please go and tell Janet not to sign that contract.
L OK, Frank. See you soon. And hurry up!

CD2 → 49

- FRANK Hi, Liz. Are they still in Janet's office?
LIZ Yes, they are. Good luck!
F Right ... Hello, everybody. Sorry I'm late.
J Er, hello, Frank. Mr Tamada and I are just signing the contract.
F No, you're not, Janet. I'm signing the contract.
J OK, Frank. It's all yours.
F I'm so sorry I wasn't here when you arrived. There was an accident and I ...

CD2 → 50

ANSWERS 2 Are you having a nice time? 3 What are you doing? 4 Are the kids doing their homework? 5 What are they doing?

CD2 → 51

Are you working late this evening? | Are you having a nice time? | What are you doing? | Are the kids doing their homework? | What are they doing?

CD2 → 52

PRESENTER And with all this snow, let's go over to Jan Adams in the centre of London for this morning's traffic news.
JAN Well, people aren't very happy here in the city – there aren't any trains, traffic isn't moving and there are problems on the tube and the buses. Excuse me, sir, are you on your way to work?

FIRST MAN Yes, I am. I usually go by train, but I'm taking the bus today and I'm very late.
J What time do you usually start work?
FM I start at eight. And it's eight thirty now. And I'm still waiting for a bus! Why can't they do something about the roads?
J Thank you, sir. Excuse me, madam, are you going to work?

WOMAN Yes, I am.
J And do you always walk to work?
W No, I usually cycle, but I'm walking today because the roads are so bad.
J So how long is your journey to work on a normal day?
W About twenty minutes.
J OK. And how long is it taking today?
W Well, I left home at half past seven, that's about an hour ago.
J Well, good luck. Excuse me, sir, are you on your way to work?

SECOND MAN Yes, I am.
J And how do you usually travel to work?
SM When I'm working in London, I usually take the tube.
J Right. And how are you getting to work today?
SM Well, today I'm walking because of the snow.
J And where are you from?
SM I'm from Canada.
J Oh, so you know all about snow.
SM Yes, it snows a lot in Canada every winter. And we never have these problems! Why isn't anyone doing anything about the roads?
J Thank you. Well as you can hear, everyone's asking the same question today – why can't they do something about the roads?
P Thanks, Jan. That was Jan Adams reporting from the centre of London.

CD2 → 54

ANSWERS 2 work 3 'm working 4 'm sitting 5 'm writing 6 don't work 7 's snowing 8 drive 9 visit 10 're staying 11 is answering 12 'm watching 13 don't watch

CD2 → 55

ANSWERS 2 Is (she) working ... 3 ... is (she) doing ... 4 Does (she) work ... 5 ... do (Lenny and Eve usually) do ... 6 ... are (they) doing ... 7 Does (Eve normally) watch ... 8 ... is (she) watching ...

CD2 → 56 CD2 → 57

1 MESSAGE Hello, this is Alan Wick's voicemail. I'm sorry I can't take your call at the moment. If you leave a message, I'll get back to you. Thanks for calling.

[end of CD2 → 56]

EMILY Hello, it's Emily Wise here, from the contracts office at 3DUK. Can we meet tomorrow morning at about 10? I need to talk to you about the new contract with Morris Computers. Can you call me back? Thanks. Bye.

2 MESSAGE Welcome to the NRL voicemail service. I'm sorry, but the person you called is not available. Please leave your message after the tone. **[end of CD2 → 56]**

EMILY Hi, Clare, it's Emily. Would you like to meet for coffee after work? Call me later – I'm at work. Bye!

3 MESSAGE Thank you for calling the Queen's Theatre. Please choose one of the following 3 options. For ticket information, press 1. To book tickets by credit card, press 2. For all other enquiries, press zero. **[end of CD2 → 56]** You are in a queue. Please hold. Your call will be answered as soon as possible.

TICKET SELLER Hello, Queen's Theatre. Can I help you?

EMILY Oh, hi. Are there any tickets available for *Not Now* on Saturday?

TS Yes, there are.

E How much are they?

TS They're £24.50 and £38.

E £24.50 and £38. OK, thanks a lot. I'll think about it. Bye.

TS Goodbye.

4 **[CD2 → 56 only]** I'm sorry. There's no one available to take your call. Please try later.

VIDEO → 8 CD2 → 58

1 TIM Did you check that contract for Morris Computers?
EMILY Yes, I did. It's fine, I think.
T Good. We need to check this with Alan Wick too. ... Hello, 3DUK. Can I help you?

CLARE Hello, can I speak to Emily, please?

T Hold on a moment. She's here.

E Hello. Emily Wise.

C Hi. It's Clare. I got your message.

E Good. Do you want to go for a coffee after work?

C Sure. Is six o'clock OK?

E Yes, that's fine. Let's meet at Café Uno.
 C OK. See you there at six. Bye.
 E Bye. ... Sorry about that, Tim. Right, where were we?
 T The Morris Computers contract. We need to talk to Alan Wick.
 E Yes, I'm waiting for him to call me back.
 T Great. And we need to talk to Chris Morris.
 E Yes, I know. I'll call him now.

2 LOUISE Hi, love.
 CHRIS Hi.
 L I'm going to Sophie's for a coffee. Do you want to come?
 C No, I can't, I'm sorry. I've got a conference call in a minute and it's quite important.
 L OK, see you later.
 C Bye.
 L Bye.
 C ... Hello?
 EMILY Hello, is that Chris Morris?
 C Speaking.
 E This is Emily Wise from 3DUK.
 C Hello, Emily. Look, I've got a conference call in a minute. Can I call you back in an hour?
 E Of course. Call me on my mobile.
 C Right. I'll call you later.
 E Thanks a lot. Bye.
 C Bye. ... Hello? ... Jason, good to hear from you. ... Hello, Andrea. How are things?

CD2 61

- 1 milk | his | ill | excited | window | interesting | chicken
- 2 teeth | he's | ski | beach | meeting | thirteen | machine

CD3 1

JESSICA When did **you** last go on holiday, Andy?
 ANDY In September last year.
 J Where did **you** go?
 A I went **to** Cape Town **for** two weeks.
 J Oh, great! I really want **to go to** South Africa. Did **you** have a good time?
 A Yes, I did. It's a fantastic city and the people **were** really friendly.
 J Who did **you** go with?
 A Nigel, a friend **from** university.
 J Oh, right. What did **you** do there?
 A Well, on the first day we went on a guided tour **of** the city, which **was** very interesting.
 J Right.
 A And the next day we went to Table Mountain **for** a picnic. Lots **of** tourists do that.
 J Did you walk up the mountain?
 A No, we went by cable car. The view **from** the top **was** amazing!
 J **And** where did **you** stay?
 A We stayed with Nigel's brother. He lives in the centre **of** Cape Town.

J Oh, that **was** lucky. And how did **you** travel around?
 A **For** the first week we travelled by public transport, **and** then we rented a car **for** the second week. We drove to a wildlife park **to see some** elephants. It **was** a beautiful place – **and** there **were** elephants outside our room every morning!
 J Ah, that sounds fantastic! What else did **you** do?
 A Well, we went **to** Robben Island **to** visit the prison. That **was** really interesting. We saw the cell where Nelson Mandela lived **for** 27 years.
 J Wow!
 A And on our last day we went on a boat trip **to** see the whales. That **was** the best day **of** the holiday, I think – I took lots **of** photos.
 J It sounds like **you** had a great time.
 A Yes, it **was** amazing. I didn't want **to** come home.

CD3 3

to see some elephants → We drove to a wildlife park to see some elephants. | to visit the prison → We went to Robben Island to visit the prison. | to see the whales → We went on a boat trip to see the whales.

CD3 4

PATRICK OK, so it's a week in Cairo or a week in Sharm El Sheikh.
 JULIET Most people just call it Sharm, I think.
 P OK. Where do you want to go, Juliet? Sharm or Cairo?
 J Well, I think Sharm's more beautiful than Cairo.
 P Yes, it is. But Cairo's more interesting.
 J Yes, maybe. But Sharm looks nicer than Cairo. It's a beautiful place and the diving looks amazing!
 P Yes, but Cairo's a fantastic city. There are lots of things to do there. We can go on boat trips along the Nile, visit the Pyramids, go to the Egyptian Museum, and, er, go shopping?
 J Maybe. But Cairo's busier than Sharm.
 P Well, all capital cities are busy. And the hotel in Cairo is cheaper.
 J We don't need to spend a lot of money when we're there. I'm happy to go to the beach every day and go snorkelling.
 P OK, but you know I'm not really a beach person.
 J Well, you can rent a motorbike and go into the desert, or, er, go on a camel ride.
 P Yes, I know. But I still think Cairo's better than Sharm.
 J Sharm's probably safer too, especially at night. And it's more popular with young people. I just want to go to the beach and relax, Patrick. It's a *holiday*!
 P Well, maybe we can go to the beach near Cairo, you know, just for a day or two.

And there are islands on the Nile, I think – maybe you can go snorkelling there. And then *next* year we can go anywhere you want.

CD3 6

VIC Hi, Patrick, how are you?
 PATRICK Hi, Vic. I'm fine, thanks. Just back from holiday, actually.
 V Really? Where did you go?
 P Er, we went to Egypt, a place on the Red Sea called Sharm El Sheikh.
 V Yes, I know it. Very nice. But I thought you didn't like beach holidays.
 P Me? Oh yes, I *love* the beach. I chose the holiday, actually – Juliet wanted to go to Cairo!
 V Really?

VIDEO 9 CD3 7

WAYNE Well, it's Saturday tomorrow. What would you like to do?
 ALISON I'd like to go to the beach.
 JOSH Oh, no. Not the beach again. We went to the beach last weekend.
 W He's right. I'd rather go somewhere different.
 A Well, would you like to go to London?
 W Yes, that's a good idea.
 A We can spend the day at Regent's Park. It's really beautiful and there's lots to do there.
 W That sounds good. Do you want to do that, Josh?
 J Do what, Dad?
 W Do you want to go to Regent's Park?
 J Not really. I'd rather stay at home.
 A But Regent's Park is a great place to visit. You can go on boat rides and there's a really good open air theatre.
 J Mmm. Theatre. That's *really* interesting. Anyway, what about Daisy? Why aren't you asking her?
 W You know your sister works at the restaurant every Saturday.
 J Lucky her.
 W OK, so where do you want to go?
 J I want to go to Longleat.
 W Oh, I don't think so. It's a long way.
 J But some friends from school went there last week. And there's a safari park where you drive around and look at all the lions and tigers and monkeys from your car.
 A That sounds quite dangerous.
 J It isn't if you don't open the windows!
 W And you can see animals in Regent's Park – that's where London Zoo is!
 J But I went to London Zoo last year with the school. I want to go somewhere different.
 A OK, let's go to Longleat. Would you like to ask a friend to come?
 J Yeah, OK. Can I ask Elliott?
 A Fine. Tell him to be here tomorrow morning at eight.
 J Great. Thanks, Mum.

W OK, that's decided, then. Now, what's on TV?

CD3 - 11

2 mountain 3 Wednesday 4 answer
5 wrong 6 postcard 7 friendly 8 breakfast

CD3 - 12

DOCTOR Hello, Mrs Lee.
MRS LEE Hello, doctor.
D So – you're here for a check-up.
L Yes.
D Right. First let's see what you weigh.
Over here, please. Mmm. 70 kilos. Four kilos more than six months ago.
L Really?
D Yes. Do you do much exercise?
L Well, with three children, I don't really have time.
D Do you walk to school with them?
L No, not very often. Maybe once or twice a month. That's because we're usually late, so I take them in the car. Then I drive to work.
D And you work in an office, is that right?
L Well, yes.
D A lot of sitting ... Ah, but you started going to a gym last March. How often do you go?
L Er, not very often. Perhaps three times a month.
D You should do some exercise three times a *week*, really.
L Yes, I know, but my husband works away from home, so it's difficult to get to the gym.
D Maybe ... you should get a dog. Then you and the children can take it for walks twice a day.
L Maybe. The children would love a dog.
D And what about food? What do you usually eat?
L I don't have much time to cook in the week so we have things like pizzas and sausages. And I eat quite a lot of biscuits. I know I shouldn't, but they're so nice with coffee.
D Well, you shouldn't eat so many pizzas and biscuits. And you should eat more fruit and vegetables and do more exercise. But you probably know that.
L Er, yes, I'll try.
D Right. Let's listen to your heart.

CD3 - 13

ANSWERS 1 should 2 shouldn't 3 should
4 shouldn't 5 should 6 shouldn't

CD3 - 14

TINA OK, Leo. I've got four people for the *Break* poster. See what you think.
LEO Right. Where's the first one? Hmm, he's not bad.
T Yes, I quite like him. He looks friendly, the type of person who buys a lot of chocolate.
L I can see that!

T Yes, he's a bit overweight, isn't he? Is that a problem?
L Er, I'm not sure. Who else have you got?
T Well, there's him.
L He's better, maybe. He's tall and good-looking.
T Yes, he's very good-looking. But I don't know about the long hair.
L Yes, you've got a point there. Who's next?
T What about her?
L Yes, she's nice. Slim, long dark hair, and she's very attractive.
T Yes, she's beautiful – but, do we want a beautiful person on this poster?
L I'm not sure. Is that all of them?
T No, there's one more.
L Hmm, she's older than the other models, isn't she?
T Yes, but maybe that's good. Older people buy a lot of chocolate. And she's attractive – she looks very friendly and happy, I think.
L Yes, she does.
T And eating chocolate makes people feel happy.
L Yes, you're right. Well, let's choose.
T OK. Do we want a man or a woman?

CD3 - 15

TINA OK. Do we want a man or a woman?
LEO I think that we want a woman.
T Why's that?
L Well, women buy more chocolate than men. So they want to see a woman on the poster.
T Yes, good point.
L And people know that chocolate can make you overweight – but everyone wants to be thin.
T So we want someone slim.
L And people always think they're young – so they want to see young people on posters. Which means ...
T Zoë. OK. Let's have Zoë. Fine. Shall I ask her to come for a meeting?
L Yes, good idea. Right, what else do we need to talk about?

CD3 - 16

TINA Hi, Leo. I hear everyone really likes the *Break* posters. Well done.
LEO Thanks a lot.
T And I hear you've got a new girlfriend.
L Er, yes, I have.
T **What's she like?**
L Well, she's friendly and outgoing. And she's very beautiful.
T Oh, right. **When did you meet her?**
L Er, about three weeks ago.
T **And what does she like doing?**
L Well, she likes clubbing and going to restaurants. The same as me, really.
T OK. **What does she look like?**
L Well, she's tall and slim, and she's got long dark hair.

T **How did you meet her?**
L Oh, er, we met here, you know, in the office.
T Really? **What does she do?**
L Er, she's a model.
T Leo, **what's your new girlfriend's name?**
L It's, er, Zoë. You know, from the *Break* advert.
T Oh, really.

CD3 - 18

1 What's she like? 2 What does she look like? 3 What's he like? 4 What does she like doing? 5 What does he look like? 6 What are they like?

CD3 - 19

I've got a stomach ache. | I've got a headache. | I've got toothache. | I've got a sore throat. | I've got a cold. | I've got a cough. | I've got a temperature. | I feel ill. | I feel terrible. | I feel sick. | I feel better. | My back hurts. | My arm hurts. | My foot hurts. | My leg hurts.

VIDEO - 10 CD3 - 20

1 SIMON Hi, Rachel.
RACHEL Hello, Simon. You don't look very well. Are you OK?
S No, I feel terrible.
R Oh, dear. What's wrong?
S I've got a terrible stomach ache.
R Well, maybe you shouldn't go to work today.
S I know, but Emily and I have got an important meeting this morning. It's with some people from Morris Computers.
R Well, why don't you call them and cancel it?
S Yes, maybe you're right. We can have the meeting next week instead.
R Good. And then go home.
S OK. That's a good idea.
R And maybe you should go to the doctor.
S Yes, perhaps.
R OK. Bye, Simon. I hope you get better soon.
S Bye, Rachel. Thanks a lot. ... Hello, is that Chris Morris? ... Look, I'm sorry, but we can't have our meeting today. I'm not very well. ... Yes, next Tuesday morning's fine with me too ...
2 EMILY Hi, Tim.
TIM Hi, Emily. Are you alright?
E No, I don't feel very well.
T Oh, dear. What's the matter?
E I've got a headache and a sore throat.
T Why don't you go home?
E I can't. I've got a meeting this morning. It's really important.
T Who's your meeting with?
E Simon, and some people from Morris Computers.

T Well, Simon called about ten minutes ago and left a message. He's ill and he's not coming in today.
 E Oh, no!
 T And the meeting with Morris Computers is next Tuesday morning now.
 E Oh, so there isn't a meeting today. That's great. So I *can* go home.
 T Yes. Take the day off. You should be in bed. And don't come to work tomorrow.
 E OK. Thanks a lot.
 T No problem. Get well soon.
 E Thanks, Tim. Bye.

CD3 - 22

ANSWERS 2b 3a 4b 5a 6b

CD3 - 25

/æ/ hat | rabbit | contract | family
 /ɑ:/ bath | answers | arm | dance
 /eɪ/ lazy | radio | games | famous
 /ə/ ago | another | elephant | island

CD3 - 27

1 MEG Happy New Year, Jack!
 JACK Thanks, Meg. And happy New Year to you.
 M Any New Year's resolutions?
 J Yes, I have, actually. I'm not going to work until ten every night. I'm going to work less and have more fun. And I'm going to have a holiday this year.
 M Good! Where are you going?
 J I don't know. Somewhere I can relax.
 M Good idea.
 J And what about you? What are you going to do this year?
 M I'm going to move to Australia.
 J Wow! When did you decide that?
 M Oh, a couple of months ago.
 J That's fantastic news! Where are you going to live?
 M In Melbourne. I've got family there.
 J Well, that's great. Good luck.
 M Thanks a lot.
 2 ED Hello, David. Hi, Val.
 DAVID Hi, Ed. Happy New Year!
 E Happy New Year to you too!
 VAL Have you got any New Year's resolutions?
 E Yes, I'm going to do a computer course.
 D Oh, right. Why computers?
 E I want to get a new job. The one I've got now is really boring.
 V Where are you going to do the course?
 E I don't know. I'm going to start looking for courses next week.
 D Right. Well, good luck with that.
 E Thanks. And what about you? Any New Year's resolutions?
 D Yes, we're going to get fit.
 E Oh, right.
 D And Val's going to stop smoking.
 V Yes, I am. And David's going to lose weight. Well, he says he is.

D Er, yes, I want to lose eight kilos. I'm going to do more exercise and I'm not going to eat sweet things any more.
 WOMAN Chocolate cake, anyone?
 D No, not for me, thank you.
 W Oh, go on. It's really good!
 D Well, er ... just a little, thank you.
 V David!
 D Oh, didn't I say? I'm going to start my New Year's resolution *after* the party.

CD3 - 30

ERIC Wow, Jenny, that was a difficult exam. And I revised really hard for this one.
 JENNY Yes, me too. Do you think you passed?
 E I don't know. The first part was OK, but I couldn't answer the last two questions.
 J Yes, they were really difficult. Hi, Melanie. How did it go?
 MELANIE It wasn't easy, was it? But it's over, that's the important thing!
 J Absolutely! So how are you going to celebrate tonight, Melanie?
 M Well, there's a big end-of-exams party at Caroline's house, so I might go to that. Or I might stay at home and watch a film. What about you, Eric?
 E Well, first I'm going to go home and sleep.
 M Yes, good idea.
 E Then I'm going to meet some friends in town at seven. After that, I don't know. We might go to Caroline's, or we might go to that new club on Market Street.
 M And what about you, Jenny?
 J Well, first I'm going to phone my mum. But I'm not sure what I'm going to do this evening. I might go to the party or I might go out for a meal with Sam.
 M Anyway, I'm sure of one thing.
 E What's that?
 M That's the last exam I'm ever going to take in my life!
 J Yeah, me too.
 E And what about the summer? Have you got any plans? ...

CD3 - 31

I might go to the party. | I might stay at home and watch a film. | I might go out for a meal with Sam. | We might go to Caroline's. | We might go to that new club on Market Street.

CD3 - 33

ANSWERS 2a 3b 4a 5b 6a

CD3 - 34

ERIC And what about after the holidays? Are you going to look for a job?
 JENNY Yes, Sam and I are going to Spain in September. We're going to look for a job there.
 MELANIE What kind of job?

J I don't know. We might work for a holiday company or something. Sam wants to teach English.
 M My cousin's going to teach English in Argentina next year.
 J Yes, that's a good idea. I might do that.
 M And what about you, Eric?
 E I'm going to do a business course in London.
 M Really? How are you going to pay for it?
 E Good question. My parents are going to help me.
 M Oh, that's lucky. Business courses are really expensive.
 E Yes, I know. I need to get £10,000 before September.
 J So are you going to sell your car?
 E Yes, I am, actually. Why, do you want to buy it?
 J I might. How much do you want for it?
 E Oh, about thirty thousand pounds.
 J Yeah, right. You mean the cost of a business course!
 E Well, and the rent for a nice flat in London.
 M You don't need to do a course, Eric. You're already a businessman!

CD3 - 35

PAULINE Hello, Seaton Holiday Homes, can I help you?
 ALISON Oh, hello, I'm phoning about your advert for Benton House.
 P Of course. When would you like to stay there?
 A From July 14th for 2 weeks. Is it available then?
 P Let me have a look. Er, yes, it is.
 A Great. How much is it?
 P Two weeks in July, er, that's £620 per week.
 A Oh, that's more expensive than the advert.
 P Well, it's the school holidays, you see. Everything's more expensive then.
 A OK. Is Hill Place cheaper?
 P Yes, it is. In July it's, er ... £595 per week.
 A And is it available for those two weeks?
 P Let me check ... Oh, it's available the first week, but not the second. Sorry.
 A Right ... OK, can I book Benton House, please?
 P Certainly. Can I have your name, please?
 A Yes, my name's Alison Wilson.
 P And do you have an email address, Mrs Wilson? ...

CD3 - 36

1 Go along Abbott Street and it's on the right, next to the bus station.
 2 Go along the High Street, past the station, and it's on the left, opposite the department store.
 3 Go along the High Street, past the department store, and turn right. Go along North Road and it's on the left.

- 4 Go along Abbott Street and turn right by the river. That's West Street. Go along that street for about 100 metres and it's on the right, next to the car park.

VIDEO 11 CD3 37

- 1 ALISON Excuse me. Is there a newsagent's near here?
MAN 1 Yes, there's one in Berry Street.
A Where's that?
M1 Go along this road and turn right. That's Berry Street. Go past the pub and the newsagent's is on the right, opposite the supermarket.
A So I go along this road and turn right. Then I go past the pub and ...
M1 And the newsagent's is on the right.
A Opposite the supermarket. Oh, great, thanks a lot.
M1 No problem.
- 2 WAYNE Excuse me.
MAN 2 Can I help you?
W Yes, where's the post office?
M2 The post office? It's over there, next to the café.
W Ah yes, I can see it. Thanks. Sorry, I'm on holiday here and I don't know my way around.
M2 No problem. Bye.
W Goodbye.
M2 And have a nice holiday!
W Thanks a lot.

- 3 DAISY Excuse me. How do we get to the market?
WOMAN You go along this street and over the bridge. That's New Road, and the market's on your left.
D So that's, er, along this street, er ...
JOSH Over the bridge and the market's on the left.
W Yes, in New Road. You can't miss it.
D How far is it?
W Oh, it's not far. Only about five minutes' walk.
D Great. Thanks a lot. Right, let's go. Do you remember the way? I never listen when people give me directions ...

CD3 39

- ELLIE Hello?
MIKE Hello, Aunt Ellie. This is Mike. I'm calling from England about Jan and Amy's wedding. Is this a good time to call?
E Mike! Yes, of course it is. Oh, dear. I never replied to your email, did I? Sorry, I'm very bad at emails. But we're all very happy that you're coming over for Jan's wedding.
M Yes, that's what I'm calling about. Can I stay with you when I get there? Or should I book a hotel?
E Oh, I'm afraid there isn't any room in our house because Amy's parents are staying with us for a week.

But if you want, I can book a hotel room for you nearby.

- M Yes, that would be great, thanks a lot.
E And your uncle says you can use his motorbike if you want to travel around after the wedding. He doesn't use it much any more and he'd love you to ride it.
M Wow, that's fantastic! And what about getting to your place from Los Angeles airport? Should I get a taxi?
E No, of course not! Just tell us what time your flight arrives and we can come and get you.
M That's very kind of you, thanks a lot.
E And I'm going to book a table at our favourite restaurant that evening so you can meet Amy's family.
M Great! I'll email you my flight details this evening.
E OK. See you in a couple of months. Would you like to speak to your uncle?
M Yes, of course. ... Hello, Uncle Sid, how are you?

CD3 41

/u/ look | book | woman | should | wood | sugar | good-looking
/u:/ room | blue | June | suit | food | boots | choose

CD3 43

sixteen million | four point two three | five hundred thousand | seven thousand, six hundred and fifty | three hundred and ninety | nought point one five | a hundred and seventy-two | ninety-eight thousand, five hundred

CD3 44

ANSWERS a 73 hours b 5,350 litres
c 182 kg d 35.6 kg e \$399 f one second
g 152 hours h £8,000

CD3 46

- ABBY Do you like doing quizzes, Len?
LEN Yes, I love them. Ask me the first question.
A OK. What's the world's most expensive city? Moscow, Tokyo or Milan?
L Mmm, that's a difficult question. Er ... this is a guess – Milan.
A Just a minute. Er, no, it's Tokyo. Wow, it says here that a typical two-bedroom flat is about six thousand dollars a month.
L Really?
A Yes. OK, next question. Which of these countries is the hottest – Libya, the USA or Australia?
L The hottest? I think it's Libya, isn't it?
A Yes, that's right. It can have temperatures of fifty-seven point eight degrees. That's really hot!
L OK, what's the next question?

- A Question three. Which of these cities is the oldest – Athens, Rome or Damascus?
L Oh, I know this one. It's Damascus.
A Yes, you're right!
L It's eight thousand years old.
A How do you know that?
L I just read it in the newspaper.
A Er, question four. Which of these countries is the most popular with tourists – Spain, China or France?
L Oh, I don't know – France?
A Yes, it's France, with seventy-four point two million visitors. That's three you've got right. Ah, this one is easier. Which is the longest river in the world? The Nile, the Amazon or the Yangtze?
L Well, it's not the Yangtze. Er, I think it's the Amazon.
A No, it's the Nile and it's six thousand, six hundred and fifty kilometres long.
L Oh, right. So, is that the last question?
A No, there's one more. Which is the world's most crowded country – Bangladesh, Singapore or Monaco?
L Well, Monaco is the smallest country – so perhaps it's the most crowded too.
A Yes, that's right! Monaco has seventeen thousand people per square kilometre. You got four out of six right. Not bad!

CD3 49

- LUCY Are you enjoying the food?
STEVE Yes, it's wonderful. Guy's a great cook. How's business?
L Oh, it's fine. Busy, you know. I really need a holiday.
S Yes, me too.
L But you're always on holiday!
S No, I'm not. People always say that. I work very hard when I'm travelling.
L Yeah, right. Have you ever been to Peru?
S Yes, I have.
L Did you have a good time?
S Yes, I did. It's a fantastic country. The mountains are beautiful and the people are really friendly.
L When did you go there?
S About three years ago. Why do you ask?
L Guy and I would like to go there for a holiday next year.
S Yes, it's a great place to visit. I'd like to go to Australia. Have you ever been there?
L Yes, I have, actually. I went there about eight years ago, with my brother.
S And did you enjoy it?
L Oh, yes, we had a wonderful time. We travelled around in an old car for three months and camped every night.
S Mmm, it sounds great.
GUY Is the food OK, Steve?
S Yes, very good, as usual. Guy, have you ever been to Australia?
G No, I haven't. I never leave this restaurant!

CD3 50

Have you ever been to Peru? | Yes, I have. |
 Have you ever been to Australia? | No, I haven't. |
 Have you ever worked in a restaurant? | Yes, I have. |
 Have you ever met someone from Ireland? | No, I haven't. |
 Have you ever seen a Japanese film? | Yes, I have. |
 Have you ever worked in an office? | No, I haven't.

VIDEO 12.1 CD3 51

MAN Hello. Can I have your passport, please?
 DAISY Yes. Here you are. ...
 M How many bags are you checking in?
 D One. ...
 M Did you pack your bag yourself?
 D Yes, I did. ...
 M And have you got any hand luggage?
 D Yes, this bag.
 M OK. ... Here's your boarding pass. You're in seat 16F.
 D Is that a window seat?
 M No, an aisle seat.
 D Oh, OK. Which gate is it?
 M Gate 12.
 D Is the flight on time?
 M Yes, it is. Boarding is at 15.30. Enjoy your flight.
 D Thanks. Bye.
 M Bye.

VIDEO 12.2 CD3 53

ALISON Now, have you got everything?
 DAISY Yes, I have, thanks.
 A Have you got your boarding pass?
 D Yes, I have, thanks.
 WAYNE So, is the flight on time?
 D Yes, it is.
 W OK. Well, have a good trip.
 D Thanks, I will.
 W And don't forget to send us a text when you get to Thailand.
 D Yes, of course.
 A And don't forget to send your grandmother a postcard.
 D I will. Don't worry.
 A OK, have a good time, Daisy.
 D Thanks, Mum, I will.
 W See you in a month.
 D Yes, see you. Bye, Mum. Bye, Dad.
 A Bye.
 W Bye.

CD3 54

/i:/ cheese, leave, week
 /əʊ/ boat, note, snow
 /ɒ/ cough, often, wash
 /ʌ/ sunny, money, young
 /ə/ sofa, second, woman
 /ɔ:/ shorts, call, four
 /ɜ:/ shirt, heard, word
 /ɪ/ build, live, thin
 /æ/ hat, bank, hand
 /eɪ/ hate, great, train

/u/ look, would, foot
 /u:/ room, fruit, lose

CD3 55

Listening Test (See Teacher's Book)

Phonemic Symbols

Vowel sounds

/ə/	/æ/	/ʊ/	/ɒ/	/ɪ/	/i/	/e/	/ʌ/
fath <u>er</u> ago	app <u>le</u> cat	book cou <u>ld</u>	o <u>n</u> got	in swi <u>m</u>	happy eas <u>y</u>	bed an <u>y</u>	cup und <u>er</u>
/ɜ:/	/ɑ:/	/u:/	/ɔ:/	/i:/			
her shi <u>rt</u>	arm car	bl <u>ue</u> too	born wal <u>k</u>	eat mee <u>t</u>			
/eə/	/iə/	/ʊə/	/ɔɪ/	/aɪ/	/eɪ/	/əʊ/	/aʊ/
chai <u>r</u> wh <u>ere</u>	near h <u>ere</u>	tour mat <u>ure</u>	bo <u>y</u> noi <u>sy</u>	n <u>ine</u> ey <u>e</u>	ei <u>ght</u> da <u>y</u>	go o <u>ver</u>	ou <u>t</u> br <u>own</u>

Consonant sounds

/p/	/b/	/f/	/v/	/t/	/d/	/k/	/g/
park sou <u>p</u>	be rob	face la <u>ugh</u>	very liv <u>e</u>	time whi <u>te</u>	dog red	c <u>old</u> loo <u>k</u>	gi <u>rl</u> ba <u>g</u>
/θ/	/ð/	/tʃ/	/dʒ/	/s/	/z/	/ʃ/	/ʒ/
thi <u>nk</u> bo <u>th</u>	mo <u>ther</u> th <u>e</u>	ch <u>ips</u> tea <u>ch</u>	jo <u>b</u> pa <u>ge</u>	see ri <u>ce</u>	zo <u>o</u> da <u>ys</u>	sh <u>oe</u> ac <u>tion</u>	televi <u>sion</u>
/m/	/n/	/ŋ/	/h/	/l/	/r/	/w/	/j/
me nam <u>e</u>	now rain	sing think	hot h <u>and</u>	late hell <u>o</u>	marry w <u>rite</u>	we whi <u>te</u>	yo <u>u</u> y <u>es</u>

Irregular Verb List

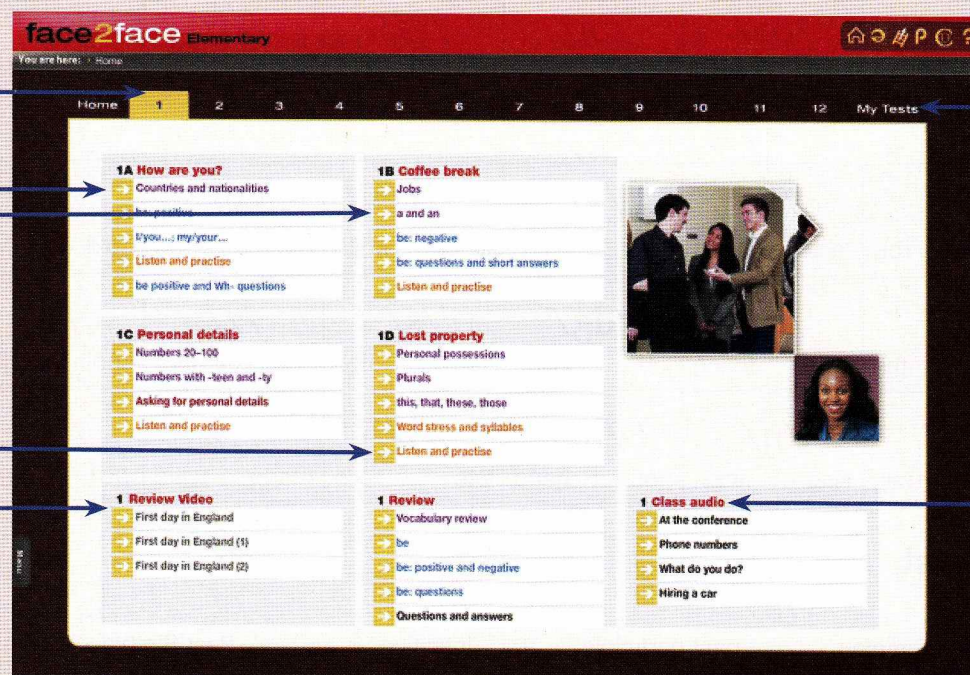
infinitive	Past Simple	past participle
be	was/were	been
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
break	broke	broken
bring	brought /brɔ:t/	brought /brɔ:t/
buy	bought /bɔ:t/	bought /bɔ:t/
can	could	been able
catch	caught /kɔ:t/	caught /kɔ:t/
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done /dʌn/
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
find	found	found
fly	flew /flu:/	flown /flaʊn/
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got (US: gotten)
give	gave	given
go	went	been/gone
have	had	had
hear	heard /hɜ:d/	heard /hɜ:d/
hold	held	held
know	knew /nju:/	known /nəʊn/
learn	learned/learnt	learned/learnt

infinitive	Past Simple	past participle
leave	left	left
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read /red/	read /red/
ride	rode	ridden
run	ran	run
say	said /sed/	said /sed/
see	saw /sɔ:/	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spell	spelled/spelt	spelled/spelt
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught /tɔ:t/	taught /tɔ:t/
tell	told	told
think	thought /θɔ:t/	thought /θɔ:t/
understand	understood	understood
wear	worn	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Self-study DVD-ROM Instructions

What's on the Self-study DVD-ROM?

- over 300 exercises to practise all language areas
- a Review Video for each unit which appears only on the Self-study DVD-ROM
- *My Tests* and *My Progress* sections
- an interactive Phonemic Symbols chart
- an e-Portfolio with *Grammar Reference*, *Word List* and *Word Cards* practice tool, plus a *My Work* section where you can build a digital portfolio of your work
- the main audio recordings from the Student's Book



Use the navigation bar to go to different areas of the DVD-ROM.

Create vocabulary and grammar tests for language in the Student's Book.

Listen to the main recordings from the Student's Book and read the scripts.

Go to the home screen.

Get help on using the Self-study DVD-ROM.

Go to Cambridge Dictionaries Online.

Look at the Phonemic Symbols chart and practise the pronunciation of vowel and consonant sounds.

Check *My Progress* to see your scores for completed activities.

Explore the e-Portfolio.

System requirements

Windows

- Intel Pentium 4 2GHz or faster
- Microsoft® Windows® XP (SP3), Vista® (SP2), Windows 7
- Minimum 1GB RAM
- Minimum 750MB of hard drive space
- Adobe® Flash® Player 10.3.183.7 or later

Mac OS

- Intel Core™ Duo 1.83GHz or faster
- Mac OS X 10.5 or later
- Minimum 1GB RAM
- Minimum 750MB of hard drive space
- Adobe® Flash® Player 10.3.183.7 or later

Installing the Self-study DVD-ROM to your hard disk

- Insert the **face2face Second edition** Elementary Self-study DVD-ROM into your CD/DVD drive. The DVD-ROM will automatically start to install. Follow the installation instructions on your screen.
- On a Windows PC, if the DVD-ROM does not automatically start to install, open **My Computer**, locate your CD/DVD drive and open it to view the contents of the DVD-ROM. Double-click on the *CambridgeApplicationInstaller* file. Follow the installation instructions on your screen.
- On a Mac, if the DVD-ROM does not automatically start to install, double-click on the **face2face** DVD icon on your desktop. Double-click on the *CambridgeApplicationInstaller* file. Follow the installation instructions on your screen.

Support

If you need help with installing the DVD-ROM, please visit: www.cambridge.org/elt/support

face2face

SECOND EDITION

Elementary Student's Book

Chris Redston & Gillie Cunningham

face2face Second edition is a fully updated and redesigned edition of this best-selling general English course for adults and young adults who want to learn quickly and effectively in today's world. Based on the communicative approach, it combines the best in current methodology with innovative new features designed to make learning and teaching easier. Vocabulary and grammar are given equal importance and there is a strong focus on listening and speaking in social situations. Each double-page lesson is easily teachable off the page with minimal preparation.

Key features

- NEW** video presentation material for the double-page Real World lessons, which focus on the functional and social language students need for day-to-day life. This video material is available on the new Teacher's DVD.
- NEW** Help with Pronunciation sections enable students to improve their pronunciation and help them to communicate more effectively.
- NEW** design and user-friendly signposting for easy navigation.
- NEW** Vocabulary selection is informed by English Vocabulary Profile in addition to the Cambridge International Corpus and Cambridge Learner Corpus.
- Interactive Self-study DVD-ROM has fully updated exercises in all language areas, including video, record-and-listen capability, progress check, customisable tests and e-Portfolio.
- Full-page Extra Practice sections for each unit provide further controlled practice for all new language.
- Innovative Help with Listening sections help students to understand natural spoken English in context (Class Audio CDs are available separately.)
- Quick Reviews at the beginning of each lesson get each class off to a lively, student-centred start.
- The redesigned Language Summary includes all new vocabulary, grammar and functional language.

The **face2face Second edition** Elementary Student's Book provides 80 hours of core teaching material, which can be extended to 120 hours with the inclusion of the photocopiable resources (including the new Extra Reading worksheets) in the Teacher's Book (now with new Teacher's DVD).

face2face Second edition is fully compatible with the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEFR) and gives students regular opportunities to evaluate their progress.

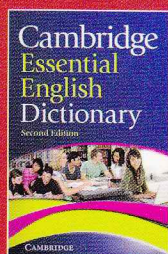
Visit www.cambridge.org/elt/face2face for more free learning resources.

A1-A2

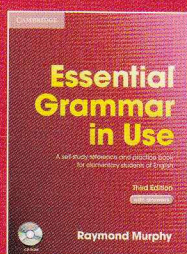
English Profile
www.englishprofile.org

CEFR level:	Cambridge English exams:	
	face2face	
C1	Advanced	Advanced (CAE)
B2	Upper Intermediate	First (FCE)
B1 +	Intermediate	Preliminary (PET)
B1	Pre-intermediate	
A2	Elementary	Key (KET)
A1	Starter	

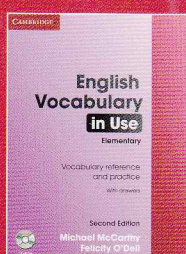
Elementary reviews A1 and takes students to the end of A2.



ISBN 978 0 521 17092 5



ISBN 978 0 521 67543 7



ISBN 978 0 521 13617 4

CAMBRIDGE ENGLISH CORPUS

The Cambridge English Corpus is a multi-billion word collection of written and spoken English. It includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, a unique bank of exam candidate papers.

Our authors study the Corpus to see how English is really used, and to identify typical learner mistakes. This means that Cambridge materials help students to avoid mistakes, and you can be confident the language taught is useful, natural and fully up-to-date.

www.cambridge.org/corpus

CAMBRIDGE QUALITY GUARANTEE



CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.cambridge.org

ISBN 978-1-107-42204-9

